



Merlin well verſt in many an hidden *ſpell*,
His Countries *Omen* did long ſince foretell,
Grac'd in his *Time* by ſundry *Kings* he was,
And all that *he* predicted came to paſſe.

MERLINS PROPHESIES AND PREDICTIONS

Interpreted, and their truth made good by our *Engliſh Annalls*, with the life of *MERLIN.*

Being a *Chronographicall Hiſtory* of all the *Kings*, and memorable *Paſſages* of this *Kingdom* from *BRUTE*, to the Reign of the late KING.

A Subject that deſerves to be known, and obſerved by all men.

Quoique aderant Vates, robor adeſſe Deos.

LONDON,
Printed for *I.E.* and are to be ſold by *Thomas Pierrepoint*, at the ſigne of the Sun in *Pauls* Church-yard, 1651.

HARVARD COLLEGE
MAY 23 1925
LIBRARY
E. H. Hall fund

To the worthy (and by me much Honoured) Master JAMES METTAM Esquire, &c.

SIR,

BY that generous and noble Character, which long since I have heard confer'd upon you, my sole ambition was to attend so happy an opportunity as to be any way knowne unto you: But when time so farre seconded my wishes, that upon an unexpected meeting I was made so fortunate, not onely to be admitted into your company, but accepted into your knowledge, (for which I stand much ingaged to your kinseman and friend Mr. T. B.) I instantly apprehended that report came much short of your worth and merit, which (I ingenuously confesse transcended my expectation;) for besides your generous affability and courtesie, (the most gracefull garnish, and best decorements that become and adorn a true-bred Gentleman) finding you not onely gene-

rally addicted to the incouragement of all good Arts, and Sciences, but especially to the professours of Literature and Learning, and when upon further discourse I understood, that you more particularly had not only took view of some of my weake Labors, but crowned them with your Verdict: These inducements so farre emboldned mee, as to offer these my unpolisht papers to your perusall and patronage, which if you shall be pleased to countenance; I shall remayne confident against all malicious prejudice: desiring rather to stand to the judicious censure of one truly rationall, then to the ignorant Nonsence of a numerous rabble. Worthy Sir: complement is a thing I have ever studied to avoid, and (I presume) you were never pleased to affect: then in a word, wishing you the accomplishment of all your noble desires, alternatly corresponding to your worthy deserts, I commend you (my generous Patron) to the Almighties gracious protection, ever remayning,

Yours obsequiously devoted,

T. H.

To the Reader.

COurteous, and conſiderate Reader, I have here expoſed to thy eſpeciall peruſall, the life and propheſies of our famous predictor, *Merlinus*, ſirnamed *Ambroſius*, who though he lived in the time of profane paganiſme, was a profeſſed Chriſtian, and therefore his Auguries the better to be approved, and allowed: thou haſt withall their expoſition and explanation, expreſly and punctually making plain and evident, how genuinely and properly they comply with the truth of our Chronologie: in which you ſhall finde (adding the ſupplement of the Hiſtory from *Brute*, who laid the firſt foundation of our *Britiſh* Colony, to the time of King *Vortigernus*, or *Vortiger* the Uſurper of the Crowne, under whoſe Reign *Merlin* firſt flouriſht) a true catalogue of all the Kings of this Iſland, with a ſummary of all paſſages of State Eccleſiaſticall

call or Temporall, of any remarke or moment, during their Principalities and Dominions, in ſo much that ſcarce any thing ſhall be here wanting to thy beſt wiſhes, if thou beeſt deſirous to be inſtructed, and faithfully informed in the knowledge of our *Engliſh Annalls:* For in the ſteed of a large ſtudy book, and huge voluminous Tractate, able to take up a whole yeare in reading, and to load and tyre a Porter in carrying, thou haſt here a ſmall Manuell, containing all the pith and marrow of the greater, made portable for thee (if thou ſo pleaſe) to beare in thy pocket, ſo that thou mayſt ſay, that in this ſmall compendium or abſtract, thou haſt *Hollinſhed, Polychronicon, Fabian, Speed,* or any of the reſt, of more Giantlike bulke or binding: to which my ſhort Abbreviary, I ſtrive to make this my Prologue or Preface, to thee alike ſutable, being as ſuccinct and briefly contrived, as the former ſummarily comprehended, deſiring thee to read conſiderately, and withall to cenſure charitably, and ſo (without further complement) wiſhing thy care in the one, and courteſie in the other, with a favourable pardon, of ſome few errours committed in the preſſe, I bid thee farewell.

Thomas Heywood.

A narration of the Kings Reignes from *Brute* to *Vortiger*, and from *Vortiger* to King *Lud*, in the first six Chapters: and from K. *Lud* to K. *Charles*.

Chap. 1. Brutes *first plantation in this Island. How he divided it amongst his three sons: of severall famous Cities, builded here by sundry Kings, and how divers Rivers took their first name: Of all the remarkable passages that hapned in their Reigns: A catalogue from* Brute, *&c.*

Chap. 2. *A Continuation of the History of the* British *Kings, unto the time that* Julius Cæsar *made conquest of the Island: the building of divers Cities and Townes. Two things especially remarkable in an indulgent mother, and a most naturall brother: sundry other passages worthy observation. The City of* Troynovant, *how called* London.

Chap. 3. *The first conquest of this land by* Julius Cæsar: Britain *made tributary to the* Romans: *The birth of our Saviour under* Cimbeline *K. of* Britaine: *How* Southampton *came to be so called,* Vespatians *conquest of the Isle of* Wight: *of* Catnesse *in* Scotland: *of* Lucius *the first* Christian *K. of the* Britains: *and of other* Roman *Governours.*

Chap. 4. *The Duke of* Cornwall *made King of* Britain: *how* Walbrooke *took first name:* Constantine *the* Roman *marieth with* Helena, *daughter*

ter to King Coill, *and is made King: His Reigne and buriall: His son* Constantine *made King after him, who was cald the Great and was the first Christian Emperour: His great devotion, and after falling into Heresie:* Octavian *his Deputy in* Britain, *usurpeth, and after made King:* Maximinus *a* Roman, *by mariage with his daughter, succeeds him.*

Chap. 5. Maximian *made King of* Britain, *and after Emperour: How* Armorica *came to be called* Little Britain, *and this,* Britain *the* Great: *Of* Ursula, *and the* 11000 *Virgins:* Gratian *the last* Roman *that was King of the Land: The great distresses of the Kingdome: the cessation of their Tribute paid to* Rome: Constantine *brother to* Aldroenus *made K. of the Realme, his death, issue.*

Chap. 6. *A necessary digression shewing the lives and reigns of* 33 *Kings of* Britain *scarce mentioned by any of our English remembrancers, with an exact computation of the times, &c.*

Chap. 1. *Of the strange birth of* Ambrosius Merlin, *whether he were a Christian or no? and by what spirit he propheſied, &c.* pag. 1.

Chap 2. *In whose Reign* Merlin *was born. How the state of* Britain *stood in those days, with divers necessary occurrences pertinent to the story.* pag. 9.

Chap. 3. *By what miraculous accident young* Merlin *came to be known to King* Vortiger: *of the combat betwixt the red and the white Dragon, and his propheſie thereof, &c.* p. 18

Chap. 4. Merlins *former propheſie explained, with*

ſundry preſtigious acts done by him to delight the King: His propheſie of the Kings death, &c. p.25

Chap.5. Uterpendragon *ſucceedeth his brother* Aurelius: *He is enamoured of* Igerna, *wife to the Duke of* Cornwall, *whom by the art of* Merlin *he enjoyes, of whom he begot King* Arthur, pag.32

Chap.6. Merlins *former propheſie made plain, concerning king* Arthur, *with ſundry other occurrences pertinent to the* Engliſh *Hiſtory*, pag.41.

Chap.7. *Of the conception and birth of theſe 7 pious and religious brothers. And being ſent to death, how preſerved, educated and doctrinated:* Merlins *propheſies, and their explanation:* p.49

Chap.8. *He propheſieth of the civill wars that ſhall be in* Britain *in the time of* Cadwallo: *And of the great dearth and deſolation in the Reigne of* Cadwallader, *&c.* p.58

Chap.9. *Of divers bloudy battails fought betwixt* Canutus *and* Edmund: *Their great oppoſition ended in a ſingle Duell. They make peace, and equally divide the kingdome betwixt them*, p.68

Chap.10. Merlins *propheſie of* Hardy Canutus, *and Earle* Goodwin, *which accordingly hapned: his many Tyrannies, amongſt other his tithing of the* Norman *Gentlemen, &c.* p.76.

Chap.11. *The landing of Duke* William *with the* Normans: *The battaile betwixt him and* Harold, *in which* Harold *is ſlain, being the laſt King of the* Saxon *bloud.* Wil. *conquereth, &c.* p.87

Chap.12. *The prediction of the two* Dragons, *made good by the ſubſequent Hiſtory, in* Robert *and* William, *the two ſons of the Conquerour, who*

the Lion of Iuſtice was: and what was meant by his Alchymy,&c. p.96.

Chap.13. *A brieſe relation of the troubleſome Reign of King* Stephen, *and his oppoſition againſt* Mawd *the Empreſſe, of* Henry Short Mantle, *and his proceedings, with a continuance of our* Engliſh *Hiſtory,&c.* p.106

Chap.14. *Divers remarkable paſſages during the Reigne of* Henry *the ſecond, his numerous Iſſue, and how they were affected towards him: his vices and vertues, his good and bad fortune: all which were by this our Prophet predicted,* p.116

Chap.15. *The Inauguration of* Richard *the firſt, ſirnamed* Cordelion, *a prediction of his Reigne. His wars in the* Holy Land, *his impriſonment by the Duke of* Auſtria: *his brother* Johns *uſurpation, his ſecond Coronation, with his unfortunate death,&c.* p.127

Chap.16. *The reſt of the propheſie made good in the ſubſequence, the troubleſome Reign of K.* John, *his loſſe of* Normandy: *his Land interdicted by the Pope, to whom hee is compeld to reſigne his Crown, his death,&c.* p.137

Chap.17. *A continuance of ſome paſſages in King* Johns *Reign.* Henry *the third ſucceedeth his Father, a prediction of his Reign: his brother* Richard *made king of the* Romans. Henries *long Reign: the mad Parlament,* p.147

Chap.18. *The death of* Henry *the third, and* Richard *Earle of* Cornwall *king of the* Romans: *Prince* Edwards *victories in the Holy Laud: His Coronation: the propheſie of his reign,&c.* p.157

Chap.

Chap.19. *The right that the Kings of* England *have anciently had to the Crown of* Scotland, *for which they did them homage.* K. Edwards *victorious wars in* Scotland. *The propheſie fulfilled. His death. And coronation of his ſon, &c.* p.167

Chap.20. *The Kings unfortunate wars in* Scotland: *The battail of* Bannocſbourn, *&c.* Barwick *betrayed to the* Scots: *The pride and inſolencie of the* Spencers: *Their miſleading the K: &c.* p.178

Chap.21. *The depoſing of* Edward 2d: *his repentance, his death, his ſon* Edward *made King. A propheſie of his reign. His great victory over the* Scots, *with the taking of* Barwick. *His famous victory at Sea over the* French, *&c.* p.189

Chap.22. *The famous battaile of* Poytyers, *fought by* Edward *the* Black Prince, *in which hee took* John *the* French *King priſoner: His conqueſt in* Spaine: *The memorable act of* William VValworth, *Lord* Major, *&c.* p.201

Chap.23. *The Duke of* Gloceſter *by a Parlament reformeth the Common-wealth.* Iohn *of* Gaunt *claims his title in* Spain, *King* Richard *marrieth the* French *Kings daughter: Difference betwixt the* King *and* Gloceſter. *His murder in* Calice: *The murmur of the Commons, &c.* p.213

Chap.24. *The coronation of* Henry *the* 4, *with his great Feaſt held in* VVeſtminſter *Hall. A great conſpiracy intended againſt him, but prevented, the lamentable murder of King* Richard *the ſecond in* Pomfret *Caſtle, by Sir* Pierce *of* Exton *His valour at his death. His Epitaph. The great riches found in his treaſury, &c.* p.224

Chap.

Chap.25. *The Coronation of* Henry *the fift: A propheſie of his reign: His victorious battail over the* French *at* Agencourt: *His ſecond Voyage into* France: *His victories by Sea and Land: He is made heir (by the marriage of his wife) to the Crowne of* France: *His third Voyage into* France: *The birth of Pr.* Henry: *The death of* Henry *the fift*, p.236.

Chap.27. *The Duke of* Gloceſter *made Protector. The Duke of* Bedford *Regent of* France, *of* Ioan de paſil *a Sorcereſſe:* Henry *the ſixt crowned in* Paris. *A propheſie of his reign: the death of the D. of* Gloſter. *The death of the Marquis of* Suffolk: *The inſurrection of the Commons under* Iacke Cade, *His proceedings and death: the Duke of* Somerſet *gives up* Normandy. *The Duke of* Yorke *taketh arms, his perſon ſeiſed againſt the Kings promiſe, and for feareſet at liberty.* p.248.

Chap.28. *The ambition of Queen* Margaret: *The battail at Saint* Albons, Yorke *made Protector. The Queens practice againſt the Lords. The battail at* Northampton. York *proclaimed heire to the Crowne.* York *ſlain in the battail at* Wakefield. Henry *depoſed, and* Edward *Earle of* March *made king. A propheſie of his Reigne. The battaile at* Exham. *King* Henry *taken and ſent to the Tower. The marriage of* Edward. *Hee flies the Land.* Henry *again made king.* p.259.

Chap.29. Edward *proclaimed uſurper of the Crown, and* Gloceſter *traytor: his landing at* Ravēſport: *the battail at* Barnet: *the battail at* Teuxbury: *king* Henry *murdered in the Tower, and after him the Duke of* Clarence. *The death of* Edward

ward *the fourth*: Gloſter *takes upon him to bee Protector of the young king, &c.* p. 272.

Chap. 30. *Diſſention betwixt the King and the Duke of* Buckingham: *Richard inſidiateth the life of* Richmond: Buckingham *takes armes againſt the King, and is beheaded.* Baniſter *perfidious to his Lord: Queene* Annes *policy and tyranny: His Lawes:* Richmond *landeth at* Milford *Haven: The battaile at* Boſworth: *The death of* Richard: Richmond *made King: A propheſie of his Reigne, &c.* p. 283

Chap. 31. *The Earle of* Northumberland *ſlain by the Commons: The Matchevilian plots of the Dutcheſſe of* Burgundy, *to diſturbe the peace of king* Henry: Perkin Warbeck *her Creature: hee is nobly marryed in* Scotland, *and taken for the Duke of* Yorke: *the death of the Lord* Standley, *and others: Divers inſurrections about* Perkin: *his death, with the yong Earle of* Warwicke: *the death of the king: A propheſie of the reigne of* Henry *the eighth.* p. 293

Chap. 32. *Prince* Henry *married to his brothers wife: hee winneth* Turwin *and* Turney *in* France; Floden-field, *with the famous victory againſt the* Scots. Charles Brandon *Duke of* Suffolke *marrieth the* French *Queen the kings ſiſter. The Emperour* Charles *the fift made knight of the Garter, &c.* p. 304.

Chap. 33. *The death of* Henry *the eighth:* Edward *the ſixt crowned; a calculation of his reigne:* Muſſelborow *field won by the* Lord *Protector, &c.* p. 315.

Chap.

Chap. 34. *The Lady* Jane *proclaimed Q.* Northumberlands *Commission to suppresse the Lady* Mary: *He is arrested of high treason: The Coronation of Q.* Mary: *A prediction of her Reigne: The* Romish *Religion restored: The death of* Northumberland: *of* Suffolke: *of* Guilford Dudley: *Of the Lady* Iane Gray: *her character: The death of* Cranmer, Ridley, *and* Latimer: *The life of Cardinall* Poole, *twice elected Pope, &c.* p. 326

Chap. 36. *King* Philips *entertainment into the Land, presented with the Garter: Hee is made K. of* Naples *and* Hierusalem: *the great solemnity of the King and Queens Marriage at* Winchester: *Their titles, their riding through* London: *The Queen rumoured to be with Child, King* Philips *cautelous proceedings: hee favoureth the Lady* Elisabet. *He leaveth the Land: Queen* Maries *discontent at his departure: The losse of* Callis, p. 336

Chap. 37. *A brief nomination of her troubles, wrought by the Popish Clergie: Her passage through* London, *to her coronation with the speeches spoke in the pageants: A short remembrance of the prime passages in her reign. The former prediction fulfild, her death: other predictions fathered upon* Merlin *explained, &c.* p. 347

Chap. 38. *The title of King* Iames *to the Crown. His comming into* England: *A propheſie of his Reigne. The first treason attempted against him. The Gunpowder treason, and what the conspirators were. The king of* Denmarke *twice commeth into* England. *King* Charles *proclaimed King, his Fathers Funerals, &c.* p. 361

A Chronographical History of the Kings of *Britaine*, from the first plantation of this Island by *Brute*, and his Cousin *Corinæus*, to the Reigne of King *Vortiger*: In whose time *Ambrosius Merlinus* began to utter his Predictions.

CHAP. I.

Brutes *first plantation in this Island. How hee divided it amongst his three sonnes: of several famous Cities, builded here by sundry Kings, and how divers Rivers took their first name: of all the remarkable passages, that hapened in their reignes: A Catologue of the Kings continued from* Brute *to the end of his Line and off-spring.*

FOr the better illustration of this present worke intended, it shall not be amisse to shew you a briefe progresse of all the memorable passages of the time, before wee come to the Prophesie, with a Catalogue of the Kings of this

Iſland, and what Remarkable things happened in their reigne. To begin with the firſt: *Brute*, who was of the ancient and noble bloud of the *Trojans*, diſcended from *Æneas* and *Creuſa*, the daughter of King *Priam:* Theſe had a ſonne called *Aſcanius*, after his Father King of *Italy*) *Brute* was the ſonne of *Sylvius*, *Æneas* the ſon of *Aſcanius:* This *Brute* at fifteene yeares of age, being hunting, by the unfortunate glanceing of an *Arrow*, ſlue his father, and had beene alſo in his birth the death of his mother: but for the laſt diſaſterous act, hee willingly exiled himſelfe, and taking with him a choice company of adventurers, thought to diſcover ſome new plantation. To omit his many troubles both by Land and Sea, in which hee was ſtill moſt victoriouſly proſperous; at length hee incountred with a ſmall navy of ſhips, of which, a *Trojane*, and his neare kinſeman was Captain, whoſe name was *Corinæus*, who joyning their forces together, and after divers and ſundry perills landed in this Iſland, (of the white and chalky Cliffes) called *Albion*, where finding none but Giants of mighty ſtature, he deſtroyed the moſt part of them: of whom the greateſt both in bulke and command was called *Gogmagog*, with whom *Corinæus* wraſtling to prove their triall of ſtrength, *Gogmagog* in his *gripe* broke a rib in the ſide of *Corinæus*: at which he being inraged, gathering all his *ſpirits* about him, caſt him downe the high Rocke of *Dover*, (the place where they proved the maſtery) which

How Brute *was diſcended.*

Corinæus *couſin to* Brute

which is called the fall of *Gogmagog* unto this day: for which, and other his valiant acts before atchieved, hee gave him that intire Province, which from his name beareth the title of *Cornwall*.

The fall of Gogmagog.

Brute then taking full view of the Iſland, ſearching up the River of *Thames*, built upon it a City; which in remembrance of the late ſubverted *Troy*, he called *Troynovant*, or new *Troy*, now *London*: this done, he put his Souldiers to tilling of the Earth, and governed the Realme peaceably for the ſpace of twenty foure yeares: He had by his wife *Ignogen*, the daughter of *Pandraſus*, three ſonnes, betwixt whom in his life time he divided his Kingdome: to *Locrine* the eldeſt hee gave all that is called *England*: but then *Logria* after his name:)To the ſecond *Cambrius*, or *Cambre* hee left the Countrey of *Wales* (at firſt) from him called *Cambria*: To the third *Albanact*, hee gave the North part of the Land, then titled from him *Albania*, now *Scotland*. That done, hee expired, and was buryed at *Troynovant*: and this happened in the yeare of the world foure thouſand foureſcore and ſeven.

The building of Troynovant, *ſince called* London.

How hee ivided the Kingdome.

The death of Brute.

Locrine being King of *Britaine*, hearing that a King of *Scythia* had invaded his brother *Albanacts* Dominions, and having ſlaine him in battaile, governed in his ſtead: Hee with his brother *Cambre* aſſembled a mighty Hoaſt to avenge his death, and in a ſharpe conflict diſcomfited his whole Army, and ſo hotly purſued

How the River Humber *came to be ſo cald.*

him in his flight, that this *Scythian* (which was called *Humber*) was drowned in that River which runneth up from *Ravenſpurn* up to *Hull*, which hath ſince borne his name even to this day. After which victory, *Locrin* who had eſpouſed *Guendolina*, daughter to *Corinæus* Duke of *Cornwall*, grew inamoured of *Eſtrild* a beauteous Lady, and *Daughter* to the aforeſaid *Humber*, by whom He had a *Daughter* named *Sabrina*: of which his Queene having intelligence, ſhe accited her Father and friends to make *Warre* upon her Huſband, and ſlew him in fight, when hee had governed the Realme for the ſpace of twenty yeares: then the Maſculine ſpirited Lady tooke his Concubine *Eſtrild*, with her beautifull young *daughter Sabrina*, and cauſed them to bee both drowned in that River which parteth *England* and *Wales*, and from *Sabrina* is called *Severne* to all poſterity: Then *Guendolina* took upon her the government of the Land, till her young Son *Madan* came to mature age, and then reſigned it up intirely into his owne hands, after ſhee had Soveraigniz'd fifteen yeares.

The River Severne *whence called.*

Madan began his Reigne in the yeare of the World foure thouſand one hundred twenty two, of whom is little left worthy memory, but that hee tyrannized over his Subjects, and in the fortieth of his Reigne, being at his diſport of *Hunting*, and loſt by his Traine, hee was devoured of Wolves, which were then plenteous in the Land, leaving two Sons, *Mempriſius*

The death of Madan

priſtus and *Manlius*. Theſe two brothers were at mortall enmity, till in the end *Mempriſias* the elder cauſed the other to bee traiterouſly ſlain, after which he fell into all kinde of vices, and abandoning the bed of his lawfull wife, uſed the company of many proſtitutes and Concubines: and then into the brutiſh ſin of Sodomitry, for which hee grew hated both of God and man, whoſe body alſo was (in hunting) torn to pieces by wild beaſts, leaving behind him one ſonne begotten in lawfull wedlocke, named *Ebrank*.

The death of Mempriſius.

Hee beganne his Reigne in the yeare of the World foure thouſand one hundred foureſcore and two: hee had one and twenty wives, of whom hee received twenty ſonnes and thirty daughters. The eldeſt of which was *Gualeu:* al of them he ſent to *Alba Silvius*, (the eleventh King of *Italy*, and ſixt of the *Latins*) to have them maried to the blud of the *Trojans:* Hee was a great Warriour, and conquered in *Germany* and elſ-where: he builded *Caerbranke*, now called *Yorke*, one hundred and forty yeares, after the erecting of *London*, hee built alſo in *Scotland*, the Caſtle of *Maidens*, now called *Edenborough* Caſtle. And after with a ſtrong army pierced *Gallia*, returning thence, with great triumph and riches, who when hee had reigned ſixty yeares died, and was buried in *Yorke*, leaving his eldeſt ſonne *Brute Greenſhield* to ſucceed him in the Kingdome, of whom is left no memory worthy the recitall, but that he expired, and lyeth buried

A numerous iſſue.

The building of York.

Edenborough *Caſtle.*

buried by his Father, whose succeſſour was his ſonne *Leil* or *Leir*, who built *Careleir* or *Carleil*, who in the latter end of his Reigne gave himſelfe wholly to ſloth, by which divers uprores grew in the Realme, not at his death appeaſed, whom ſucceeded his ſonne *Lud*, ſirnamed *Hurdebras*, who was inaugurated in the yeare of the world foure thouſand two hundred threeſcore and nineteen, he prudently appeaſed thoſe combuſtions begot in his fathers days. He builded the Town of *Kaerkiu*, now called *Canterbury*, and *Caerguent*, now *Winton*, or *Wincheſter*, and another titled *Mount Palatine*, now *Sexton* or *Shaftsbury*: hee reigned thirty nine yeares, and left a ſonne called *Bladud*.

The building of Carlile.

The building of Canterbury, Wincheſter, & Shaftsbury

This *Bladud* profeſſed himſelfe a great *Aſtrologer*, and ſtudied the art of *Necromancy*, he builded the Towne of *Caerbadon*, now called *Bath*, and was the firſt founder of the hot *Baths*: this King attempting to flie from the top of *Apollo's* Temple to the ground, his art failing him, he broak his neck in the fall, when hee had raigned twenty yeares, leaving his ſonne *Leir* to ſucceed him. *Leir* was of noble conditions, and kept the Land in peace and tranquillity, hee built the City of *Caerleir*, now *Leiceſter*: hee had no ſonne, but three only daughters: *Gonovilla*, *Ragan*, and *Cordeilla* (the youngeſt whom he beſt loved,) who being grown in age, deſired to know which of his daughters affected him moſt? the firſt proteſted ſhe loved him better then her owne ſoule; the ſecond ſwore, her love was

Bathe and the hot Baths.

The death of Bladud.

Leiceſter.

was inexpreſſible, for ſhee preferr'd his love before all things under the Sunne, which anſwers much pleaſed him, then hee demanded the like of the youngeſt: who told him ſhee could not flatter like her ſiſters, but ſhe loved him as far as he was worthy to be beloved, and as much as a childe ought to love a father: which anſwer much diſtaſting him, hee maried his eldeſt daughter to the Duke of *Cornwall*; and the ſecond to the Duke of *Albania*, and betwixt them divided his Land after his diſeaſe, but for the younger he reſerved no dowre at all.

Leirs three daughters.

Notwithſtanding which, *Aganippus*, a King amongſt the *Galls*, hearing of her great beauty and vertue, came into this Kingdome, and took her to wife, to whom her father would neither part with gold nor jewels, nor any remembrance of his love, but glad to be ſo rid of her; It was not long after that the two ſiſters grieved that he liv'd ſo long, incited the two Dukes their huſbands, called *Maeglanus* and *Hemminus*, who roſe up in armes againſt him, and divided his Dominion betwixt them, ſo that of force he was compeld to flie into *France* to bee relieved of his youngeſt daughter, whom hee had before ſo much deſpiſed, whom ſhee no ſooner ſaw, but ſhe expreſt unto him all the filiall duty that could be expected from a father, ſo that hee now began to diſtinguiſh betwixt flattery and faire words, and naturall and pious indulgence: briefly ſhee animated her Huſband to take his quarrell in hand, who entred into the Land

The ingratitude of the two ſiſters

The love of Gordeilla *to her Father.*

Land with a puissant army, and re-instated him in his Throne, who after he had ruled the Kingdome forty yeeres, died and was buried at *Caerleil*, leaving his daughter *Cordeilla* to inherit the Kingdome, who by the generall assent of all the Peeres and Commons was admitted as Queen: who for the space of five yeares governed the Land with great prudence, and the generall love of the multitude, til *Morgan*, and *Cunedagius* the sons to her two elder sisters, invaded her Kingdome, and surprising her, put her into close prison: which servitude her great spirit not able to endure, shee with her owne hands slue her selfe.

The death of Cordeilla.

These two Nephews to *Cordeilla*, *Morgan* and *Cunedagius* divided the Land betwixt them: and so continued in great amity for the space of two yeares, when some evilly disposed persons, whispered in the eares of *Morgan*, that it was a great dishonour unto him, being descended from the elder sister *Goncwilla*, and her Husband *Maglanus*, should part from any of his right to *Cunedagius*, sonne to *Ragan* the second sister and her *Hemminius*, and not possesse himselfe of the whole principality: therefore hee made war upon his cousin, who sent to him messengers to intreat of amity and unity, to which hee would by no meanes condescend: Therefore *Cunedagie*, compeld to an unwilling war, gave him battaile, and rowted his whole army, and after chaced him into *Wales*, where in a second field *Morgan* was slain, which

place

place is to this day called *Glamorgan*, or *Morgans* Land: after whose death the victor possessed the sole soveraignty, of whom nothing is left worthy memory, but that after he had reigned three and thirty yeares, hee was buried at *Troynovant*, leaving to succeed him a sonne called *Rivallo*. *Glamorgan.* *Rivallo.*

Hee governed the Realme honourably, for the space of forty six yeares, in which time the greatest thing of remark is, that in the two and thirtieth yeare of his Reigne, *Rome* was first builded, in the yeare of the World foure thousand foure hundred threescore and ten, after the first erecting of *Troynovant*, or *London*, foure hundred and seven *Solary* yeares. After *Rivallo* reigned his sonne *Sisilius*, forty nine yeares, and was buried at *Caerbadon*, or *Bath*, leaving no heire of his body lawfully begotten. Him *Jago* his Nephew succeeded, hee Reigned five and twenty yeares, died without issue, and lyeth buried by his Uncle *Rivallo*, at *Caerbrank*, or *Yorke*. *Kinimachus* his brother governed the Land after him for the space of fifty foure yeares, and lyeth buried by the two fore-named Kings, hee left behind him a sonne called *Gorboduc*, in whose time, as in the Reigne of the foure last Kings nothing hapned, deserving the remembrance of a Chronicle, but that hee governed the Realme threescore and three yeeres, dyed and was buried at *London*, and left behind him two sonnes, called *Ferrex* and *Porrex*. *The first building of Rome.* *Sisilius.* *Iago.* *Gorboduc.* *Ferrex and Porrex.*

These two brothers were made joynt Sove-

reignes of this Kingdome, in the yeere of the world, foure thousand, seven hundred and eleven, and continued in great fraternall amity for a certain time, which expired, *Porrex* being ambitious after the sole and entire sovereignty gathered a strong power, unknowne to his brother) purposing to supplant him from all Regall dignity, so that being unprovided of an army, he was forced to flye into *France*, where hee implored the aid and assistance of a potent Duke named *Gunhardus*, or *Swardus*, who furnished him with souldiers sufficient, so that hee re-entred the Land with his Host of *Gauls*, of which *Porrex* hearing met him with his *Britans*, and gave him battaile, in which *Ferrex* was unfortunately slaine: after which victory, retyring himselfe to his palace, where *Widen* (or as some Authors name her) *Indon* his mother remayned, she setting aside all motherly pity entred his chamber, and by the helpe of her women in the dead of night, when hee was fast sleeping most cruelly slue him, and after not sated with his death, shee cut his body into small pieces: Thus died the two brothers, when they had ruled the Land in war and peace five yeers, and in them ended the Genealogicall Line of *Brute*, with whom also I conclude this first Chapter.

The death of Ferrex.

A cruell mother.

The death of Ferrex.

CHAP

Chap. 3.

A Continuation of the History of the British *Kings, unto the time that* Julius Cæsar *made conquest of the Island: The building of divers Cities and Townes. Two things especially remarkable in an indulgent mother, and a most naturall brother: sundry other passages worthy observation. The City of* Troynovant, *how called* London.

After the deaths of these two Princes, the Nobles of the Land fell into great dissention amongst themselves all hating the memory of *Gorbodue*, and his issue, in regard that one brother slue the other, and the most unnatural mother was the death of the surviver, and because none of *Brutus* Line was left alive, the Land was divided in foure parts, so that in *Albania* was one *Waler*, called *Stuterius*: *Pinnor* governed *Loegria*, or middle *Britain*: *Rudaulus* guided *Wales*, and *Clotenus Cornwall*; whom the *Britains* held to be the most rightfull Heire, and all these called themselves Kings, to which some adde a fift, *Yevan* King of *Northumberland*,

Britain governed by foure Dukes.

Dunwallo reduceth it into a Monarchy.

thumberland. Briefely, *Munmutius Donwallo*, sonne to *Clotenus*, Duke of *Cornwall*, by vanquishing the rest, became sole Soveraigne of this Iland, in the yeare of the World foure thousand seven hundred forty eight. Hee was in all his actions very noble, and built within *London* a famous structure, which he cald *the Temple of Peace*, which some hold to bee the same now called *Blackwell Hall*. He instituted many good and wholsome Lawes. Hee gave great priviledges to the maintaining of Temples, Cities, Ploughes, &c. He began the foure high waies of *Britaine*, which were perfected by his sonne *Belinus*: Hee built the two Townes of *Malmsbury* and the *Vies*, and was the first that made for himselfe a Diadem of Gold, with which hee was crowned with great solemnity: Insomuch, that some Writers name him the first King of *Britaine*, stiling all his predecessors only Dukes, Rulers, and Governours. Hee when hee had well and honourably governed the Land for the terme of forty yeares dyed, and was buried in the foresaid Temple of *Peace* within *London*, leaving to succed him two sonnes, *Belinus* and *Brennus*.

Donwallo *the first crowned King of Brit.*

Beliuns *and* Brennus.

These two brothers divided the land betwixt them, and continued in great fraternall unity for the space of five yeares: after which terme *Brennus* ambitious to have more Land or all, made mortall warre against his Brother, who vanquished him in battaile, so that hee was forced to forsake the land, and arrived in *Armorica*,

morica, now called *Little Britaine*, ſome write into *Norway*: Howſoever, by the ſupply and aſſiſtance of forraigne Princes, he made many inroads into the Land, (too long here to relate) to the great diſturbance of his brother: At length he aſſembled a ſtrong and puiſſant Army, againſt whom *Belinus* came with a mighty hoaſt, as his manifeſt and mortall enemy. But as their armies were ready to joyne battaile, their Mother, whoſe name was * *Cornway*, (of a more indulgent and penetrable nature, than the cruell and ſavage *Widen*, before named) expoſed her ſelfe in perſon betweene the two Hoaſts; and in a diſcreet manner and motherly demeanour, uſing withall ſuch paſſionate and moving Oratory to her two ſonnes, that at length ſhee ſetled a ſteadfaſt unity and peace betwixt them: After which accord made, they joyned both their hoaſts, and with them Conquered a great part of *Gallia*, *Italy*, and *Germany*: which done, *Belinus* returned into *Britaine*.

An indulgent mother.
*or Corniven na.

Where when he came, hee repaired old and decaied Cities, and alſo built a new one upon the River of *Vske*, neare unto *Severne*, called *Carenske*, and after the City of *Legions*: becauſe in the time of *Claudius Cæſar* divers *Roman* Legions were there billited and lodged, now called *Carleon*: Hee built alſo an harbour or ſmall Haven for ſhips to ride in, in *Troynovant*; in the Summet or top whereof ſtood a veſſell of *Braſſe*, in which after his death his burnt

The City of Legions, Carleon.

The building of Bellinsgate.

burnt ashes were inclosed, which still retaines the name of *Belingsgate.* In which interim, *Brennus* desirous to win fame and honour abroad, with an hoast of *Senonensian* Galls, (so called because they dwelt about the City of *Sena*) built in *Italy*, and *Gallia*, these Cities following, *Mediolanum*, or *Milleine*, *Papia*, or *Pavie*, *Burganum*, *Sena*, *Comum*, *Brixia*, *Verona*, *Vialenza*, *Cremona*, *Mantua*, *&c.* Hee overcame the *Romans* at the River *Albia*, eleven miles from *Rome*, and tooke the City all save the Capitoll, to which they layd siege, and one night whilst the Guardians thereof were asleep, they undermined the earth, and were likely to have wonne it, but a noble *Roman* named *Manlius Torquatus* waking, by the crie of Geese and Ganders, prevented the *Galls*, and saved the Capitoll: For which cause the *Romans*, for a long time after, on the first day of *Iune*, did annually celebrate the feast of *Ganders.*

Cities builded by Brennus.

The feast of Ganders.

But *Brennus* and his people held the *Romans* so short, that they slew many of the Senators, and compelled the survivers to lay him downe a thousand pound weight in Gold, besides they took the spoyle of the City, so that they were inforced to call backe *Furius Camillus*, whom they had before most ungratefully banisht from *Ardea*, and created him the second time *Dictator*, who gave strong battaile to the *Galls*, and won from them all the gold and jewells, which they had taken from the *Romans*: Therefore *Bren* turned his Army towards *Greece*, entering

Brennu *invadeth* Greece

Mace-

Macedonia, and dividing his people into two hoaſts, the one he retained with himſelfe, and ſent the other into *Galatia*, which after was caled *Gallogræcia*, and laſtly from *Gallogræcians* the Nation were termed *Galathians*: Then *Bren* conquered *Macedonia*, and overcame their Duke or King *Soſthenes*, and after ſpoyled the gods of their Temples, and ſaid in ſport, *Rich gods ought to contribute towards men ſome part of their wealth.* Thence hee came to *Delphos*, where the Oracle was, and robbed the Temple of *Apollo*: upon which, *there was a great Earthquake, and Haile ſtones of mighty weight and bigneſſe, which deſtroyed ſome part of his Hoaſt, and upon the reſt an huge part of the rockie mountaine fell and buried them in the Earth; and* Bren *being wounded, and deſpairing of ſafety, drew his Sword and killed himſelfe.* And his brother *Belinus*, after hee had honourably governed the Kingdome of *Britaine*, with his brother, and alone, for the ſpace of twenty ſixe yeares, expired, and was buried at *Belingſgate*, leaving a Sonne behinde him called *Gurguintus Barbaroſſe*, or *Gurguint* with the red Beard.

The death of Brennus.

Gurguintus.

Hee beganne his Reigne in the yeare of the world foure thouſand eight hundred thirty foure, he conquered *Denmarke*, and forced from them an annuall Tribute of *one thouſand pound.* After which victory hee ſayled towards *England* in great triumph, but in his courſe upon the ſea, hee met with a Fleet of thirty Sayle, who *haling* them, and demanding of what Countrey

Denmarke made tributary to England.

Countrey they were, and the purpoſe of their Navigation? they anſwered him, *Their people were called* Balenſes, *and that they were exiled from* Spaine, *and with their wives and children had long ſayled upon the ſea, beſeeching the King to have compaſſion of them, and to grant them within his large dominions ſome place to inhabit; and they would bee his true and faithfull ſubjects.* The King commiſerating their eſtate, by the advice of his Barons, granted them a wide and vaſt Countrey, which is the fartheſt of the weſterne Iſlands, which of their Captaine *Irlomall* was called *Ireland*, and that was the firſt plantation of that Countrey. And after this *Gurguintus* had eſtabliſhed the Lawes of his fore-fathers, and exerciſed juſtice amongſt his Subjects for the ſpace of nineteene yeares, he dyed and was buried at *Troynovant*, leaving a ſonne called *Guintolinus*.

The firſt plantation of Ireland.

Hee with great honour and clemency guided the Land, taking to wife an honourable and learned Lady called *Marcia*, who added to the former Lawes of the Land other wholeſome ſtatutes and decrees, which were greatly imbraced, & continued long of efficacy and force, which *Alured* long after King of *England* cauſed to be tranſlated out of the *Britiſh* into the *Saxon* tongue, and called them *Marthe he lege*, or the *Marcian* Lawes: to this woman, for her great wiſedome, the government of the Kingdome was committed, with the Guardianſhip of his ſonne *Cecilius*, for the ſpace of twenty

Cecilius.

ſixe

ſixe yeares: after which time, the King expired, and was buried at *London*: of this *Cecilius* there is little or nothing remembred, but that he governed the Realm 15 years, leaving to ſucceed him his ſon *Kimarus*, who was a wild yong man, and irregular both in his private life, and publicke government, who when he had reigned three yeares, being in his diſport of hunting was trayterouſly ſlaine by his ſervants: Him ſucceeded his ſon *Elanius*, who expired in the ſecond of his reigne, whom ſucceeded his baſtard ſonne called *Morindus*, begotten of his Concubine *Faugreſtela*.

Kimarus.

Elanius.

Morindus.

He was made King in the yeare of the world foure thouſand eight hundred foureſcore and ten, who was a Prince of great valour and courage, but given to wrath and cruelty, of goodly preſence & comely perſonage, but a mervailous ſtrength above all the Nobles of the Realme. In his time came the King of *Mauritania*, and invaded his Realme, whom he incountred with a puiſſant army, and chaſed to ſea, taking many of his Souldiers priſoners, whom he cauſed in his owne view to be put to many cruell and tormenting deaths: at length riding upon the Sea Strand, he eſpyed an huge Monſter which the waters caſt up alive, which out of his great courage, and ambitious of glory, purpoſing to ſlay with his owne hands, he was by it devoured, after he had governed the kingdome eight years, leaving behinde him five ſonnes, *Gorbomannus*, *Archigallo*, *Elidurus*, *Vigenius*, and *Peridurus*:

Gorbomanus. *Gorbomannus* being the first begotten sonne of *Morindus*, succeeded his Father, being a just Prince, in whose time was more riches and plenty than in any of the dayes of his predecessors: who to the great sorrow both of his Peeres and people dyed without issue, after hee had reigned eleven yeares: after whom, his second

Archigallo brother *Archigallo* was instated in the Soveraignty: this Prince was of a contrary condition to the former, who gave himselfe to dissension and strife, imagining causes against his Nobles to deprive them of their possessions and dignities, and raising men of base and sordid birth and quality to office and honour: And so he could inrich himselfe, not caring how hee impoverisht his subjects. For which, by one assent of the Nobility and Commons, he was deposed from all regall dignity, after hee had tyrannized five yeares.

Elidurus. In whose stead was instated the third brother *Elidurus*, in the yeare of the world foure thousand nine hundred and fifteene, who was so milde and gentle to his Subjects, that they added to him a firname, and called him *Elidure the meeke*: To expresse the goodnesse of his condition, it happened that hunting in a Wood called *Calater*, neare unto *Yorke*, hee found his banisht brother wandring in the thicke of the Forrest, whom he no sooner saw, but dismounted from his Steed, and imbraced him in his armes, and so conveighed him into the City privately, where hee concealed him for a time,

A rare president in a brother.

and

and at length feigning himſelfe ſicke, hee ſo wrought with his Nobility ſeverally and apart, that hee had won them to re-inſtate his brother *Archigallo* in the Throne, after he himſelfe had governed for the terme of five yeares, who being againe advanc't to the ſupreme power and Majeſty, hee changed his former Conditions, ordering all things according to equity and Juſtice during his naturall life, and then dyed, after he had laſtly reigned ten yeares, and lyeth buryed at *Yorke*. Then was *Elidurus* againe made King: againſt whom his two yonger brothers *Vigenius* and *Peridurus* had great indignation, becauſe for his vertue and piety he was ſo much beloved of the *Britons*, therefore they conſpired againſt him, and tooke him priſoner in battaile, when the ſecond time hee had reigned two yeares, committing him unto ſafe cuſtodie.

The death of Archigallo.

Theſe two Brothers were then joyntly made Kings, and divided the Land betwixt them: *Vigenius* dyed, after he had governed his part of the Kingdome ſeven yeares: after whoſe death *Peridurus* ſeized the whole under his Dominion, who ruled with great Temperance and Prudence: inſomuch, that hee was praiſed above his other brethren, and *Elidurus* quite forgot, who after he had reigned with his brother and alone for the terme of nine yeares expired: after whom *Elidurus* was fetcht from priſon, and the third time inſtated in the Throne, who continued in his former ſincerity and integrity;

Elidure *the third time made King.*

and lastly, being of a good age, ended his life, when hee had this last time governed foure yeares, and was buried at *Carleil*, leaving a Son called *Gorbomannus*, who began his raigne in the yeare of the World foure thousand nine hundred forty five: after whom succeeded *Margan*, and after *Margan*, his brother *Emerianus*, who was deposed for his cruelty and tyranny: after whom successively raigned twenty Kings, of whom small or no mention is made by any approved Author: the last of which was called *Blegabridus* a cunning Musitian, who for his excellency in that faculty, was called of the *Britains*, god of *Glee-men*, or Minstrells. After whom succeeded nine Kings (of whom there is left neither name or memory, saving that the last of them was named *Hely*, who governed the Kingdome forty yeares, wanting seven months, which time of thirty three successive Kings, that is, from *Elidure* to the last yeare of *Hely*, amounted to one hundred fourescore and sixe yeares: This *Hely* left behind him three sons, *Lud*, *Cassibeline*, and *Nennius*.

Gorbomanus *the second.*

Margan. Emerianus.

Blegabridus.

King Hely.

King Lud.

Lud the eldest sonne of King *Hely* began his Reigne in the yeare of the world five thousand one hundred thirty one, who in all his actions shewed himselfe honourable, repaired old Temples, and builded new, and so of Cities and Townes: but especially in *Troynovant* hee caused sundry structures to bee made, both for the inlarging and beautifying of the City, walling it round, and ditching it about, and in the west

weſt part of the Wall made a ſtrong gate, and commanded it to be called after his name *Ludſgate*: and for he much affected the City, as the place where he moſt frequented, hee changed the name thereof from *Troynovant* to *Caerlud*, or *Luds Towne*, now *London*: Hee was ſtrong and mighty in ſubduing his enemies, liberall, given to hoſpitality, and much loved and feared of the *Britains*, who reigning in great peace and proſperity eleven yeares then dyed, and was buryed in *Port-Lud*, or *Ludgate*, leaving two Sons, *Androgeus*, and *Tenantius*.

Luds *Towne*, *now* London.

In regard of the pupillage and minority of the two young Princes, *Caſſibelan* their Vncle, and brother to King *Lud* was made King in the yeare of the world 5142. This man was of great wiſedome and courage, exerciſing Juſtice mixt with mercy amongſt his ſubjects: inſomuch, that they favoured him greatly above his Nephewes: yet he provided that they were royally educated according to their births, and when they came to yeares of diſcretion, he gave to *Androgeus* the City of *London*, and the Earledom of *Kent*, and to *Tenantius* the Dukedome of *Cornwall*, &c.

Caſſibelan *made King of* Britaine.

CHAP.

Chap. 3.

The first conquest of this Land by Julius Cæsar: Britaine *made tributary to the* Romans: *the birth of our Saviour under Cimbeline King of* Britaine: *How* Southampton *came to bee so called, and the Citie of* Gloceſter, *and* Coilcheſter: Veſpatians *conqueſt of the Iſle of* Wight: *of* Catneſſe *in* Scotland: *of* Lucius *the first* Chriſtian *King of the* Britaines: *and of other* Roman *Governours.*

Julius Cæsar *ambitious to Conqeur* Britaine.

Caius Iulius Cæsar, being imployed by the Senate of the famous City of *Rome*, with *Lucius Publius* his Collegue in the warres of *Gallia*, now called *France*, being on the Sea ſide, at *Callis*, beholding the white Cliffes and Rocks of *Britaine*, demanded of the Natives what manner of people inhabited this Iſland, and being fully ſatisfied concerning the people and commodities thereof, he was ambitious to adde it to the *Roman* Empire; and to that purpoſe ſent Meſſengers to *Caſſibelan*, then King, to make him and his Land tributary to *Rome*: At which he being highly moved, ſent him backe peremptory anſwer, that every Soveraigne was bound

to

to keep his Subjects from ſlavery and ſervitude, and maintaine them in their Franchiſes and liberties, and that hee would doe to his utmoſt ability and power: With this anſwer *Cæſar*, who was of an invincible Courage, much incenſed, inſtantly made ready his Navy, and ſayled towards *Britaine*, with purpoſe to adde this Kingdome to his conqueſt of *France*, but the *Britaines* had pitcht ſtakes on the ſhore, which much hindred their landing, whilſt *Caſſibelan* gathering a ſtrong Hoſt gave the *Romans* battaile, and beat them backe unto their ſhips: but after he had new rigged and repaired his Navy, and furniſht himſelfe with a ſufficient Army he returned againe the ſecond time, and was likewiſe beaten backe to his great diſhonour: For which victory twice obtained by the *Britaines*, he aſſembled all his Lords, and made a great triumph at *London*, where were ſundry martiall exerciſes performed: in the performance of which, one of *Androgeus* his Knights having ſlain one of the Kings Kinſmen, whom hee much loved, hee ſent to have him ſtand to the tryall of the cauſe; but *Androgeus* denyed to give up to the cenſure of the Law, and departed in ſecret, (without taking leave) from the Court, which gave *Caſſibelan* great cauſe of incenſement againſt him.

His firſt attempt and ſucceſſe.

His ſecond attempt.

Difference betwixt the K. and Androgeus.

Whoſe indignation *Androgeus* juſtly fearing, ſent Letters unto *Cæſar*, that if hee would make a third attempt upon this Countrey, hee with all his whole power would bee ready to aſſiſt him

him againſt his Uncle, pretending that he not onely uſurped his right in the *Crowne*, but had done to him divers other affronts and injuries. *Cæſar* glad of ſo good an opportunity, after Hoſtages given for his fidelity, (which were his ſonne *Sceva* with thirty others of the ſonnes of his Nobility and Gentlemen) a third time invaded the Land, which *Caſſibelan* hearing, gave him a ſtrong battaile in a valley neare unto *Canterbury*, in which he had the better of the day, till *Androgeus* comming in with his freſh forces turned the Dy of warre, ſo that *Caſſibelan* with his *Britaines*, were forced to forſake the field, and after a great ſlaughter of the *Britaines*, retyred himſelfe to a place of ſafety, where *Cæſar* kept him ſo ſtrictly in, that hee was forced to ſubmit himſelfe, paying to the *Romans* an annuall tribute of 3000 pounds: After which, *Cæſar* would have made *Androgeus* King; but not daring to truſt his Nation which he had ſo lately betrayed, hee went with *Cæſar* to *Rome*, where he ended his life. *Caſſibelan* reigned after this conqueſt of the *Romans* ſeven yeares, in all ſixteene: and dying, left the Scepter to the younger ſonne *Tenantius*, who governed the Realme with all diligence and Juſtice for the ſpace of twenty three yeares, leaving the Soveraignty to his ſonne *Cimbelinus*.

Cæſars *third attempt upon this Iſland.*

Britaine *made Tributary to* Rome.

Tenantius.

He was made King in the yeare of the world five thouſand one hundred and fourſcore, in the nineteenth of whoſe Reigne our bleſſed Savi-

Saviour was borne of the Virgin *Mary*, which maketh the yeare of the world from the Creation of *Adam* to the Incarnation of our *Redeemer* (by the computation of *Iſidore*, *Bede* and others) five thouſand one hundred and twenty nine yeares: ſo that Chriſt was *Incarnate* from *Noahs* flood, or the generall Deluge two thouſand nine hundred and fifty ſeven: after *Abraham*, two thouſand and ſeventeene: after *David* King of *Iſrael*, one thouſand threeſcore and fifteene: from the Tranſmigration or the Captivity of the *Jewes* to *Babylon* five hundred and twenty: After *Brutes* plantation in this Iſland, eleven hundred thirty ſixe: After *Alexander* the great about three hundred twenty five: After the building of *Rome*, ſeven hundred twenty nine: and in the beginning of the two and fortieth yeare of *Octavius Auguſtus Cæſar* then Emperour of *Rome*, *&c.* But to come backe to the Hiſtory, *Cimbeline* after hee had worthily governed the Land thirty five yeares, yeelded his due to nature, and was interred in *Caer-Lud*, or *London*, leaving two ſonnes, *Guiderius* and *Arviragus*.

The birth of our Saviour.

A computation of the times.

Guiderius, the eldeſt ſonne of *Cimbelinus*, began his Raigne in the yeare after our Bleſſed Saviours Incarnation ſeventeene, who having a great confidence in his riches and ſtrength, denyed to pay any tribute to the *Romans*, which had beene tendred annually from the time of *Iulius Cæſar* to his dayes: For which, *Claudius* then Emperour of *Rome* came over with a

Guiderius K. *of Britaine.*

mighty Hoaſt, and recovered it againe: in the Hoaſt of the *Romans* was a great Captain called *Hamo*, who in the Battaile put upon him the Armour and habit of a *Britaine*: By which meanes, having acceſſe to the place where the King fought in perſon, he ſlew him; and eſcaped: Of which diſaſtrous accident his brother *Arviragus* having intelligence, armed himſelfe with the Cognizance of the dead King, and continued the battaile with ſuch valour and courage, that in the end hee put the *Romans* to flight. *Guiderius* being thus ſlaine by *Hamo*, after hee had ruled the Kingdome twenty eight yeares, leaving no iſſue to ſucceed him, his brother *Arviragus* by the generall ſuffrage both of the Peeres and people, was inveſted in his ſtead.

Hamo a great Captain of the Romans.

This Martiall and magnanimous Prince tooke upon him the government of the Land in the yeare of our Saviour forty foure: He was alſo for his great valour by ſome Authors called * *Armager*: who ſtrongly made warre upon the *Romans*, and after in a battaile ſlue *Hamo*, (who had formerly cowardly kild his brother) neare to an Haven or Port of the Sea, and after cauſing his body to be peecemeale cut, caſt it into the Ocean, for which it was called *Hamoes Haven*, and ſince *Southampton*: *Claudius* much admiring the courage of *Arviragus*, ſent to *Rome* for his daughter *Gemiſſa*, and gave her in marriage to him upon conditions of peace: and to make the ſolemnities of the Nuptialls more

Arviragus *made King.*

* *Or bearing Armes.*

From whence Southampton *tooke its name.*

more famous, hee called the City where they were kept *Claudio Ceſtria*, wch before was ſtiled *Carleon*, and after *Glovernia*, of a Duke called *Glovio*, but now *Gloceſter*: after which, *Claudius* ſent certaine of his Legions to governe *Ireland*, and departed towards *Rome*, *Arviragus* then repayred decayed Cities and Caſtles, and ruled with ſuch juſtice & integrity, that hee intyred to him all the hearts of his Subjects, and as his riches, ſo alſo increaſed his pride, ſo that he denyed the *Tribute* to *Rome* before granted: therefore a great Duke called *Veſpatian* was ſent from the Senate, who overcame him in battaile, and forced him to become tributary, which ſome writers affirme was meerely at the interceſſion and intreaty of the Queene *Geniſſa*, and no coaction or conſtraint from *Veſpatian*, who after he had wonne the Iſle of *Wight* returned with honour to *Rome*: After which, *Arviragus* grew more tractable towards the *Romans*, and continued in their great grace and favour: who after he had nobly governed the *Britaines* for the ſpace of 30 yeares expired, and was interred at *Claudioceſtria*, or *Gloceſter*, leaving to ſucceed him a ſonne called *Marius*.

Claudio Ceſtria, or Gloceſter.

The Iſle of Wight *conquered by* Veſpatian.

Hee was crowned King in the yeare of our bleſſed Saviour threeſcore and foureteene, a wiſe and juſt man, and flouriſhed in great proſperity and wealth: in whoſe time one *Londricus* (whom ſome writers call *Rodicus*) with a mighty Army of *Picts*, or *Scythians*, whom ſome alſo call *Gothes*, and *Huns*, landed in a part

Marius *King of* Britaine.

of *Scotland*, waſting and ſpoyling whereſoever he came with Iron and fire, whom *Marius* met in Battaile, and gave him a great overthrow, in which their Duke *Loudricus* was ſlaine: in remembrance of which victory, in *Staniſmore*, a place of *Weſtmaria*, or *Weſtmerland*, where this battaile was fought, he cauſed a great ſtone or pillar to be erected, upon which was inſcribed in capitall Letters *Marii victoria.* The remnant of the Army that ſurvived the battaile, humbly beſought the King to allow them ſome place under his dominions in which to inhabite, who commiſerating their caſe, granted them a place in *Scotland*, called *Cathneſſe*, to whom the *Britaines* diſdaining to give their daughters in marriage, they allyed themſelves with the *Iriſh*, and were after called *Pictavians*: *Marius* having thus ſubdued his enemies, gave him ſoly to ſtudy the weale of his Subjects, and lived peaceably his whole life time after: and laſtly, payed his naturall Tribute, and was buried at *Carleil*, leaving a ſonne named *Coillus*, or *Coill.*

Cathneſſe *in* Scotland *when inhabited, and by whom.*

When he had reigned 52 *yeares.*

Coill was inaugurated in the yeare of the Incarnation one hundred twenty ſixe. This Prince had his breeding in *Italy* amongſt the *Romans*, by which reaſon there grew great affinity and friendſhip betwixt the two Nations, for he became their willing Tributary: Hee was very bountifull to all men, by which hee purchaſed great love both from the Lords and Commons: Hee built the Towne in *Eſſex* called *Coilcheſter*,

Coil *King of Britaine.*

Coilcheſter, and when he had peaceably governed the Realme for the ſpace of foure and fifty yeares, he dyed and was buried at *Yorke*, leaving a ſonne called *Lucius*, who was inaugurated in the yeare of grace one hundred and foure ſcore, who had the honour to be called the firſt Chriſtian King of this Iſland, who being a man devoutly given, ſent to *Eleutherius* then Biſhop of *Rome* to be inſtructed in the true faith, who to that purpoſe imployed two learned men, called *Fuganus*, and *Dimianus*, who were honourably received by this King *Lucius*, and by whom hee, and a great part of the *Britaines* were converted from Paganiſme and Idolatry to the true Chriſtian beliefe, which hapned in the eighth yeare of his Raigne, who after his converſion ordained that all the Idolatrous Arch-Flamins and Flamins ſhould bee made Arch-biſhops and Biſhops, to the number of three Archbiſhops, and twenty eight Biſhops, and ſhould have the government of the *Church* lately eſtabliſht. Theſe being confirmed by the fore-named Biſhop of *Rome*, he indowed them with lands and poſſeſſions, and conſecrated all the Pagan Temples to the worſhip of Chriſt: and when hee had peaceably governed the Land for the ſpace of twelve yeares, hee left this earthly Tabernacle for a better, and was buryed at *Gloceſter*: who becauſe hee dyed without Heire, the Land grew into great combuſtion for the terme of fifty yeares, in which none had the abſolute nomination of King or Soveraigne.

Lucius the firſt Chriſtian King in Britaine.

Lucius dyeth without iſſue.

Then

Severus *named himselfe King of Britaine.*

Then *Severus* the *Roman* Emperour tooke upon him the government of the Realme in the yeare of grace two hundred and eight, and ruled the Kingdome five yeares; in which time he caused a Ditch and Wall to bee made of Turves and stakes of an hundred and two and twenty Miles in length, from *Durham* to the *Scotch* Sea, during which, the *Picts* with their Duke or Leader *Fulgenius* came out of *Scotland* with a strong army, and destroyed much of the Countrey beyond *Durham*, against whom *Severus* (for his Conquest of *Parthia*) sirnamed *Parthicus*, assembled a great Hoast of *Romans* and *Britaines*, and gave them battaile neare unto *York*, in which he was slain, and his army discomfited, and in that City lyeth interred, leaving behinde him two sons, namely *Geta* and *Bassianus*. This *Bassianus* was the sonne of *Severus* a *British* woman, and he had *Geta* by a *Roman* Lady; the *Britaines* therefore made the son of their Countrywoman their Soveraigne, in the yeare of Grace two hundred and twelve: But the *Romans* held for *Geta*: For which, mortall war grew betwixt the two brothers, in which *Geta* was slain, and *Bassianus*, who was after made Emperor having incestuously married his stepmother; for which, & many other tyrannies exercised by him on the natives, he grew into great hatred of the people, and was slaine at a place called *Edessa*, after hee had beene Emperour for the space of seven yeares.

Bassianus *made King of Britaine.*

Carassius *aspireth to the Crowne.*

In this interim of his Reigne, one *Carassius* a *Bri-*

Britain of low birth, but eminent in armes, and the practice of Martiall Exercises, obtained of the Senate the keeping of the Coasts and Frontiers of the Land, and to oppose the invasion of all strangers: so that he drew to him many hardy Knights of the *Britans*, promising unto them many donatives, with honour and office, if they would make him King of the Land: which so far prevailed with them, that they with an unanimous consent proclaimed him their Soveraigne and King; against whom *Bassianus* moving battaile, and to suppresse them as rebels, was slaine by this *Carassius*, who tooke upon him the Regall Dignitie, in the yeare of the Incarnation of Christ, two hundred and eighteene.

When the *Romans* had notice of the death of their Emperour *Bassianus*, they sent into *Britain* a great Captain cald *Alectus*, with three Legions to punish the pride and rebellion of *Carassius*, to which Captain *Fortune* was so favorable, that he chaced him from place to place, and in the end slue him in battaile, after he had eight years usurped. This *Alectus* for his good service done, was made *Consul* of *Rome*, and Governour of the Land, who hotly pursued divers British Lords, who had tooke part with *Carassius* against the *Romans*, and exercised great tyranny amongst them, so that hee grew into great hatred and contempt of the Natives. And therefore they accited one *Asclepiodotus* Duke of *Cornwall*, who gathered a great hoast of the *Bri-*

Alectus *made Ruler of* Britain.

Britains, and made warre against the *Romans*, chasing them from place to place, and Country to Country; so that at the last *Alectus* was glad to retire himselfe within the fortifications of *London*, whither *Asclepiodotus* pursued him, and laid siege about the City, provoking him to battaile, who at length issuing out with his forces, many were slaine on both sides, but in the end *Alectus* was slaine, after hee had sixe yeares governed the Land.

The death of the Roman Alectus.

When *Livius Gallus* a *Roman* Captain understood the death of their Generall, hee with the survivours of the Army, retyred into the Citie for his best security, where for a while I leave him.

CHAP.

CHAP. 4.

The Duke of Cornwall *made King of* Britaine, *how* Walbrook *took firſt name:* Conſtantius *the* Roman *marrieth with* Helena, *daughter to King* Coill, *and is made King: His Reigne and buriall: His ſonne* Conſtantine *made King after him, who was cald the Great, and was the firſt Chriſtian Emperour: His great Devotion, and after falling into Hereſie:* Octavian *his Deputy in* Britain, *uſurpeth, and after made King:* Maximinus *a* Roman, *by Marriage with his daughter, ſucceeds him, &c.*

Aſclepiodotus King of the Britains.

Asclepiodotus Duke of *Cornwall*, began his Dominion over the *Britans* in the yeare of Grace, two hundred thirty two, who entred the City of *London*, before by him beſieged: where he ſlue this *Livius Gallus*, neere unto a Brook which ran then through a part of the City, from whom it was called *Gallus*, or *Wallus brook*, and the ſtreet *VVal-brooke* even unto theſe times. Thus having quite vanquiſhed the *Romans*, hee governed the Realme in great peace, exerciſing Juſtice, exalting meriting and good men, and puniſhing the refractory, and evilly diſpoſed,

Whence Walbrook *took the name.*

sed, till at length, a great discontent (stirred up by wicked and seditious persons) was raised betwixt him and *Coillus* or *Coil*, who was then Earle or Duke of *Kaircollin*, or *Colchester*: so that they assembled their severall forces, and met in battaile, in which conflict *Asclepiodotus* was slaine, after hee had governed the Realme (according to the most Writers) thirty yeares.

Coil made K. of Britaine.

Then *Coil* began his Dominion over the Land in the yeare of the Incarnation two hundred, threescore and two, who governed peaceably for a time: for the Senate of *Rome* were glad of the death of the former King who had beene a great enemy and persecutour of their Nation, & being then in great trouble amongst themselves, could not conveniently send over fresh forces in the Land, but at length their domestick discords being compounded, and the State setled in peace, Hearing that this *Coil* also denied them tribute, they sent hither a Noble & prudent Prince cald *Constantius*, with a puissant army, against whom *Coil* assembled his *Britains*, but greatly dreading the power of this *Roman* President, he sent to him to commune and treat of peace, with the acknowledgment of the Tribute due unto the Senate, of which assurance being given and taken on both sides, *Coil* died within a moneth after, having governed the *Britains* for the tearme of twenty seven yeares.

Constantius first comming into Britain.

Constantius at the intercession of the Nobles of the Land tooke to wife *Helena* the daughter of the late King, with the entire possession of the Realme,

Constantius married to Helena.

Realme, and was inaugurated in the yeare two hundred fourſcore and nine. This *Helena* was held to be the faireſt Lady in the whole land, & withall very well verſt in literature and language, by whom hee received a ſonne called *Conſtantine:* This *Conſtantius* being of great courage and valour, ambitious to adde unto his Dominion ſubdued the *Almains*, or *Germans*, and ſlue of them in one battail threeſcore thouſand, and after many other victories, the two Emperours *Diocleſianus* and *Maximinianus* reſigned up their Imperiall Dignitie to *Conſtantius*, making one *Galerius* a partner with him in the Empire, which theſe two *Cæſars* divided betwixt them. *Galerius* governed in the Eaſt, that is, *Illiricum*, and all *Græcia*, with the Ilands, and *Conſtantius Italy*, and the Weſterne Kingdomes: after he ſubdued *Spain*, and a great part of *Gallia* or *France*, of which two Kingdomes he made his ſon *Conſtantine* Preſident and Governour: in the time that *Conſtantius* was King of *Britaine*, under the two foreſaid Emperours, S. *Albon* was martyred at *Verulam*, in the tenth perſecution of the Church, which began in the eighteenth yeer of *Diocleſian*, and endured for the ſpace of ten yeares, which was ſo violent and cruell, that in the ſpace of one moneth were martyred ſeventeene thouſand holy men and women, for the faith of Chriſt: This Noble Prince *Conſtantius*, after he had governed *Britaine*, and the Weſt part of the Empire, for the terme of thirty yeares, leaving his Succeſſor

Conſtantius made Emperor.

This Conſtantius lyeth buried at York.

Constantine his sonne by the famous Queene *Helena.*

Constantine *made King of* Britain.

Who began his Reigne in the yeare of Grace three hundred and nineteen: and at the decease of his Father was busied in the wars of *Gallia*, but hearing the report of his death, came over into *Britain*, and was made King. Hee was of a noble and affable condition, who though hee were a Pagan and misbeliever, yet hee used no tyrannie towards his subjects, neither compeld them to the worship of Idols, but to use their own laws with the liberty and freedome of conscience: whilst he thus governed *Britain*, with the Westerne part of the Empire, one *Maxentius* sonne to *Herculeus Maximianus*, who was partner with *Diocletian* in the Imperiall purple, was by assent of the Senate, chosen *Cæsar*, who first insinuated with all cnnning affability into the hearts of the plebeian multitude: but when he found himselfe strong in their opinions, hee exercised all tyranny that could be possibly devised, especially against the Christians: He likewise expelled his Father *Maximianus* from *Rome*, who sought to be again Emperour, with other great oppressions used against the Senate and Prime Nobility, of which *Constantine* having intelligence, he assembled a strong hoast of *Britains* and *Galls* to suppresse his great pride and insolence: leaving in his absence a great Duke called *Octavius*, or *Octavian* to governe the Land of *Britain* as his Vicegerent, or Deputy.

Maxentius.

Octavian *made Deputy Governour of* Britain.

Con-

Conſtantine having ſetled the State here, being on his journy, he ſaw (as in a Viſion) being upon his bed a Croſſe ſhining in the firmament, held by an Angell who ſaid unto him, Conſtantine *in hoc ſigno vinces*, that is, O *Conſtantine*, under this ſigne or banner thou ſhalt have victory: After which awaking, and conſidering well of his viſion or dream, hee called his chiefe Captains about him, and acquainted them therwith, preſently giving order that the Croſſe ſhould be portrayed in all his Enſignes, Eſcutcheons and Banners: being thus accommodated, he marched againſt the Tyrant *Maxentius*, and met him at a bridg called *Pont Milvium* where after long fight he chaced him and his whole army, where a great part of them were drowned in the River with himſelfe alſo, when hee had ruled as *Cæſar* about five yeares: after which victory, *Conſtantine* marched to *Rome*, where hee was received of the Senate and people, with great honour and triumph: ſoone after he received the Chriſtian Faith, and was baptized by *Sylveſter* the firſt of that name Biſhop of *Rome*: which done, he opened the priſons, & deſtroyed the Temples of the falſe gods, and dedicated others to the true & everliving God, pulling down their idols and opening thoſe Chriſtian Oratories as had beene ſhut, commanding divine ſervice to bee ſaid in them: He was the firſt alſo that gave any poſſeſſions to the Church of *Rome*, and ordained that the Biſhop of *Rome* ſhould be chiefe Biſhop, and all others to be obedient unto him, (which

The Croſſe firſt uſed in any Imperiall Enſigne.

Maxentius *drowned.*

Conſtantinus *great devotion and zeale.*

(which was before any ſuperſtition crept into the Church) hee alſo bore clay and ſtones upon his ſhoulders, to the foundation of the great Church dedicated to Saint *Peter*.

Hellen *the mother of Conſtantine.*

Whilſt *Conſtantine* thus laboured to plant the Chriſtian Faith, his mother *Hellen* being then in *Britain*, ſent unto him commendatory Letters, gratulating his great victories, in which ſhee ſeemed to rejoyce that hee had ſuppreſſed Idols, and demoliſht their Temples, but wondred, that hee had choſen for his God, a man who had been nayled to a Croſſe, &c. to which hee returned her anſwer, that hee would ſufficiently prove the God whom hee honoured and worſhipped was the Creatour of Mankind, and Maker of the World and all the creatures therein, and not man only, but God and Man, &c. For proof of which, after ſhe had aſſembled a Synod of *Iews*, to the number of ſevenſcore, *Sylveſter* with other Chriſtian Clerks were appointed to diſpute with them concerning the Faith and Goſpel, in which arguing, the *Iews* were confounded, and ſhe converted, and was a conſtant profeſſour of the true Faith and Religion all her life time after, I leave what the Legend relates concerning her ſeeking and finding the true Croſſe, and the nayles with which our bleſſed Saviour was faſtned thereto, and returne to her ſonne the Emperour, who greatly inlarged the famous City *Bizantium*, and beautified it with ſtately and ſumptuous buildings, and for the pleaſure which hee tooke in the ſituation

Hellena findeth the Croſſe.

thereof.

thereof, made it his Royall Seat, and cauſed it to be called after his name *Conſtantinople*, which is the City of *Conſtantine*: He was alſo of ſuch power and might in armes, that hee purchaſed to himſelfe the Title of *Conſtantine* the Great.

Conſtantine the Great.

Hee was, moreover, ſtiled the firſt Chriſtian Emperour, and did many things for the upholding of the Faith: of which ſeven by a learned Authour are eſpecially noted. Firſt, that Chriſt our bleſſed Saviour ſhould bee worſhipped as God, throughout his whole Dominions: Secondly, that what man or woman ſoever ſpake any blaſphemy againſt him, hee ſhould be moſt ſeverely puniſhed: Thirdly, that perſon who did any violence or injury to a Chriſtian man, becauſe he was of that belief, ſhould forfeit half his goods and poſſeſſions: Fourthly, that as the Emperor of *Rome* is Head of all temporall Princes, ſo the Biſhop of *Rome* ſhould be chief of all Eccleſiaſticall Prelats: Fifthly, that who ſo fled to a Church for refuge, and made it his Sanctuary, ſhould be there free from moleſtation and danger: Sixtly, that no man ſhould offer to erect any Church or Temple without the leave and licence of the Biſhop of that Dioceſſe: Seventhly, that every Prince ſhould give the tenth part of his Revenues toward the mayntenance of Churches and Temples, which law for example ſake hee confirmed by contributing unto them from his own poſſeſſions: after all which care of his to eſtabliſh the true Faith and Goſpell, hee fell into the deteſtable Hereſie of the *Arrians*, ban-

Seven Decres made by Conſtantine to the honour of his Saviour.

Constantine *infatuated with the Arrian heresie.*

banished Bishop *Sylvester* beforenamed; and persecuted many zealous and godly professors, after which (as mine Author affirmeth) he was strook with an incurable Leprosie. But now I return to *Octavian*, whom hee left his substitute in *Britain*.

Octavian *usurpeth the Crowne of Britain.*

Who during the long absence of the Emperour, ruled the Land to the great content of the Natives, but when hee had throughly invested himselfe into the hearts of the people, and thinking his Lord so far remote, and could not easily be drawne from so great a charge as the government of both the East and Westerne Empires, He thought to usurpe the Title of King, and to that purpose distressed such *Romans* as *Constantine* had left heere in the Land, and so took upon him the sole Soveraignity: of which when the Emperour had notice, hee sent hither in all haste a Prince called *Traherne*, who was uncle to his mother *Helena*, with three Legions of *Romans*, every Legion consisting on six thousand six hundred and six Knights, whom *Octavian* met in battaile neare unto *Portchester*, or as some Authors write, neere *Winchester*, and compeld *Traherne* to forsake the field, and flie towards *Scotland*, whither *Octavian* pursued him and gave him a second battaile, where hee and the *Britains* were discomfited, and himselfe with some few took shipping and sailed to *Norway*: but not long after he returned into *England*, with a strong Army of *Britains*, and *Norwayes*, in which *interim*, a *British* Earle who

Traherne sent into Britain.

greatly

greatly loved *Octavian*, ſlue *Traherne*, ſo that with little difficulty hee ſubdued the reſt of the Commons, who were left without a Commander, and repoſſeſſed the Land, which was from the time that *Conſtantine* made him Governor or Protector of the Land ten years.

Octavian thus re-inſtated, gathered great riches and treaſure, in ſo much that hee feared not the power of any forreigne Prince, and ruled the Nation in great peace and quietneſſe, who being growne aged and full of yeares, by the counſell of ſome of his *Britiſh* Noble men, he ſent one *Mauritius* ſon to *Caradock* Duke of *Cornwall* unto *Rome*. For an hopefull young Gentleman called *Maximian*, who was neere allyed to *Helena* the mother of *Conſtantine*, that he would come into this Land, and by marrying his only daughter, enjoy the Kingdome of *Britain*, after him: though divers perſwaded him to confer that honour upon *Conan Meriadock* his neere Couſin: but the former motion prevailed: And *Maximian* the ſonne of *Leonine* brother to *Hellen*, and Uncle to *Conſtantine* the Great, was ſent over with the beforenamed *Mauritius*, and with a ſufficient guard of *Romans* landed ſafely at the port of *Southampton*: which *Conan Meriadock* hearing, hee gathered a company of his friends and kinſmen, and becauſe the other came to diſpoſſeſſe him of that which hee held to be his right, Her purpoſed to ambuſh him in the way, and give him battaile: which being told to the King, he by his wiſdome, and power pre-

Octavian *made abſolute K. of* Britain.

Conon Meriadock.

Maximians firſt entrance into Britain.

vented it, ſo that *Maximian* came peaceably to Court, unto whom the King gave his daughter, and the Land with her for her Dower, and dyed ſoon after, when he had nobly and peaceably governed the Kingdome for the ſpace of fifty foure yeares.

CHAP. 5.

Maximian *made King of* Britaine, *and after Emperour : How* Armorica *came to be called* Little Britaine, *and this,* Britaine *the* Great : *Of* Urſula, *and the eleven thouſand Virgins :* Gratian *the laſt* Roman *that was King of the Land : The great diſtreſſes of the Kingdome : the ceſſation of their Tribute paid to* Rome : Conſtantine *brother to* Aldroenus *made King of the Realm, his death, and iſſue.*

Maximian K. *of* Britaine.

Maximian the ſonne of *Leonine*, and Couſin German to *Conſtantine* the great, was made King of *Britaine* in the yeare of Grace three hundred foureſcore and two, who proved a valiant and victorious Prince, but ſomewhat proud, and withall a perſecutor of the *Chriſtians*. And firſt there was great ſtrife betwixt him and *Conan*, with ſundry Conflicts, in which they ſped diverſly, but at length they were reconciled and made

made friends, ſo that he raigned for a time in great peace: in which interim, he gathered together much treaſure and riches: At laſt he was accited to move warre againſt the *Galls*, and landed with a great Hoaſt in *Armorica*, now called *Little Britaine*, which after hee had ſubdued by the ſword, hee gave it to *Conon Meriadock* to hold of him, and of the Kings of great *Britaine* for ever, commanding from that time, *Armorica* to be called *Little Britain*, and this Land *Britaine* the great: For which victory and others, his Knights proclaimed him Emperour, which increaſed both his pride and tyranny, ſo that he invaded the Lands of the Empire, and conquered a great part both of *France* and *Germany*, which was contrary to his Oath before ſworne to the two Emperors, *Gratian* and *Valentinian*, to whom when tydings was brought of this his invaſion, *Gratian* prepared to reſiſt him, but fearing his power and potency, fled to *Lyons*, where hee was ſlaine, and *Valentinian* compelled to forſake *Rome* and flie to *Conſtantinople*: Then *Maximian* made his ſonne *Victor* fellow with him in the Empire.

Armorica *firſt called* Litle Britaine.

Maximian *breaketh his oath, which was to be true to the Empire.*

During whoſe warres in *Italy*, *Conon Meriadock* not willing that hee or his people ſhould marry with any of the *French* Nation, ſent Meſſengers to *Dionotus* Duke of *Cornwall*, and governour of the Kingdome under *Maximian*, to ſend him his daughter *Vrſula*, with a certaine number of Virgins to bee coupled to him and

his Knights in marriage, who according to his request sent his daughter, with eleven thousand maids towards *Britaine* to that purpose, who by the way were taken at Sea, and piteously murdered: who so will know the manner thereof, I referre them to the *Legend of Saints*. *Maximian* thus tyrannizing in *Italy*, to great Commanders called *Guanus* and *Melga* were sent into *Britaine* to chastise all such as favoured the party of *Maximian*, who did here much outrage upon the Natives, afflicting them with great strage and massacre. Against whom, the Emperour sent a great Captaine called *Gracianus* or *Gracian*, with two Legions, who so knightly behaved himselfe, that hee chaced them in short space into *Ireland*, holding the land in peace for *Maximian*. In this *interim*, *Maximinian* continuing wars against the Empire to be absolute *Cæsar*, *Theodosius* sirnamed the elder, then *Emperour* of the east part of the world, hearing the death of the first *Gracian*, and the chacing of *Valentinian*, he with a mighty hoast sped himselfe to meete with *Maximian*, and gave him battaile at *Aquilea* a great City in *Italy*, in which *Maximians* forces were utterly discomfited, and himselfe tooke prisoner, whose head *Theodosius* commanded to be cut off: of whose death *Gracian* his deputy in *Britain*, having knowledge, he seized the Land to his owne use, after that *Maximian* had governed the same by the terme of eight yeares.

Ursula with eleven thousand Virgins.

The death of the tyrant Maximian.

Gracian *King of* Britaine.

Gracian, who of some writers is called *Munice-*

Municeps (which word may bee diverſly taken, either for an hired or waged Knight, or for a keeper of Preſents and Gifts, or bearing chiefe rule in a City or Province) beganne his dominion over the *Britaines* in the yeare of grace three hundred foureſcore and ten. Hee exerciſed gieat exaction and tyranny on his ſubjects, for which hee was very much hated and deſpiſed amongſt them, ſo that they ſundry wayes laboured his ſupplantation, and hourely inſidiated his life: but after many dangers eſcaped, they with a common aſſent invaded his Palace, and ſlew him, when he had reigned, or rather uſurped, for the ſpace of foure yeares.

The death of Gracian.

Of whoſe death *Guanus* and *Melga* having knowledge they returned out of *Ireland*, and with fire and ſword made great havocke in the Land: of which the *Romans* underſtanding, becauſe the Realme was then under their Tribute and tuition, they ſent one *Conſtantine* to have the rule of the Land, and the Regions about: but being found to bee an enemy to the *Empire* for divers outrages done by him during his Regency in *Francce*, therefore by the commandement of *Honorius* (then *Cæſar*) they ſent againſt him a valiant Captaine named *Conſtantius*, who ſlew him, neare to a Towne called *Arelat*: after which the *Britaines* were much diſtreſſed by the *Picts*, the *Scots*, and other ſtrange Nations, by reaſon whereof they were againe conſtrained to ſend to *Rome* for aid

Guanus *and* Melga.

Conſtantine.

Conſtantius.

aide, with a covenant that they would all continue subjects and servants to the Senate. Upon which request and promise, the Emperour *Honorius* himselfe came hither in person, and chaced hence all their forraigne enemies, and leaving the Land in peace, returned to his greater affaires in *Italy*.

The Emperour Honorius.

Who was no sooner departed, but the same enemies againe invaded them, to whom *Honorius* sent a second deliverance, exhorting them withall to be manly and couragious: But in regard of the remoteneſſe of the place, and the great troubles the Empire was then in, to trust to their owne valour and fortune, but to expect no more supplyes either from *Cæsar* or Senate; the *Roman* supplyes being then took out of the Land to maintaine the Imperiall warres, the Natives were worse distressed than before, for the *Picts* and *Scots* came out of their Dens and Caves where they had concealed themselves, and invaded them by multitudes: insomuch that by the enemies spoyles and robberies, they were brought to that extremity of poverty and misery, that they were inforced to pilfer and steale one from another; in which, sundry murthers were also committed, so that the ground lay unsowed, or manured, upon which great Dearth and hunger immediatly insued.

The Britaines forsaken of the Romans.

The great distresse of the Britaines.

Which to prevent, and withall to rid them from these great extremities, the best amongst them petitioned unto *Aetius*, (who was Master

ſter of the Chivalry of *Honorius* the Emperour, and at that time governed *France*) to commiſerate their eſtate, which to him they moſt paſſionatly expreſſed, but all was to no purpoſe, for hee ſlightly put them off with a peremptory denyall to lend them any ſuccour at all: ſtill their calamities augmented and the famine increaſed: ſo that laſtly the nobleſt and diſcreeteſt amongſt them, eſpecially the Arch-biſhop of *London*, whoſe name was *Guethelinus*, whom our Engliſh Chronicles call *Goſſeline*, concluded to ſend an Embaſſy to the King of little *Britaine*, whoſe name was *Aldroenus*: which this Arch-biſhop beeing learned and well ſpoken in perſon undertooke, who delivered their calamities and diſtreſſes with ſuch paſſionate efficacy that it wrought great commiſeration and compaſſion in the King, who after advice taken of his Lords, granted them a ſupply of ſufficient forces to recover their Franchiſes, and liberties, upon condition, that if God, who is the Lord of Hoaſts gave them victory, they ſhould Crown his brother *Conſtantine* King of *Great Britaine*, acknowledging him their Liege and Soveraigne, which conditions they gladly accepted, and ſwore to performe with all truth and fidelity.

Now it appeareth from the time of *Gratian* the laſt *Roman* that was King of the Land, the Nation of the *Britaines* during their multiplicity of miſeries, were without a Monarch or ſole Soveraigne for the ſpace of thirty nine yeares, till

Aetius denies them ſuccour.

Guethelinus Arch. biſhop of London.

Aldroenus' commiſerates the Britaines.

How long Britain was without a King.

till the comming in of the forenamed *Constantine* brother to *Aldroenus*, King of *Litle Britain*.

The end of the tribute and government of the Romans.

It is further to bee obserued, that here ended the Tribnte and Dominion of the *Romans*: neither had any of that Nation any rule over the Land after that time, which Tribute lasted and was paid to *Rome*, from the ninth yeare of King *Cassibelan*, to the dayes of the Emperour *Severus*, amounting to two hundred and fifty five yeeres. And from the Reigne of *Severus* to the first yeere of *Gratian* one huadred fourscore and three, and from the first of *Gratian* to the last yeare of their great misery (before expressed) forty three yeeres; so that from the time that *Iulius Cæsar* made this Isle of *Britaine* first tributary to the *Roman* Empire, to the comming in of *Constantine*, amounteth to foure hundred and one and thirty yeares: after this small digression, and yet worthy obseruation, I returne to the passages and proceeding in this Land of *Britaine*, and how it was governed.

An exact computation of the times.

The Archbishop with the Lords of this Realme, having sealed to the Covenants before named, they returned with a sufficient army under the conduct and command of Duke *Constantius*, and safely arrived at *Totnesse* in *Deuonshire*, (the place where *Brute* landed, the first Prince and Planter of this Island) whither assembled all the flower of the Nation who before were compeld to hide themselves in Dens and Caues: and to seeke shelter amongst Rocks and

and Mountaines: by whoſe power and martiall proweſſe, all the enemies of the Land were rowted and chaced, not one daring to ſhew his head. After which victory, the Land being againe ſetled in peace and quietneſſe, they conveighed their Captain *Conſtantine*, to the tower of *Kaercegent*, now called *Ciceſter*, and according to their former Covenants made with *Aldroenus*, ſaluted him as their Chiefe Lord Sovereigne, and there crowned, him King, in the yeare of our bleſſed Saviours Incarnation, foure hundred and three and thirty.

Conſtantine King of the Britaines.

This *Conſtantine* governed the Realme with great manhood and policie, ſo that he was not more beloved at home, then dreaded abroad: notwithſtanding, of any forreign atchievement done by Him, the *Engliſh Annals* make no mention, neither of any memorable thing performed by Him in His owne Kingdome, ſave that He kept it in great tranquillity and reſt, and that He received by His Wife three ſonnes, the eldeſt named *Conſtant* or *Conſtantius*, the ſecond *Aurelius Ambroſius*, the third *Vterpendragon*, all which in proceſſe ſucceeded Him in the Sovereignty: But for *Conſtance* the eldeſt, being ſomwhat heavy and dull witted, thinking Him not able to take upon Him any Regall Soveraignty, eſpecially to govern ſo noble a Nation, He cauſed Him to be ſhorne a Monke, and put him into the Monaſtery of Saint *Amphiable*, after cald Saint *Swithins* at *Wincheſter*, and the other two being then but yong children, Hee committed

Conſtantines *Royall Iſſue.*

How he diſpoſed of his children.

to Guardianſhip of the before-remembred *Goſſelin* Archbiſhop of *London*: In the Court of this *Conſtantine* was a certain *Pict* or *Scot*, much favoured by the King, and on whom hee had conferd many graces and Honours, making him of His Cloſet Counſell, and a partaker with Him in all his ſecrets, which perfidious and ingratefull traitour, watching his opportunity, ſlue Him in his Chamber when he had ten years ruled the Land.

The death of K. Conſtantine

There lived at that time in the Land a potent Duke called *Vortigerus*, or *Vortigernus*, who was a man wondrouſly politick and exceedingly ambitious, who taking the advantage of the time, knowing the ſtupidity of the eldeſt ſonne, and the inability of the two yonger (in regard of their minority) to reigne, He coloured his aſpiring to the Crown by a notable project, for hee pretending the right of the eldeſt brother, had it as a matter of conſcience to make Him King: and therefore tooke him out of the former Monaſtery and inveſted him in the Throne, in the year of Grace, foure hundred forty three; by which means he had the ſole management of the whole Kingdome, and *Conſtantine* the name only: whom after hee in ſhort time ſupplanted, and reigned in his ſtead: in whoſe dayes *Ambroſius Merlinus* the ſubject of our diſcourſe was born and uttered his predictions, &c.

Vortiger, or Vortigern.

Conſtantius *made* K. *of* Britain.

CHAP.

CHAP. 6.

A neceſſary digreſſion ſhewing the lives and reigns of 33 Kings of Britain *ſcarce mentioned by any of our Engliſh remembrancers, with an exact computation of the times, &c.*

TO make the former paſſages the more plain to the Reader, it is fit to keep a true computation of the Times, and looking back into our former hiſtoricall narration, perfect thoſe things which were left doubtfull, eſpecially in the *Inter-regnum* before ſpoken of: In which the names of many Kings, Princes, and Governours of the Kingdome were conceald: Divers Hiſtoriographers who write the paſſages of thoſe times, reckon from the laſt yeer of *Eliodure*, to the firſt of *Hely*, the father of K. *Lud*, 186 yeers, during which times, here raigned 33 Kings, (according to *Galfridus* and others) whoſe names thus follow, *Gorbovinian* (whom *Lanquet* the Chronicler calleth *Reygay*) ſon to *Garbomanus*, reignned for the term of ten yeers, after him *Morgan*, 14 yeers, whom ſucceeded *Emerianus*, or *Emerian*, who held the pincipality ſeven. *Iuall* called alſo *Ivall* followed him, and ſwayed the Scepter twenty, after whom came *Rimo*, and held the Dominion over the *Britains* 16, after whoſe expiration *Geruntius* was by the generall ſuffrage of the peers and people, admitted to the throne, and governed in greatpeace and proſperity 20 compleat yeers, who uo ſooner expired, but they

Of three and thirty Kings before ſcarce remembred.

Gorbovinian.

Morgan.

Emerianus.

Ivall.

Rimo.

Geruntius.

Catellus. made election of *Catellus*, or *Catel*, who ruled without any great molestation or disturbance ten: and then left the Dominion to *Coill*, who
Coil. ruled with great humanity and gentlenes for the space of 20 yeeres, and dying in a mature age, yielded up the crown and Scepter into the hands
Porrex. of *Porrex*, who kept and maintained them (though with some difficulty) five yeers, resign-
Cherimus. ing the principality to *Cherimus*, who tyrannizing over the people was supplanted, being compeld to yield up al his power and authority, after he had governed but 12 months into the hands
Fulgentius. of *Fulgen*, or *Fulgentius* who kept it peaceably, and to the great liking and applause both of the Nobles and Commons three yeeres, and some odde moneths, who had no sooner yielded to the common fate due to all mortality, but *Eliud*
Eliud, or Eldred. by some writers cald *Eldred*, stept into his room, but enjoyed it but for a short season, for he died within the compasse of one yeer, after hee came to take upon him the Sovereignty.

Androgeus. Then *Androgeus* aspired unto the Regall dignitie, but bore him so proudly and haughtily in his Soveraignty, that his subjects unanimous consented and made an insurrection against him, surprizing him in his palace, and forcing him to give up his Sword & Scepter, after he had tyran-
Vrian. nized one whole yeer, to his sonne *Vrian*, who sate in the Throne but three yeers, and then yielded up his due to Nature, after whom *Eliud* was
Eliud. invested in the state, who (as the rest of his predecessors) left little or nothing behind him worthy

thy memory, and when he had been King five yeers, departed this life, *Galfridus* reckoneth 3 other Kings ſucceſſively to follow *Eliud*, namely, *Dedacus*, *Cloterus*, and *Gurginetus*, but *Lanquet* (an Author well approved) will not admit them into his Chronicle, I therefore proceed with the reſt. *Three Kings by ſome Authors not admitted.*

It is agreed by all, that *Merianus* was King, and two yeares enjoyed the principality, but of what condition hee was, there is left no memory to poſteritie. *Meriarus.*

Four yeers alſo reigned his ſucceſſor *Bledinus*, whom ſome call *Bladunus*, a man raiſed to that honor by his valor, but being diſcended from obſcure parentage, & therefore not knowing himſelf wel in his greatnes (as is commonly ſeene by many) it was the cauſe of ſhortning both of his life & ſovereignty, for he was ſlain by the treaſon of his owne ſervants, of whoſe treacherous murder *Capenus* taking advantage, being a potent Lord, and in great opinion with the people, hee ſo far inſinuated into their affections, that with an unanimous ſuffrage, they proclaimed him King (for his predeceſſor died and left no heire behind him) in which authority hee demeaned himſelf like a royall and worthy Prince, and when hee had ſwayed the Scepter three years, he died, being very aged, and much lamented. *Bledirus.* *Capenus.*

Him ſucceeded one *Owen* a *Cambrian Britain*, who though hee could neither claime the priviledge of bloud, birth, or title, yet being valiant, proſperous in all his martiall employments, as managing the wars under *Capenus*, by whom he was greatly honoured, being alſo politick and wiſe, and a good ſouldiour, ſo a diſcreet ſtateſman, he was thought the worthieſt *Owen.*

then in the Kingdome, to take upon him the Dominion of the Realm, and so ended some troubles raised in his predecessors days, by his valor and wisdom he brought to a happy issue, and so died a single man, after he had two years governed the Kingdome: next him was inaugurated *Sisillius*, otherwise called *Cecilius*, who bore himselfe with great humanity and affability, during the time of his living a subject, studying popularity, and by sundry ways, insinuating himself into the hearts of the people, but when hee came to the Regall Title, and that the power and soveraignty was wholly in his owne dispose, he then began to expresse his naturall avaritious conditions, by exacting on the Commons, imposing divers taxes and tributes upon them, by which they were sore vexed and grieved, in so much that a rumour was raised amongst them, which they first only whispered, but at length animated by their intolerable impositions, they feared not to clamour aloud, that their former King died not without suspition of poyson: of which they spared not to accuse him, not only as an accessary, but the prime causer and procurer thereof: and therefore rising in armes against him, they drove him to that narrow exigent, that he was forc't to fly from one place of refuge to another, who at length gathering some few forces about him gave them battail in which he was slain, after he had governed the Kingdom two yeers, after whom *Blegabredus* reigned in his stead: this man had in him more musicke then majesty, for he was held most excellent both in minstrelsie and poesie, so that hee seemed to be son, or at least minion of *Apollo*, for hee not

Cecilius.

Blegabredus.

not only compoſed his own Hymnes and Ditties, but ſet them, and then ſung and playd to them, and becauſe it was an art rare in thoſe times, & practiſed by few, eſpecially by any of generous condition & quality, being excellent and eminent in a Prince, he was therefore by it the more honored and admired, who having ſwayd the Scepter 20 yeers departed this life, leaving to ſucceed him his brother *Archemail*, who was of a more ſtern & robuſtuous nature, a man unlettered, and therefore a contemner of all Arts and Sciences, who after he had governed the Realm two yeeres (but with more auſterity and rigour then his brother before him had done) in a full age expired.

Archemail.

After him reigned *Eldon*, or *Eldol*, no ſonne, but a kinſman (for the two brothers died iſſuleſs) who was a man of peace, and therfore the more indeered unto the hearts of his ſubjects, under whoſe Reigne they lived in great reſt & proſperity, gathering great ſtore of wealth about them, during the foure yeers of his Reigne, after which ſeaſon he changed this life for a new, being much lamented of his people, after whoſe death, ſtept up into the throne *Rodrech*, or *Rodian*, a man not (like his predeceſſor) beloved, as being litigious, and alwayes in contention with the Commons as holding them in contempt, only favouring the Nobility and Gentry, and to prefer and advance them greatly oppreſſed the other, extorting from them by ſundry exactions, for which hee grew into great hatred amongſt them: of which having intelligence, he thought ſeverely to puniſh them by arms, but was prevented by death, after hee had governed the kingdome not fully 4 yeers. In his place reigned *Samuel Penniſel*, whom ſome Writers would make

Eldol.

Rodrech, alias Rodian.

Samuel Penn. ſel.

two men,(but their judgments are not altogether approved) this man with great care & industry sought and laboured to pacifie the tumults and combustions before raised, & to that purpose, kept the Nobility and Gentry more short,so that he suffered them not (as before)to insult and tyrannize over the Country, but granted to them sundry immunities and priviledges, for which he was greatly beloved by them, but left the world after he had 5 yeers swayd the Scepter:

Pyrpyrhus whom *Pyrpyrhus* next succeeds, a man much affected by the people, and fortunate in all things saving his short Reigne,who died after two yeers sovereignty.

Capoyr. *Capoyr* came next to the Crown,& governed an equall time with them,of whom no memorable thing is recorded, for in two yeeres Reigne, a Prince hath scarcely time to express himself,what maner of King he would be,whether a tyrant,or father of his people, whether addicted to peace or war:he left one to succeed him named *Gligurt Divill*, who was a Prince very sober and discreet in all his actions, and was an upright Justicer,maintaining good Laws in his Dominions,but reigned four yeers only:his son *Hely* succeeded him before spoken of: so that all the time of these severall Kings Reigns, by those who writ contemporaries of the passages of seasons,and sought to reconcile them, by their computation; amounteth to 124 yeers.Thus desiring the Reader to excuse this necessary digression,without which there must needs be a great maym in the Chronicle.I now fall punctually upon *Merlin's* Propheſies, continuing them,and confirming their truth by Chronologie, from the time in which he uttered them,to the Reign of King *Charles*, our royall Lord and Sovereigne,&c.

Hely the father of King Lud.

A true Hiſtorie of the ſtrange Birth of *Ambroſius Merlin*, and his wonderfull Propheſies.

CHAP. I.

Of the Birth of Merlin, *ſirnamed* Ambroſius, *whether he were a Chriſtian or no? and by what ſpirit hee prophe-ſied, &c.*

TO Prophets there be ſeverall attributes given, ſome are called *prophetæ*, ſome *vates*, others *videntes*: that is, Prophets, Predicters, and Seers: and theſe have been from all antiquity. The name of prophets was, and ought to bee peculiar, to thoſe only that dealt onely in divine Myſteries, and ſpake to the people the words which

Prophets, predicters, and ſeers.

the Almighty did dictate unto them concerning thoſe things which ſhould futurely happen, and ſuch alſo are called in the holy Text *Seers*. But *vates* was a title promiſcuouſly conferd on prophets and poets, as belonging to them both: of the firſt were *Moſes*, *Samuel*, *David*, *Iſaiah*, *Jeremiah*, *Daniel*, and the reſt, whoſe divine Oracles are extant in the old Teſtament: others there were in the time of the Goſpell, as *John Baptiſt*, of whom our Saviour himſelfe witneſſeth, that he was not onely a prophet, but more than a prophet; and we reade in the *Acts* of the Apoſtles, *Cap.* 11.27. *And in thoſe days alſo came Prophets from* Hieruſalem *to* Antiochia. *And there ſtood up one of them called* Agabus, *and ſignified by the ſpirit, that there ſhould be great famine in all the world, which came to paſſe under* Claudius Cæſar: of the Vaticall or propheticall poets amongſt the *Greeks* were *Orpheus*, *Linus*, *Homer*, *Heſiod*, *&c.* and amongſt the *Latins*, *Publius Virgilius Maro*, with others.

Propheticall Poets.

But before I come to enquire, in which of theſe liſts, This our Countryman *Merlin*, whoſe ſirname was *Ambroſius*, ought to be filed; It is needfull that I ſpeak ſomething of his birth, and parents; His mother being certain, but his father doubtfull, (for ſo our moſt ancient Chronologers have left them) that is, whether hee were according to nature begot by a man and a woman, or according to his mothers confeſſion, that hee was conceived by the compreſſion of a fantaſticall ſpirituall creature, without a bodie, which

The birth of Merlin.

which may bee eaſily believed to bee a meere fiction, or excuſe to mitigate her fault, (being a Royall Virgin the daughter of King *Demetius*) or to conceale the perſon of her ſweetheart by diſcloſing of whoſe name ſhee had undoubtedly expoſed him to imminent danger, and this is moſt probable. And yet we reade that the other fantaſticall congreſſion is not impoſſible. For *Speuſippus* the ſonne of *Platoes* ſiſter, and *Elearchus* the Sophiſt, and *Amaxilides* in the ſecond book of his philoſophie, affirme in the honour of *Plato*, that his mother *Perictione* having congreſſion with the imaginary ſhadow of *Apollo*, conceived, and brought into the World him who proved to bee the Prince of Philoſophers.

Merlin *the ſonne of a Kings daughter.*

Plato *and* Merlin *had fathers alike.*

Apuleius alſo in his book intitled, *De Socratis Dæmonio*, of *Socrates* his *Dæmon*, or *genius*, writes at large, that betwixt the Moone and the Earth Spirits inhabit, called *Incubi*, of which opinion *Plato* was alſo, who ſaith, That their harbour was between the Moone and the Earth, in the moyſt part of the ayre. A kinde of *Dæmons* which hee thus defines: a living creature, moyſt, rationall, immortall and paſſible, whoſe property is to envy men: becauſe to that place from whence they were precipitated by their pride, man by his humilitie is preferd; and of theſe, ſome are ſo libidinous and luxurious, that ſometimes taking humane ſhape upon them, they will commixe themſelves with women, and generate children, from whence they

Spirits betwixt the Moone and the Earth.

Spirits called Incubi.

have the name of *Incubi*, whom the *Romans* called *Fauni*, and *Sicarii*: and of such Saint *Augustine* in his booke *De civitate Dei*, makes mention.

Whether Merlin were a Christian or an Heathen.

It further may bee questioned, whether hee were a *Christian* or a *Gentile*? as also by what spirit he propheſied, a *Pythonick*; or Divine? that is, by the Devill who spake delusively in the Oracle of *Apollo*; or by holy and celestiall revelation? For the first, it is not to be doubted but hee was a *Christian* as being of the *British* Nation: This Kingdome having for the space of two hundred and odde yeeres before his birth, received the Gospell under King *Lucius*, the first King of this Land, by the Substitutes of Pope *Eleutherius*, by whose preaching, the King and a great part of his people, quite renounced all Pagan Idolatry, and were baptized into the Christian Faith: but by what spirit he so truly predicted, is only knowne to the God of all spirits, who in every Nation and Language, pickt out some choice persons, by whose mouthes hee would have uttered things which should futurely happen to posterity, according to his divine will and pleasure, and amongst these was this our *Merlin*: to prove the former.

Prophets and Propheteſſes, in all Nations.

The former proved.

Holy *Iob* was but a *Gentile*, a man of the land of *Chus*, yet none of the holy Prophets of the Lord did more plainly, more faithfully, and more pathetically acknowledge Christ, and the Resurrection than himselfe, when hee saith in a most

moſt raptured Emphaſis, *Iob* 19. *v.*23. *O that my words were written even in a book, and graven with an iron pen in lead or in ſtone for ever. For I am ſure my Redeemer liveth, and hee ſhall ſtand the laſt on the earth, and though after my skinne, wormes deſtroy this body, yet I ſhall ſee God in my fleſh, whom I my ſelfe ſhall ſee, and mine eyes ſhall behold, and none other for mee, though my reines be conſumed within me.*

Of the Sibyls.

Neither was this any wonder in bleſſed *Iob*, whoſe like for holineſſe and uprightneſſe of life was not to bee found upon the face of the whole earth, when even all the *Sibils* (who were Propheteſſes and Virgins, and Gentiles of ſeverall Nations (for ſo *Varro* affirmes) predicted not onely of the Incarnation, paſſion, and death of our bleſſed Saviour, but of his ſecond comming to judgement, of the conſummation and diſſolution of the World, the Reſurrection of all fleſh, the glory of the Saints, and the condemnation of the Reprobates, eſpecially *Sibylla Cumana*, whom the renowmed Doctors of the Church; and more eſpecially Saint *Auguſtine*, quoted in her propheſies, and not thought them altogether unworthy to be remembred in their works, of which alſo *Virgil* makes mention in his fourth *Eglogue:* in which Saint *Auguſtine* himſelfe witneſſeth that hee (though an Heathen) predicted the Incarnation of our bleſſed Saviour, for he inſinuates that he is to ſpeak of a great myſtery in his firſt words, which are theſe:

S. Auſtine and other of the Fathers approve of the Sibyls *propheſies.*

Virgil *propheſied of Chriſt.*

Sicelides Musæ, paulo majora canamus.

As speaking to the Muses, or invocating their assistance, that he is now to sing of more stupendious and high things: and a little after it followeth,

Vltima jam venit Cumæi carminis ætas:

That is: now is fulfilled the propheſie of *Sibylla Cumana* (so called from *Cuma*, once a famous Citie in *Greece*, where she was borne) hee further proceedeth,

Sibylla Cumana.

Magnus ab integro seclorum volvitur ordo,
Jam redit & virgo, redeunt Saturnia regna.
Jam nova progenies cœlo demittitur alto.

Intimating in those words, that by revolution, the great order and course of the World should feele a change which was not from the beginning, and that now the Celestiall Maid (which figured Justice) or the mother of the most righteous should returne, and that wee should see againe those innocent and blessed dayes which were in the reigne of *Saturne* (which was called the golden World) and that a new birth should be sent down to the earth from the highest heaven, meaning our blessed Saviour, God, and man, born of the immaculate Virgin *Mary*: nay, further in the two subsequent Verses, hee implyes

What Prophet could come neerer to the truth?

plyes, that he came to take away the ſins of the world, which are theſe;

Quo duce, ſi qua manent ſceleris veſtigia noſtri,
Irrita perpetua ſolvent formidine terras.

So much for *Virgil*: there are divers other prophets of the *Gentiles* both men and women, as *Caſſandra*, *Chryſis*, *Phiomæne*, &c. and what ſhall we think of *Balaam*? whoſe Oracles *Moſes* inſerted in the ſacred Text, and whoſe propheſies the great Clerkes and Doctours of the Church have expounded in large voluminous Works: yet for his perſon, ſome have held him for no better than a *Southſayer*, or a *Wiſard*, and hired for a reward to curſe the children of *Iſrael* Gods ſelected people, and they by his counſell after inticed to fornication and idolatry, of whom the bleſſed Apoſtle Saint *Peter* in the ſecond Chapter of his ſecond Epiſtle and fourteenth Verſe gives him this character (ſpeaking of ſuch whoſe hearts were exerciſed in covetouſneſſe, and children of the curſe) *who forſaking the right way have gone aſtray, following the way of* Balaam *the ſonne of* Boſor, *who loved the wages of unrighteouſneſſe, but hee was rebuked for his iniquitie*, for the dumbe beaſt ſpeaking with mans voice, forbade the fooliſhneſſe of the prophet. Theſe former examples may beget an heſitation or doubt, by which of the two ſpirits the good or bad, our Countryman *Merlin* uttered his predictions.

Other Propheteſſes.
Balaam *the ſonne of* Boſor

But

A justification of the truth of Merlins *prophesies.*

Doctor Alanus *de Insulis.*

But whosoever shall make question of the true events of his prophesies, I shall referre him to the reading of that most excellent Oratour *Polyhistor*, and Theologist of his time, *Alanus de Insulis* a *German* Doctour, for his admirable and multifarious Learning sirnamed *Vniversalis*: and Rector of the *Parisian* Academy in his Explanation or Comment upon *Merlins* Propheſies, the originall being extracted out of *Jeffery* of *Monmouth*, part of his words are these: In all his propheſies I find nothing dissonant, incongruous, or absurd: nor any thing forreigne, or averse from truth: And those who shall live in ages to come, shall finde those his predictions as constantly to happen in their dayes (according to the limit of time) as wee have hitherto found them certaine and infallible even to the age in which we now live. And for these signes and tokens which before the consummation of the World shall appeare, he divineth and foretelleth of them in the Sun and Moons, and the other five Planets; *Iuno*, *Mars*, *Mercury*, *Venus*, *Satnrne*, and other stars, how they shall confound and alter their courses which they had in the Creation, according to that in the holy Evangelist Saint *Luke*, *cap.* 21. *v.* 25. Then there shall be signes in the Sun, and the Moon, and in the stars: and upon the earth trouble amongst the Nations with perplexity, the Sea and the waters shall roare, and mens hearts shall faile them for feare, and for looking after those things which shall come in the World, for the

His prediction from the Planets.

powers

powers of Heaven ſhall be ſhaken, &c. But of the new heaven, and the new earth, and the reſurrection of the dead to new life, how truly he ſpake according to the Propheticall, Evangelicall, and Apoſtolicall Traditions; it is manifeſt, that hee no way deviated or erred from the orthodoxall Chriſtian Faith, and ſo much Doctor *Alanus* concerning the truth of his propheſies, with whom I conclude this firſt Chapter.

CHAP. 2.

In whoſe Reigne Merlin *was borne. How the ſtate of* Brittaine *ſtood in thoſe days, with divers neceſſary occurrences pertinent to the ſtory.*

THe better to illuſtrate this our Hiſtory of *Merlin*, (the ſubject now in agitation) it is neceſſary that I ſhew you in what Kings Reigne he was borne, in what ſtate the Kingdome ſtood at that time, and how our prophet came to bee firſt knowne in Court. He was born in the reigne of King *Vortiger*, who by uſurpation aſpired to the Crown: who being a potent Duke of the *Brittaine:* after the death of *Conſtantius*, took his ſonne *Conſtantins* out of a Monaſtery (being a ſimple man and uncapable of ſo great a charge,

Merlin *born in the reigne of* King Vortiger.

and made him King) so that Duke *Vortiger* being a popular man, had the whole government of the Land, and *Constantine* only the name of King, who taking advantage of his Sovereigns easie nature and milde disposition, cast in his thoughts how by the death of his Lord and Master, to compasse the Crown to himselfe, and to accomplish his ambitious designe he placed, as a guard about him, an hundred *Picts* and *Scots*, whom hee so bribed with continuall gifts and rewards, that they feared not openly to say that *Vortiger* better deserved the Imperiall dignity then *Constantine*: in which *interim* he got into his possession, all the treasure, howsoever divers thereat grudged: and the strangers in hope to purchase his greater favour, took their opportunity to lay violent hands upon the King, and presented his head to *Vortiger*, being then at *London*.

Vortigers *ambition to the Crown.*

King Constantine *slaine by his guard.*

Who in his Crocodile comming, and to blinde the eyes of the *Britaines*, to make them think he had no hand in his death, wept exceedingly, and made great shew of sorrow, and to expresse his great justice, caused all those honoured Knights to bee beheaded according to the Lawes of the Kingdome, by which he was held both by the peeres and people innocent of the Treason: but those that had the Guardianship of the Kings two younger brothers *Aurelius* and *Vter*, the one sirnamed *Ambrosius*, the other *Pendragon*, fearing the power and potencie of *Vortiger* fled with them into little *Britaine*, where

Treason rewarded.

Ambrosius *and* Vter *the Kings younger brothers.*

where they continued, yet it pleaſed God otherwiſe to diſpoſe of them.

Then was *Vortiger* by a generall and unanimous conſent crowned King in the yeere of the Incarnation of our bleſſed Saviour foure hundred fortie eight: but it was not long ere the *Picts* and *Scots*, having knowledge of the death of their countrymen, invaded the Land with great hoſtilitie: in ſo much that hee was no way able to withſtand their malice and fury, in this great diſtreſſe, retyring himſelfe to *Canterbury*, newes was brought him of theer great ſhips full of Ammunition and armed men, landed in the Iſle of *Tenet*: at firſt hee feared that they were the late Kings brothers, *Ambroſe* and *Vter*, who came to lay claime to the Kingdome, but finding them to be ſtrangers: hee ſent to know of what Nation they were: and the purpoſe of their landing? Who returned him anſwer that they were *Saxons*, ſo called of a Province in *Germany*, who came to ſeek adventures abroad, and ſince fortune had brought them into this Land, they beſought him to receive them into ſervice, as being both ready and able to be his faithfull ſouldiers, and to fight for him in the defence of his Country againſt all forreigne invaders? and their Captaines were two brothers, *Hengiſt* and *Horſus*.

Vortiger *crowned King.*

The firſt landing of the Saxons.

The King in regard of his preſent neceſſitie, which much moved him to correſpondencie, was exceeding glad of their liberall proffer, and accepted of them, yet ſorry that they were

Miſcreants, and of the Pagan beliefe, for as Reverend *Bede* hath left recorded, with *Gulielmus de Regibus*, They at that time worſhipped an Idoll or falſe god, called *Woden*, and a Goddeſſe named *Fria*, in the honour of which god, they called one day of the week *Wodens-day*, which we terme *Wedneſday*, and another in the honour of the Goddeſſe *Fria*, *Friſday*, by us ſtill continuing the name Friday. But it followeth in the ſtory, *Vortimer* by the ayde of theſe *Saxons*, having freed his Land from all forreigne enemies, *Hengiſt* in reward of his former ſervice, demanded of the King ſo much ground as the hide of a Bull would compaſſe, which requeſt appeared to the King ſo reaſonable, that hee eaſily granted it, which skin hee cauſed to be cut into ſmall and ſlender thongs, with which hee meaſured a large circuit of earth, upon which hee builded a great and ſtrong Fort, which he called *Thonge Caſtle*, which ſtandeth in the County of *Lyndſee*.

When Wedneſday and Friday had their appellation.

The building of Thonge *Caſtle.*

When news arrived in *Germany* of the plenty and goodneſſe of this Land, with all the commodities thereto belonging, they came hither in multitudes covenanting with the *Britains*, that they ſhould only intend their Tillage and Huſbandry, and themſelves would as their ſouldiers, defend the Land from all incurſions and invaſions, demanding for that ſervice only competent means and wages, in which interim *Hengiſt* ſent for ſixteen ſaile more well furniſht with men, and all neceſſary proviſion. In which fleet came

The policy of the Saxons.

came alſo his daughter *Rowen*, a beautiful Lady, concerning whom, to cutoff all circumſtances, *Hengiſt* invited the King to his new Caſtle, where his faire daughter gave him entertainment, with whoſe beauty hee became ſo ſurpriſed, and perditely enamoured, that for her ſake he repudiated his lawfull wife, by whom he had three noble ſonnes, *Vortimerus*, *Catagrinus*, and *Paſcentius*, to marry with this young *Saxon* Lady, and that hee might enjoy her, gave to her Father the Dukedome or Province of *Kent*, though *Garagonus*, then Lord thereof, with divers other of the *Britiſh* Peeres, thereat much grudged.

Vortimer *forſaketh his Queen to marry with* Rowen, *the daughter of* Hengiſt.

For which, and many other honours and revenues conferred upon the *Saxons*, as alſo that hee left his owne Chriſtian Conſort, to marry with an Infidel, and that *Hengiſt* had ſent for his ſonne *Octa* to come over with a freſh ſupply of his Countrymen: The Lords of *Britaine* conſidering what dangers were like to fall upon the Land, aſſembled themſelves, and comming to the King, laid open to him the inconvenience and perill which was likely to fall both upon himſelfe and the Kingdome, by the multitude and ſtrength of theſe ſtrangers, humbly beſeeching him for their generall ſecuritie, to baniſh them all or the greateſt part of them the Land. But the King was deaf of that eare, for the *Saxons* were in ſuch favour with him, by reaſon of his beautifull young Queene, that hee preferred them before the love of his owne wife,

An aſſembly of the Britiſh Lords.

ſonnes, ſubjects, kinſmen, and friends, where-fore the *Britains* with one will and aſſent, crowned his eldeſt ſonne *Vortimer* King, depriving him of all Regall dignity, when hee had fully reigned (after the conſent of the beſt Hiſtories) ſixteen yeeres.

King Vortiger *depoſed.*

A word or two by the way, of our new King *Vortimer*, who aſſiſted by the reſolute *Britaines*, in all haſte purſued the *Saxons*, and gave them a great battaile upon the River of *Darwent*, in which the *Saxons* Hoaſt was quite diſcomfited: He fought with them a ſecond upon the Foord called *Epiford*, or *Agliſthorpe*, in which fight *Catrignus* the brother of *Vortimer*, and *Horſus* the brother to *Hengiſt*, meeting in the battaile fought together a brave combat, and ſlue each other, in which the *Britaines* alſo were Victors: He gave them a third, neere unto the Sea-ſide, in which the *Saxons* were chaced, and forced to take the Iſle of *Wight* for their refuge: and likewiſe a fourth mayne battaile upon *Colemore*, which was long and couragiouſly maintained by the *Saxons*, by reaſon that they now cloſed a great part of their Hoaſt ſo defenſively, that the *Britaines* could but with much difficulty approach them, for the danger of their ſhot, yet in the end they were rowted, and many of them drowned and ſwallowed in the Moore. And beſides theſe foure principall and mayne battailes, hee had divers other conflicts with them, one in *Kent*, another at *Thetford* in *Norfolke*, a third in *Eſſex*, neer unto *Colcheſter*, from all

Vortimers *many brave victories over the* Saxons.

Vortimer *conquered the Saxons in ſeven ſeverall battails.*

all which fields hee departed a glorious Victor, neither did he leave their purſuite, till he had deprived them of all their poſſeſſions in the Land, ſaving the Iſle of *Tenet*, which he continually aſſaulted with his Navy by Sea: which when his ſtep-mother *Rowen* ſaw, and how much her Father *Hengiſt* with his *Saxons*, by his Martiall prowеſſewere diſtreſſed, ſhee uſed ſuch meanes that he was poyſoned, after hee had victoriouſly governed the Kingdome for the ſpace of ſeven yeeres.

Vortimer *poyſoned by his ſtepdame* Rowen.

All which time *Vortiger*, the Father of the late dead *Vortimer*, lived privately in *Cheſter*, where hee ſo well demeaned him towards the King his ſonne, by aiding him with his counſell and otherwiſe, that by the *Britains* generall aſſent, he was againe reſtored to the Kingdome: *Hengiſt* againe pierced the Land with a mighty Hoaſt of his Countrymen, which *Vortiger* hearing made towards him with his Army of *Britains*. But *Hengiſt*, who had before taſted of their hardneſſe and courage, made means of a treaty for peace, whence laſtly, it was concluded, that a certain number of *Britaines*, and as many *Saxons* ſhould meet upon a *Mayday* weaponleſſe, upon the Plaine of *Salisbury*, on which prefixed day, *Hengiſt* bethought him of a ſtrange and perfidious Treaſon, charging all his *Saxons*, that every one ſhould put a long Knife in his hoſe, and when hee gave this watch-word *Nempnith*, your *Sepis*, they ſhould ſuddenly fall upon the unarmed *Britaines*, and kill them to one man:

Vortiger *reſtored to the Kingdome.*

A moſt unkingly treaſon.

Briefly

Briefly, they met at the time and place appointed, where *Hengiſt* and his *Saxons* received him and his power, with a countenance of peace and love, but they had not long ſpoken together when *Hengiſt* giving the watchword, the *Britans* were baſely and barbarouſly butchered, unleſſe any by his manhood and ſtrength wreſt the Knife from his enemy, and defend himſelfe:, amongſt the *Britiſh* Lords was one *Edolf* Earle of *Cheſter*, who (as *Gunfride* affirmes) ſeeing his friends and fellows thus murdered, he found the ſtake of an hedge by chance their ſcattered, with which he not only ſaved his owne life, but ſlue ſeventeene of the oppoſite ſide, and got ſafely into the City of *Salisbury*, after which treaſon executed, the King remained with *Hengiſt* as priſoner.

A valiant Britain.

Hengiſt by his Treaſon having thus gotten the upper hand, and reteining the King in his power and cuſtodie, hee compelled him to give him three Provinces in the Eaſt part of *Britain*, *Kent*, *Suſſex*, *Norfolke*, and *Suffolke*, to which ſome adde *Eſſex*, &c. of which being ſafely poſſeſſed, hee ſuffered the King to goe at large, ſending for ſome other of his Kinſmen to take poſſeſſion of other Provinces in the Kingdome, crowning himſelfe King of *Kent*, and from his owne name, cauſed this Realme to bee called *Hengiſts* Land, or (as wee now pronounce it) *England:* and the *Saxons* now ſpreading and quartering themſelves in the beſt and moſt fertile ſoyles of the Land, as having the Sove-

Vortiger *ſuppreſſed by* Hengiſt.

Britain firſt called England

reignery

reignty over *London*, *Yorke*, *Lincolne*, *Wincheſter*, with moſt of the principall Cities in the Realme. The *Saxons* ſtill increaſing in multitude and power, and the *Britains* daily decreaſing, both in number and ſtrength. *Vortiger* was forced to flie or retire himſelf into *Wales*, where (after ſome writers) thinking to fortifie himſelf, he began to lay the foundation of a Caſtle called *Generon*, or *Gwayneren*, in the Weſt ſide of the River *Grana*, upon an Hill called *Cloaricus*: But what ſucceſſe he had in the building thereof, and how *Merlin* came firſt to be knowne to the King with part of his Propheſies, I will referre to the ſubſequent Chapter, giving withall the intelligent peruſer of this ſtory, to better his knowledge, this *Item*; that without the laying open of the true paſſage of thoſe times, which I have (as briefly as poſſibly I could in the premiſes) theſe our prophets predictions which now ſeeme plaine and eaſie, would have beene much more intricate, and hard to bee underſtood.

Vortiger *forced to fly into* Wales.

Chap. 3.

By what miraculous accident young Merlin *came to be knowne to King* Vortiger: *of the combat betwixt the red and the white Dragon, and his propheſie thereof, &c.*

WHen *Vortigers* Architectors had cauſed the Hill to be digged, and the foundation to bee laid on which to erect this new ſtructure, after the weake men had digged the circuit of the place, where the great ſtones were to be ſet in order: they were no ſooner laid in the hollow of the earth, but they inſtantly ſunke down, and were ſwallowed up and no more ſeen: at which the Workmen wondred, and the King himſelfe was much aſtoniſhed, and the more proofs they made, the greater cauſe of admiration they had, eſpecially the ſcituation being upon an Hill, and no mooriſh or uncertaine ground: therefore the King commanded a ceſſation from the worke for the preſent, and ſent to the *Bards* and *Wiſards* (of which that age afforded plenty) to know a reaſon of that prodigie? or at leaſt what it might portend? who being gathered

Vortiger *inquires of the Wizards.*

red together, and having long conſulted amongſt themſelves, and not finding by any naturall or ſupernaturall reaſon, what the cauſe thereof might be, they concluded in the end, to ſave their credits, and to excuſe their ignorance, to put the King off with an impoſſiblitie: and when hee came to demand of them what they had done in the matter? they returned him this anſwer, that thoſe ſtones could never be laid together, or the place built upon, till they were cemented with the bloud of a man-childe, who was borne of a mother, but had no man to his father.

A cunning evaſion.

With this anſwere the King ſatisfied, the ſoothſayers departed from him (not meanly glad that they had put him off, according to our Engliſh word, with a flam or delirement) without any diſparagement to their art and cunning, who no ſooner left his preſence, but the King cald his ſervants about him, commanding them to ride and ſearch into, and through all Provinces and Countries till they could find ſuch an one as the *Wiſards* had ſpoken of, and by faire or foule meanes to bring the party unto him, but not acquainting him with the Cauſe, but that the King ſeeing ſuch an one would ſend him back richly and bountifully rewarded: having received this commiſſion (or rather Impoſition, from the King their maſter, wee leave them to their ſeverall adventures; every of them being ſufficiently accommodated for ſo uncertaine a journey.

Merlins *city, since from him so called.*

One of them amongst the rest hapned to come to a Towne or Citty called *Kaier Merlin* which implyes *Merlins* Towne or *Merlins* borrough, which is no doubt the same which wee call at this day *Marlborrow*, but my author termes it a City at whose gates the messenger of the king arriving, it hapned that a great many young Lads were sporting themselves without the walls, and of the company, two of them in gaming fall out, the one yong *Merlin*, the other called *Dinabutius*, who amongst other breathing words cast into *Merlins* teeth, that hee was but some Moon-calfe, as born of a mothsr, who knew not his father: The servant taking notice of this Language, presently demanded what he was? and who were his parents? who returned him answer, that for any father hee had, they knew none, but his mother was daughter to the King *Demetius*, and lived a Votaresse in that Citie, in a Nunnery belonging to the Church of Saint *Peter*: which having heard her, presently went to the chiefe Magistrates, and shewed them his Commission from the King, which they obeying, sent both the mother and sonne under his conduct, to attend the pleasure of his Majesty,

Merlin *first discovered.*

Merlin *and his mother appeare before the King*

Of whose comming the King was exceeding joyfull, and when they appeared before him (both ignorant of the occasion why they were sent for) the King first asked him, if that were his naturall sonne? Who reply'd that hee was, and borne of her own body, hee then desired to know

know by what father hee was begot? to which ſhe likewiſe anſwered, that ſhee never had the ſocietie of any one mortall or humane, only a ſpirit aſſuming the ſhape of a beautifull young man, had many times appeared unto her, ſeeming to court her with no common affection, but when any of her fellow Virgins came in, he would ſuddenly diſappear and vaniſh, by whoſe many and urgent importunities, being at laſt overcome, I yielded, ſaith ſhee, to his pleaſure, and was compreſt by him, and when my full time of Teeming came, I was delivered of this ſon (now in your preſence) whom I cauſed to be called *Merlin*: which words were uttered with ſuch modeſtie and conſtancie, conſidering withall the royaltie of her birth, and the ſtrictneſſe of the order (in which ſhe now lived) that the King might the more eaſily be induced to believe that whatſoever ſhe ſpake was truth.

When caſting his eye upon *Merlin* hee began to apprehend ſtrange promiſing things in his aſpect, as having a quick and piercing eye, an ingenious and gracious countenance, and in his youthfull face a kinde of auſteritie and ſupercilious gravity, which took in him ſuch a deep impreſſion, hat he thought his bloud too noble to bee mingled with the duſt and rubbiſh of the earth, & therefore inſtead of ſentencing him to death, and commanding him to be ſlaine, hee opened unto him, the purpoſe hee had to build this Caſtle, and the ſtrange and prodigious impediments, which hindred the work, then his aſ-

Cruelty changed into pity.

ſembly of the *Bards* and *Wiſards*, and what anſwer they returned him of his demand, but bad him withall be of comfort, for hee prized his life being a Chriſtian above ten ſuch Citadels, though erected and perfected with all the coſt and magnificence that humane art or fancie could deviſe.

Merlins *ſpeech to the King.*

To which words *Merlin* (who had all this while ſtood ſilent and ſpake not a word) thus reply'd Royall Sir, Blinde were your *Bards*, witleſſe your *Wiſards*, and filly and ſimple your *Southſayers*; who ſhewed themſelves averſe to Art, and altogether unacquainted with the ſecrets of Nature, as altogether ignorant, that in the breſt of this Hill, lyes a vaſt Moat, or deep Poole which hath ingurgitated and ſwallowed all theſe materials throwne into the Trenches. Therefore command them to be digged deeper, and you ſhall diſcover the water in which your ſquared ſtones have beene waſhed, and in the bottome of the Lake you ſhall finde two hollow Rocks of ſtone, and in them two horrible Dragons faſt ſleeping: which having uttered, hee with a low obeyſance made to the King left ſpeaking.

Merlins *words found true.*

Who inſtantly commanded pioners with pickaxes, mattocks, and ſhovels to be ſent for, who were preſently employed to dig the earth deepe, where the pond was found, and all the water drained, ſo that the bottome thereof was left dry, then were diſcovered the two hollow Rocks, which being opened, out of them iſſued

two

two fierce and cruell Dragons, the one red, the other white, and made betwixt them, a violent and terrible conflict. But in the end the white Dragon prevailed over the red, at which ſight the King being greatly ſtupified and amazed, demanded of *Merlin*, what this their combat might portend? Who fetching a great ſigh, and teares in abundance iſſuing from his eyes, with a propheticall ſpirit, made him this following anſwer.

Merlins *firſt propheſie.*

Woe's me for the red Dragon, for alach,
The time is came, hee haſteth to his mach:
The bloudy Serpent, (yet whoſe ſouls are white)
Implys that Nation, on which thy delight
Was late ſole-fixt, (the Saxons) who as friends
Came to thee firſt, but ayming at ſhrewd ends
They ſhall have power over the drooping red,
In which the Britiſh Nation's figured:
Drive ſhall he them into caves, holes, and dens,
To barren mountains, and to mooriſh fens,
Hills ſhall remove, to where the valleyes ſtood,
And all the baths and brooks ſhall flow with blood.
The worſhip of the holy God ſhall ceaſe.
For in thilk dayes the Kirke ſhall have no peace:
The Panims (woe the while) ſhall get the day,
And with their Idols mawmetry beare ſway,
And yet in fine ſhee that was ſo oppreſt,
Shal mount, & in the high rocks build her neſt.
For out of Cornwall *ſhall proceed a Bore,*
Who ſhall the Kerk to priſtine ſtate reſtore,

Bow

Bow ſhall all Britaine *to his kingly beck,*
And tread he ſhall on the white Dragons neck.

Then caſting a ſad looke upon the King, as reading his fate in his forehead, hee muttered to himſelfe and ſaid,

But well-away for thee, to Britaine *deere,*
For I fore-ſee thy ſad diſaſter's neere.

Ambroſe *and* Vter *invade the Land at* Totneſſe.

Which accordingly hapned, and that within few yeeres after, for *Vortiger* having builded this Caſtle, and fortified it making it defenſible againſt any forreigne oppoſition, the two ſons of *Conſtantine* whom *Vortiger* had before cauſed to be ſlaine, aſſiſted by their neere Kinſman *Pudentius*, King of *Armorica*, or little *Britain*, (where they had beene liberally foſtered and cheriſhed) paſſed the Sea with a compleat Army, and landed at *Totneſſe*, whereof when the *Britains* who were diſperſed in many Provinces underſtood, they crept out of their holes and corners, and drew unto their Hoſt, which was no ſmall incouragement to the two brothers, *Ambroſius Aurelius* and *Vter-Pendragon*, who now finding their forces to bee ſufficiently able both in ſtrength and number, made their ſpeedy expedition towards *Wales*, with purpoſe to diſtreſſe *Vortiger* the Uſurper.

Who having notice of their comming, and not able in regard of the paucity of his followers to give them battaile, he made what proviſi-

on

on he could for the ſtrengthening of his Caſtle, to endure a long ſiege, and to oppoſe the rage of any violent battery, till hee might ſend for ſupply elſewhere. But ſuch was the fury of the aſſaylants, that after many fierce and dangerous attempts finding the Walles and Gates to bee impregnable; caſting into the Caſtle balls of wilde fire, with other incendiaries, they burnt him and his people alive, amongſt whom not one eſcaped. Of him it is reported, that hee ſhould have carnal ſociety with his own daughter, in hope that Kings ſhould iſſue from them: Thus died hee moſt miſerably when hee had reigned ſince his laſt Inauguration nine yeeres and ſome odde moneths: The explanation of the reſt of his propheſie, I will leave to the Chapter following.

The lamentable death of King Vortiger.

Chap. 4.

Merlins *former propheſie explained with ſundry preſtigious Acts done by him to delight the King: his propheſie of the Kings death. And bringing* Stonehenge *from* Ireland.

You have heard what the red and white Dragons figured, namely, the *Britiſh* and *Saxon* people, wee will now punctually examine the truth of his prediction in the reſt. The caverns, corners, mountains, and mooriſh places, expreſſe into what ſundry diſtreſſes the Natives were driven unto by the mercileſſe crueltie of the ſtrangers, by the Hils and Valleys, ſhifting places, that there was no difference amongſt the poore *Britains*, betwixt the Courtier and Cottager, the peere and the peſant, by the Rivers flowing with bloud. The many Battails fought betwixt the two Nations, and that in thoſe dayes Religion and the true Worſhip of God was ſuppreſt, hapned under *Hengiſt* and *Horſus*, and their poſterity: *Octa* the ſonne of *Hengiſt*, who ſucceded his Father in the Kingdome of *Kent*, *Toſa*, *Paſcentius*, and *Col-*

Colgrinus, all Pagans and Princes of the *Saxons*: for when the *Britains*, from the time of *Eleutherius*, whom the *Romiſts* write was the fourteenth Pope after the bleſſed Saint *Peter* had received the Chriſtian Faith, under King *Lucius*, of glorious memory, and had continued it for many yeeres unto that time.

The Saxons ſuppreſſed the faith of Chriſt.

The *Saxons* after their comming into the Land, being then Miſcreants, laboured by all means to ſuppreſſe the ſame, and in the ſtead thereof, to plant their Pagan Idolatry, which they accompliſhed even to the comming of St. *Auguſtine*, ſent hither by Pope *Gregory*, in whoſe time it began againe to flouriſh and get the upper hand, in the Reigne of *Aurelius Ambroſe*, and his brother *Vter-Pendragon*, (which is by interpretation the Head of the Dragon) who ſucceeded him: By the Bore which ſhould come out of *Cornwall*, and tread upon the necke of the white Dragon, is meant the invincible King *Arthur*, who vanquiſhed the *Saxons*, and ſubdued them in many Battails, and was a great maintainer, and exalter of the true Chriſtian Religion, of whoſe begetting and birth, in this our Hiſtory of *Merlin*, wee ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak hereafter.

Aurelius and Vter maintainers of the true religion.

By the Boar of Cornwall is ment King Arthur.

As *Merlin* was plentifully indued with the ſpirit of divination, ſo by ſome authours it is affirmed of him that hee was ſkilfull in darke and hidden arts, as *Magick*, *Necromancy*, and the like, and relate of him, that when King *Vortiger* lived ſolitary in his late erected Caſtle

Some held Merlin to be a Magitian.

forsaken of the greatest part of his followers and frinds, and quite sequestred from all Kingly honours, hee grew into a deepe and dumpish melancholy, delighting onely (if any delight can be taken therein) in solitude and want of company: to expell which sad fits from him, which might bee dangerous to impaire his health, he would devise for his recreation and disport many pleasant fancies to beget mirth and somtimes laughter, by solacing his eare with severall straines of Musique, both courtly and rurall; the sound heard, but the persons not seen; as with the Harpe, Bag-pipes, Cimball, and Tabret: and sometimes again with the Lute, Orphorian, Viall, Sackbut, Cornet, and Organs: then to recreate his eye, hee would present him with stately Masques and Anti-Masques, and againe, for variety sake with Rustick dances presented by Swains and Shepherdesses: and where these grew any thing stale or tedious to his eye or eare, he would take him up into the top of one of his turrets whereon hee should see Eagles and Hawkes fly after sundry Games, and what fowle the King liked, they would strike it into his lap, to adde unto his slender provision for dinner and supper, which gave the King no small contentment.

Severall sports devised by Merlin *to make the melancholy King merry.*

Sometimes hee would have an Hare, or Hart hunted and chased by a pack of Dogges in the ayre, the Game flying; the Hounds with open and audible mouthes, pursuing, with Huntsmen winding their Hornes, and following the Chace with

Strange sports in the aire devised by Merlin.

with all the indents and turnings, loſſes and recoveries, the Champaigne Plaines, the Woods, and Coverts appearing as viſible and naturall as if the ſport had beene upon the firme and ſolid earth.

Other Magick ſports to content the King.

Upon a time being in the Kings Summer Parlour, who was deſirous to bee partaker of ſome novelty which hee had never ſeene, there inſtantly appeared upon the Table a paire of Butts and Whites in the middle to ſhoote at, where ſuddenly came in ſixe dapper and pert fellows like Archers, in ſtature not above a foote high, and all other members accordingly proportioned, their bowes were of the ſide bones of an overgrowne pike, their ſtrings of a ſmall ſlevy ſilke, no bigger then the thred of a Cobweb; their arrowes leſſe then pick-tooths, feathered with the wings of ſmall Flyes, and headed with the points of *Spaniſh* Needles, who made a ſhew as if they were to ſhoote a match three to three, and roundly they went about it: in the middle of their Game, there was a ſhot which reſted doubtfull, which as it appeared, the Gameſters could not well decide: then *Merlin* called to one of the ſervants (who had ſomething a big noſe) that ſtood by, and bade him meaſure to the marke, and give it to the beſt: To which whilſt he ſtooped, and inclined his face, the better to umpire the matter, one of the Pigmey Archers who had an arrow to ſhoote, delivered it from his bow, and ſhot him quite through the noſe, at which he ſtarted, and the

King heartily laughed: (for there was no room to be seene) and the Butts with the Archers together disappeared.

Merlin *leaveth the King.*

But when *Merlin* knew the Kings fate, to draw nigh, and not willing to partake in his disaster, he fained occasions abroad, and though with much difficulty, had at length leave to depart, leaving behind him a paper which hee put into the Kings Closet where upon occasion hee might easily finde and reade this ensuing propheſie.

His propheſies of the Kings death, &c.

Fly from theſe fatall ſeverall fires ô King,
Which from leſſe Britain *the two exiles bring:*
Now are their ſhips a rigging, now forſake,
Th' Armoricke *ſhoares, and towards* Albion *make,*
To avenge their murdered brothers bloud on thee,
In Torneſſe-*road to morrow they will bee,*
The Saxon *Princes ſhall contend in vain.*
For young Aurelius *having* Hengiſt *ſlaine,*
Shall peaceably poſſeſſe the Britiſh *throne,*
Striving the oppoſite Nations to attone.
He the true Faith ſhall ſeek to advance on high,
But in the queſt thereof, by poyſon die,
The Dragons head. his brother ſhall ſucceed,
And after many a brave heroick deed,
By him perform'd, the Fates ſhall ſtrive to waſt,
His ſoule ore Styx, by a like poyſonous draught,
But thoſe who ſent them to th' Elizian *bower,*
His ſonne the Bore of Cornwall *ſhall devoure.*

Vter-Pendragon.

This

This Hiſtory needs no comment, being ſo plaine in it ſelfe by the ſucceſſe thereof: only thus much let me intreat the Reader to beare in memory, that that *Arthur* figured under the name of *Aper Cornubiæ*, that is, the *Boare of Cornwall*, was ſonne to *Vter-Pendragon*, here called, *the head of the Dragon.*

Amongſt many brave Heroicall Acts done by this *Aurelius Ambroſe*, after the death of *Vortiger*, hee maintained the middle part of the Kingdome of *Britain*, with all *Cambria* and *Wales*, endevoring to repaire all the ruined places in the Land, as Forts, Caſtles, and Cittadels, but eſpecially the Temples which were much defaced by the Pagan Idolaters, and cauſed Divine Service to bee every where ſaid in them, and after that encountred the *Saxons* in the hill of *Baden* or *Badove*, where he ſlew many of them and utterly rowted their whole Army; after which defeate, another *Saxon* Prince named *Porthe* with his two ſonnes landed at an Haven in *Suſſex*, after whom as ſome Authors affirmes, the place is called *Portsmouth* vnto this day, others landed alſo in ſeverall parts of the Kingdome: ſo that *Aurelius* had with them many conflicts and Battailes, in which he ſped diverſly, being, for the moſt part Conquerour, and yet at ſome times repulſt and over-ſet.

Aurelius Ambroſe *againſt the* Saxons.

Our *Engliſh* Chronicles and others ſay, that he by the helpe of *Merlin* cauſed the great ſtones which ſtand till this day on the plaine of *Salisbury* to be brought in a whirl-winde one night out

Now called Stonehenge. Merlin *bringeth* Stonehenge *from* Ireland.

out of *Ireland*, and caused them to be placed: where they now stand, in remembrance of the *Brittish* Lords there slaine, and after buried in the time of the pretended treaty and communication, had betwixt *Vortiger* and *Hengist*, as is formerly touched, but *Polychronicon* and others ascribe the honour of their transportage to his Brother *Vter-Pendragon*, at whose request to *Merlin*, that miraculous conveighance was performed: which if by art he were able to doe; No question to bee made of the truth of those former prestigious feats, in this Chapter before remembred.

CHAP. 5.

Uter-pendragon *succeedeth his brother* Aurelius, *he is enamoured of* Igerna, *wife to the Duke of* Cornwall, *whom by the art of* Merlin *hee enjoys: of whom he begot* K. Arthur *the worthy.* Merlins *propheſie of him before his birth.*

Vter-Pendragon crowned King.

AVrelius Ambrose in the prime of his age, and honor being taken away by poyson, his brother *Vter-Pendragon* by the generall suffrage both of the Clergie, Peeres, and people, was made King, who

who purſuing his brothers former victories, gave the *Saxons* many battails, in which hee came off with great honour and victory, as awing them ſo farre that they durſt not once approach his Confines and Territories: After hee began to repaire the decayed and ruinated Churches, and to provide that God ſhould be carefully worſhipped, reſtoring to his people all thoſe goods and poſſeſſions, which by the Enemy had beene extorted from them: and after having ſlaine *Paſcentius* the ſonne of *Hengiſt* in battaile, with *Guillamore* King of *Ireland*, who came in his aſſiſtance, who had with great tyranny afflicted his ſubjects of the North, with fire, ſword, and ſundry direptions and ſpoile, and having taken *Octa* (who was alſo the ſonne of *Hengiſt*) and *Coſa* his Nephew, and put them in priſon: he made a great ſolemnitie at the Feaſt of Eaſter, to which he invited all his Nobilitie and Gentry with their Wives and Daughters, to gratulate with him his former victories. Amongſt the reſt of his Peeres was then preſent *Gothlois* Duke of *Cornwall*, with his moſt beautifull *Igerna*, who was held to be the prime Paramont of the whole *Engliſh* Nation.

Vter-Pendragons victories over the Saxons and others.

With whoſe beauty and demeanure, the King was ſo infinitely taken, that all other his moſt neceſſary affaires neglected, he could not reſtrain or bridle his extraordinary affection, but hee muſt needs court and kiſſe her openly in the preſence of her huſband, at which he incenſed with the rage of jealouſie preſently without any leave

The King enamoured of Igerna, wife to the Duke of Cornwall.

taken of the King, or the rest of his fellow peeres: rose from the Table, and taking his wife with him along, by no perswasion could be moved to stay, but instantly posted with her into his Country, which the King (being perditely enamoured of his Lady) took in such ill part, that hee sent for them backe, pretending, they must use his counsel in matters of state, to make his speedy return. But he more prizing his Lady then all his other fortunes (whether favorable or diastrous) which way soever they should happen, disobeyed the Kings command, with a peremptory answer, that he would not come. At which the King more inraged, sent him word, that if he persisted in his obstinacie, he would invade his Dukedome, and beate his Towres and Turrets (to which hee trusted) about his eares, but vain were his menaces: for loath to lose so sweet a bedfellow, he set the King at publike defiance.

Vter-Pendragon *invadeth Cornwall.*

To chastise whose pride (as hee pretended) *Vter-Pendragon* gathered a strong Army, and invaded his Countrey with fire and sword, but *Gothlois* perceiving himselfe unable, to oppose so potent a Prince, attended with such multitudes of experienced and tryed souldiers: he betooke himselfe to a strong Castle, then called *Dimelioch*: and there fortified himselfe, daily expecting forces from *Ireland*, but because hee would not hazard all his estate in one Bottome, he like a wise Merchant sent his wife to another impregnable Fort called *Tindagol*, being round environed with the Sea, and one way leading unto

unto it, which three men, elbowging one another, could not paſſe at once. A few days being paſt, in the beſieging of that former Caſtle, which the Duke maintained againſt him, hee grew ſtil the more beſotted with the love of the Lady, in ſo much that hee could neither enter nor ſcape: At length he uttered the impatience of his affection to one whom hee had amongſt many other, choſen for his familiar friend, whoſe name was *Vrſin* of *Ricaradoch*: who when hee had truly pondered all that the King had delivered unto him, hee returned him anſwer, that hee could perceive ſmall hope for the King to attaine to his amorous ends, in regard that the Fort in which ſhe reſided, by reaſon of the ſcituation of the place (munified both by Art and Nature) was altogether inacceſſible. For three armed men (ſo ſtraight was the paſſage) might keepe out his whole Army: one refuge onely remained, that if the Prophet *Merlin*, who was then in the Army, would undertake the buſineſſe, it might be accompliſhed, but otherwiſe not.

Vrſin *of* Ricaradoch.

The King being attentive to his language, preſently cauſed *Merlin* to be ſent for, and told him, how ardently he was affected to the Counteſſe, without enjoying whoſe perſon hee was not able to ſubſiſt alive: aggravating the trouble and perplexity of his minde, with much paleneſſe in his face, many deep ſuſpires, and extraordinary paſſion, which *Merlin* commiſerating, hee told his Majeſty, that to compaſſe a

Merlin *ſent for by the King.*

thing ſo difficult as that was, being but a little degree from impoſſibility, he muſt make proofe of Art myſticall and unknowne, by which hee would undertake by ſuch unctions and medicaments as hee would apply, to metamorphoſe his Highneſſe into the true figure and ſemblance of Duke *Gothlois*, his friend *Vrſin* into *Jordan* of *Tintegell*, his familiar companion and Counſellour. And himſelfe would make the third in the Adventure, changing himſelfe into *Bricot*, a ſervant that wayted of him in his Chamber, and they three thus diſguiſed, would in the twilight of the evening, whilſt the Duke in one place was buſied in the defence of his Caſtle againſt the aſſaylants, command their entrance into the other Fort in the name and perſon of the Duke, where they ſhould be undoubtedly received.

Merlins *ſtrange Metamorphoſis.*

This preſtigious plot much pleaſed the King, who impatient of delay, gave order to his chiefe Captaines and Commanders concerning the ſiege, excuſing to them his abſence for ſome certain houres: he in the mean time, the ſame night committed himſelfe to the charge and art of *Merlin:* who diſguiſed as aforeſaid, knockt at the gates of *Tindagoll*, to whom the Porter (thinking he had heard his Lords voice demanding entrance.) Inſtantly opened the gate, and meeting him with *Vrſin* and *Merlin*, taking them for *Iordan* and *Bricot*, ſo that the King was preſently conducted to the Chamber of *Igerna:* who gladly and lovingly received him

The King, Merlin *and* Vrſin *enter the Fort of* Tindagol.

as

as her Lord and Huſband, where he was bountifully feaſted, and bedding with her, hee freely enjoyed her moſt loving embraces to the full, ſatiating of his amorous deſires, where betwixt them that night was begot the Noble Prince *Arthur*, who for his brave facinorous, and high and Heroicall Atchievements, made his name glorious and venerable through the face of the whole earth: of whom *Merlin* long before his begetting, or birth thus propheſied.

The Corniſh Bore *ſhall fill with his devotion,*
The Chriſtian World: the Iſlands of the Ocean,
He ſhall ſubdue: the Flowre de Lyces plant,
In his own Garden, and prove Paramant,
The two-neckt Roman *Eagle hee ſhall make*
To flag her plumes, and her faint feathers quake.
Pagans ſhal ſtrive in vain to bend or break him,
Who ſhall be meat to all the mouthes that ſpeake him,
Yet ſhall his end be doubtfull: Him ſix Kings
Shall orderly ſucceed, but when their wings
Are clipt by death, a German *Worme ſhall riſe*
Who ſhall the Britiſh *State anatomiſe.*
Him, ſhall a Sea-wolfe waited on by Woods
From Africke *brought to paſſe Saint* Georges *floods*
Advance on high: then ſhall Religion faile,
And then ſhall Londons *Clergie honour vaile*
To Dorobernia: *he that ſeventy ſhall ſit*
In th' Eboracenſick *Sea; be forc'd to flit*
Into Armorica: Menevia *ſad*

Shall with the Legion Cities Pall be clad,
And they that in thilk days ſhall live, may ſee
That all theſe changes in the Kirke ſhall bee.

But before I come to the opening of this Propheſie, which to the ignorant may appeare rather a ryming Riddle, then to be grounded on truth or reaſon, it is neceſſary that I looke back to where I late left, and proceed with the Hiſtory which thus followeth: the King more extaſied in the embraces of his ſweet and deſired Bedfellow, his ſouldiers without any commiſſion by him granted, make a ſtrange and terrible aſſault upon the other Fort, in which *Gothlois* was beſieged, who being of an high and haughty ſpirit, ſcorning to be long immured, and coapt up without making ſome expreſſion of his magnanimity and valour, iſſued out of the Caſtle, and with great rage and reſolution ſate upon the Campe, in hope with his handful of men, to have diſlodged and rowted a multitude, but it fell out farre contrarie to his expectation, for in the hotteſt brunt of the firſt encounter, hee himſelfe was ſlaine, and all his ſouldiers without mercy offered, or quarter given, moſt cruelly put to the ſword: the Caſtle entred and ſeiſed, and the ſpoyle divided amongſt the ſouldiers.

The death of Gothlois *Duke of* Cornwall.

Early in the morning before the King or the Counteſſe were ready in their wearing Habits and ornaments, ſome of the beſieged who had eſcapt the Maſſacre, bounced at the gates of

Tin-

Tindagoll, and being known to be of the Dukes party, were received; who told the Porter and the reſt, that they brought heavy news along, which they muſt firſt deliver to their Lady, of which ſhee having notice, and knowing they came from that Caſtle, cauſed them to bee admitted into her preſence, and demanding of them what news? They made anſwer, The tydings they brought was ſad and diſaſtrous, that the Fort was the precedent night, robuſtuouſly aſſaulted by the Enemy, whom the Duke her Huſband valiantly encountred without the gates, that all their fellow ſouldiers were put to the ſword, the Caſtle taken and rifled, and that the Generall her Lord and Huſband, by his over hardineſſe was the firſt man ſlain in the conflict: at the relation of the firſt part of their news, ſhe ſeem'd wondrouſly diſconſolate and dejected, but caſting her eyes upon the King, ſhee was again ſomewhat ſolaced in the ſafety of her Huſband.

News of the Dukes death brought to the Dutcheſſe.

They alſo when they ſaw the King taking him for the Duke their Generall began to bluſh at their report of his death, being wondrouſly aſtoniſht that him whom to their thinking they had left wounded and breathleſſe in the field, they now ſee living and in health, muſing withall that they poſting thither with ſo much ſpeed ſhould arrive thither before them being altogether ignorant of the admirable tranſformation that *Merlins* art had wrought upon them: In this anxiety and diverſity of thoughts, the King, more

A juſt cauſe of their doubt.

more glad of the Dukes fate then the rifling of his fort: thus bespoke the Ducheſſe: moſt beautifull, and my beſt belov'd *Igernan*; I am not as theſe report dead, but as thou ſeeſt, yet alive; but much greived both for the ſurpriſall of my caſtle and the ſlaughter of my ſouldiers, upon which victory it may be feared that the King animated by his late ſucceſſe, may raiſe his Army thence, and indanger us heere in our Fort of *Tindagol:* therfore my beſt and ſafeſt courſe is to leave this place, for the preſent, and to ſubmit my ſelfe to the King in his Campe, of whoſe acceptance and grace I make no queſtion, as knowing him to be of a diſpoſition flexible and merciful: then bee you of comfort, for not after many howers expect to heare from mee, with all things anſwerable to your deſires and wiſhes: with which words *Igerna* was much pleaſed and fully ſatisfied.

The Kings ſpeech to the Ducheſſe.

So with a loving kiſſe they parted, ſhee to her Chamber, and hee with his two followers, towards the Campe, who no ſooner from the ſight of the Citadell, but *Merlin* began to uncharme, and diſſolve his former incantations and ſpels, ſo that the King was no more *Gothlois*, but *Vter-Pendragon*, and his friend ceaſed to be *Jordan* of *Tindagol*, but *Vrſin* of *Ricaradoch*, and the *Mage*, who had made this Tranſformation, left the ſhape of *Bricot*, and turned againe to be *Merlin*: and the King being now arrived at his Army, firſt cauſed the body of *Gothlois* to bee ſearcht for amongſt the ſlaine ſouldiers.

Their retranſformation.

ſouldiers, after to be embalmed and honourably interred, and firſt acquainting *Igerna* by letters with al the former paſſages, how they ſtood, and how much hee had hazarded his perſon for the fruition of her love, hee invited her to her Lords Funerall, at which the King and ſhe both mourned, but after the celebration thereof ended, he the ſecond time courted her, and in few dayes made her his Queene of a Ducheſſe: by whom hee had *Arthur* and *Anna*, by which match the fame of *Merlin* ſpread farre abroad, the explanation of whoſe former propheſie, I leave to the following Chapter.

The King eſpouſeth the Ducheſſe.

CHAP. 6.

Merlins *former propheſie made plaine, concerning King* Arthur, *with ſundry other occurrences pertinent to the Engliſh Hiſtory.*

A ſummary of King Arthurs noble conqueſts

ARthur the ſonne of *Vter-Pendragon*, and *Igerna*, ſucceeded his Father in the Principality, therefore called, *the Bore of Cornwall*, becauſe begot and borne in that Country, and of a *Corniſh* Ducheſſe. Hee was a great planter and ſupporter of Religion, and the Chriſtian Faith: for ſo all our *Britiſh* Chronologers report of

him: His Conquests were many, and some of them miraculous. By the Islands of the Ocean are meant, *Ireland*, *Island*, *Scotland*, and the *Orcades*, *Gotland*, *Norway*, and *Dacia*: all which are called *Provinciall Islands*, which he brought under the obedience of his Scepter. By the planting of the *Flowre de Lyces*, in his owne Garden, is likewise intended his conquest of *France*, with sundry other appendant Provinces: as *Flanders*, *Poland*, *Burgundy*, *Aquitaine*, *Andegavia*, and *Normandie*: all which with divers others paid him an Annuall Tribute, and of which Countries for their long and faithfull services, hee gave the Earldome of *Andegavia* to *Gaius* his Taster, and the Dukedome of *Normandy* to *Bedverus* his Cupbearer; in memory of whose Regall bounty, it grew to a custome, for the Kings of *France* to make their Tasters and Cupbearers, Earles and Dukes of *Andegavia*, and *Normandy*.

A custome derived from K. Arthur.

By his pluming and shaking off the Eagles feathers, was his great victory over the *Romans* foretold, who when their Prince *Lucius* with ten other Kings, invaded this his Land of *Britaine* with a numberlesse Army of Souldiers, the most of them hee slue, acquitting the Tribute payed to *Rome* since the time of *Julius Cæsar*, and those who survived hee made his Feodors and Vassals, by which he got the sovereignty over many Provinces before subjugate to the *Roman* Empire, sending the dead body of their Emperour back to *Rome* there to bee interred

Lucius *the* Roman *Emperour slain by* Arthur.

interred: next where it is ſaid his name ſhall be as meat to all thoſe mouthes that ſhall ſpeake of his notable and noble atchievements by which no other thing is meant, but that the very relation of his brave Geſts ſhall be a refreſhing and delight to all ſuch as ſhall either reade them or heare them with much pleaſure by others reported, whoſe very begetting, conception and birth, carry with them the novelty of a Miracle: And where it is further ſaid that his end ſhall be doubtfull, hee that ſhall make queſtion of the truth of *Merlins* propheſie in that point (let him to this day) but travell into *Armorica* or *Little Britain*, and in any of their Citties proclame in their ſtreets that *Arthur* expired after the common and ordinary manner of men; moſt ſure he ſhalbe to have bitter and railing language aſperſt upon him: If he eſcape a tempeſtuous ſhower of ſtones and brick-bats.

Of Arthurs *death.*

The ſixe Kings that ſucceeded him in order were *Conſtantinus* the eldeſt ſonne of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall*, (and *Arthurs* Couſin German) the ſecond was *Conſtantinus* brother, the third *Conanus Aurelius*, their Nephew, the fourth *Vortiporius*, the fift *Malgo*, the ſixt *Caretius*, for when *Arthur* in that great battaile which he fought againſt his Couſin the Archtraytor *Mordred* whom he ſlue, himſelfe being mortally wounded, and therefore had retired himſelfe into the vale of *Avalan*, in hope to be cured of his hurts, before his death (and the manner of which is uncertaine) hee ſent for his

The ſix Kings that orderly ſucceeded King Arthur.

Mordred *ſlain by* Arthur.

Cousin *Constantine*, before named (a man of approved vertue, and expert in all Martiall Discipline) and made him King, against whom the *Saxons* assisted by the two sonnes of *Mordred*, assembled themselves, who having defeated them in sundry battails, The elder sonne of *Mordred*, who had for his refuge fortified *Winchester*, he took, in the Church of Saint *Amphibalus* (whither hee had fled for Sanctuary) and slue him before the Altar: the younger he found hid in a Monastery in *London*, whom he caused likewise to be slaine, and this happened in the yeere after the Incarnation of our blessed Saviour, 543. but in the third yeere after he was perfidiously betraid to death, by the practice of his Nephew *Conanus Aurelius*, and his body royally interred, in the *Mount Ambria*, neere unto *Vter-Pendragon*.

Constantinus *noble victories.*

Then reigned his brother, whom *Conanus* suffered not to rest one houre in peace, till hee had incarcerated him, and in the same yeere usurped the Diademe, a young man of excellent parts and noble carriage, had hee not beene tainted with ambition, the love of Civill Warres, and Parricidiall Impiety, having slaine one of his Uncles, imprisoned the other, and kild his two sonnes to attaine to the Regall Sovereignty, which not long he enjoyed, for the next yeere after he expired, whom succeeded *Vortiporius*, against whom the *Saxons* made a new Insurrection, and by whom they were utterly subverted, by which hee became absolute Monarch of this

Conanus *and his conditions.*

Vortiporus *& his victories.*

this Iſland, but after foure yeeres yielded his body to the earth, and left his Crowne to *Malgo*, who was inveſted in the yeere of Grace, after ſome Authours 581.

Malgo's *deſcription and character.*

This Prince was ſtrong in body, fortunate in Arms, and of larger ſize and ſtature then any of his Anteceſſours, who was a great ſuppreſſor of Uſurpers and Tyrants, for hee not only enjoy'd this Kingdome entire, but conquered by his ſword, all the ſix provinciall Iſlands, of whom it is reported that hee was the faireſt of all the *Britiſh* Nation, but thoſe excellent gifts of Nature he ſhamefully abuſed, as being much addicted to Sodomitry, and as hee was a *proditor* of others Chaſtities, hee was alſo prodigall of his owne, after whoſe death in the yeere 586, *Caretius* was inſtituted in the Throne, a *Prince* hatefull to good men, an incendiary of Civill and Domeſticke combuſtions, an exiler of his Nobles, a ſlayer of his Citizens, a robber of the rich, a ſuppreſſer of the poore, and indeed ſubject to all the vices can be named.

Caretius *a moſt wicked King.*

By the German Worme, and the Sea Wolfe, waited on by woods, brought from Africa, through Saint Georges *Chanell, which ſhall ſupport him*, our Prophet would have us to know that the *Saxons* are comprehended; in the *Worme* and in the *Wolfe*, *Gormondus* King of *Africa*, who in the time of this *Caretius*, came with a mighty Navy upon the *Britiſh* Seas, firſt with three hundred and ſixty thouſand ſouldiers, who firſt invaded *Ireland*, and made great ſpoyle of the

What was ment by the German-worm and the Sea-woolfe.

Country, and from thence hee was invited by the *Saxons*, to assist them against the *British* Nation, to which hee assenting, invaded the Kingdome with fire and sword, committing many direptions, and outrages, chasing the King from place to place, and from Citie to Citie, till hee was in the end forced to flie into *Wales*, where they shut him up: and by this means the *German Worme*, by the means of this *Sea-wolfe* had the upper hand of the *Red Dragon*: whilst these things were thus in agitation, there came to this great Generall of the *Africans*, from the transmarine parts of *Gallia*, one *Isimbardus* Nephew to *Lewis* the *French* King, who complained unto him that his Uncle, against all Justice, kept his right from him, imploring his aid for the recovery therof, promising him great rewards: in pledge whereof, like a wretched *Apostata*, hee renounced his Faith and Christianitie: of which proffer *Gormundus* accepted, and made his speedy Expedition for *France*.

Isimbardus the Nephew to Lewis the French King.

But the Miscreant *Isimbardus* failed of his purpose, and was justly punisht by the hand of God for his Apostasie: for at their landing in the Port of Saint *Walerie*, a young Gentleman called *Hugo*, sonne to *Robert* Earle of the *Mount*, having received an affront from this *Isimbard*, challenged him to a single Duell, who entertaining the Challenge, was by the foresaid King left dead in the field, and the *French* setting upon the Hoast of the Pagans, gave them a great discomfiture, in so much that of all that in-

A just reward of Apostasie.

infinite number, ſcarce any were left to beare the tydings of their diſaſter into their Country, but either periſht by the ſword, or were drowned in the Ocean: in which time ſaith the prophet, *Religion ſhall faile*, which hapned when this *Gormundus* with the *Saxons* rioted and made havock in this Iſland, ſuppreſſing Religious Houſes, and ruinating Churches, ſo that ſcarce a Chriſtian Native, durſt ſhew his head, but he was ſubject to perſecution and torture.

The failing of Religion made good in Gormundus *and the* Saxons.

But it follows in the propheſie, *that the honour of* Londons *Clergie ſhall give place to* Dorobernia *or* Canterbury, *that the Seventh who ſate in the* Eboracenſian *See, which is the Archbiſhopricke of* Yorke, *ſhall be compeld to flie into* Armorica, *or* Little Britaine, *and that* Menevia *ſhall be adorned with the Pall that belonged to the Citie of* Legions, give me leave to uſe a little circumſtance in the explaining of theſe: that finding the truth of his predictions, by the ſucceſſe, the Reader may be more eaſily induced to give credit unto the reſt, in which I ſhall ſtrive (though plain) to be much briefer.

The three prime Seats or Sees, were the three Archbiſhopricks, which were *London*, *Yorke*, and the City of *Legions*: now note how punctually he comes to the purpoſe: the dignity of *Londons Metropolitanſhip* was transferd to *Canterbury* by Saint *Auguſtine*, whom Pope *Gregory* ſent hither with others to preach the Goſpel, who alſo gave the primacie of the City of *Legions* unto *Menevia* a Citty of *Wales* ſcituate neer to

The former Propheſie explained

to the *Demeticall* Sea, but the Citty of *Legions* stands vpon the River *Osca* not far from the *Severne Sea*, which was first erected by King *Belinus*, whose valiant brother *Brennus*, being Generall of the *Senon Galls*, after many Honourable exployts and glorious Victories by him atcheived, assaulted the famous Citty of *Rome*, tooke, sacked and spoyled it in the dayes of *Ahashueroth* and *Hester*, *Gabinus*, and *Porsenna* being Consuls the first of whom hee slue in Battail, and the other tooke Prisoner, &c.

Of Samson *Archbishop of* York, *and his six brothers.*

By the Arch-Bishop of York the seventh, inaugurated into that See, who should bee compeld to seek shelter in Little Britaine, is intimated, *Samson* then Resident, who in that great persecution, made by the *Africans*, and the *Saxons*, with six of his brothers all Clergiemen, and of great sanctitie of life, fled into the lesse *Britaine*, and there establisht his Metropolitan Cathedrall: The rest of his six brothers, whose names were *Melanius*, *Matutus*, *Maclovius*, *Pabutaus*, *Paternus*, and *Waslovius*, being all Divines, were made the Rectors of other Churches, and became in short time to be capable of Episcopall Dignities, which seven Brothers nor only the Natives of the Country, but all the bordering Provinces, call the seven Saints of *Britain* (meaning the lesse *Britaine*) even to this day, now let it be held any deviation or digression from the subject now in hand, if I borrow so much patience of the Reader to acquaint him with a strange and almost miraculous story, or legend,

The names of the Archbishop Samson's *six brothers.*

by

by what accident, or rather Divine providence, theſe ſeven holy and devout brothers, were by the mutuall congreſſe of two Noble parents (the Father and Mother) begot, and conceived in one wombe, and after mature time of Teeming, delivered into the World at one day: but becauſe I am loth to ſwell the pages of this Chapter beyond the limits of the former, I will referre the relation thereof unto that next enſuing.

CHAP. 7.

Of the conception and birth of theſe ſeven pious and religious Brothers: and being ſent to death, how preſerved, educated, and doctrinated: with a continuance of Merlins *Propheſies and their explanation.*

THe Legend reports that their mother being a Noble and chaſt Matron, but in her feminine ignorance not acquainted with the accidents belonging to other women, conceived a ſtrange opinion, from which ſhe could not be removed, that it was not poſſible for any of that ſex, to

The like is reported by the Counteſſe Altorſence *the Mother of the* Guelfi *in* Italy.

conceive more then one at once, unlesse she had had the consociety of so many severall men as shee brought forth children, in so much that she vilified and disreputed, holding all those no better then adultereſſes and prostitutes, who were delivered of Twins, or a more numerous issue: But the God of all flesh, and the Creatour of Nature, being also the searcher of hearts, and a justifier of innocence (to convert this Lady from her erroneous beliefe, and to cleere these unjust aspersions, with which shee had branded other chast and fruitfull wombs) so by his providence ordained, that by her sole Lord and Husband, she at one congression, was conceived of seven sonnes, and delivered of them at one time, being within the compasse of one day.

God the justifier of innocence.

Which shee seeing, and much amazed at the prodigious novelty of such an unexpected issue and now favouring by a reciprocall retribution these accusations and suspicions which shee had so often cast upon other good women might be throwne upon herin a desperate way; thereby thinking to salve her reputation (which shee thought hazarded at last, if not quite lost) shee consulted with the midwife, and one of her most trusty maids, (having hyred them to that purpose,) to take the young spralling infants and either to kill them or to cast them into the next River to which purpose, as they were hasting, and carrying them in little baskets, it pleased the higher powers that a grave and reverent Bishop met them upon the way, and as hee passed

A cruell purpose of a mother.

paſſed by the women hee heard the infants to cry and make mone which hee imagined was to implore his helpe and aide: therefore hee made ſtay of them and would needs ſee what they carried in their laps concealed, which they (as loth to betray their ladies ſecrets unwilling to ſhew, hee grew the more ſuſpicious and compelled them having ſome ſervants then about him to diſcover what was hid in their baſkets, which being opened, the babes all living ſeemd to rejoyce at his ſight and ſmile in his face, with which he was much delighted.

Gods providence in the preſervation of the children.

Then more ſtrictly examining them to what purpoſe they carried them in that manner? and threatning them with the ſeverity of the Law, if they told him not the truth, they knowing the power and authority of the Church, and danger of Eccleſiaſticall cenſure, and that their attempt deſerved (if not execution) yet excommunication at the leaſt, concealed no part of the truth, but earneſtly ſolicited him, whatſoever became of them, to have a care of their Ladies honour: the pious and charitable Prelate having been before himſelfe of her perverſe opinion, and now ſeeing how juſtly the Creatour of all things, had dealt with her, and to what deſperation ſhee was brought, by thinking to ſave a poore credit in this life by the murther of ſo hopefull an iſſue, to forfet all the hopes ſhe had in the World to come; hee diſmiſt the bearers without any further trouble: adjuring them to tell their Lady, that they had wounded the

A good and charitable Prelate.

young Infants according to her commandement (of which he himſelfe would take charge, and adopt them for his owne) and cauſing them to be born to his palace, and after to the Church, he himſelfe baptized them, and gave them their names as aforeſaid, then ſent for Nurſes, and commanded that they ſhould bee carefully educated, and when they came to any underſtanding, he ſet them to ſchoole, and cauſed them to be inſtructed in all the ſeven Liberall Arts (for hee found them to be of pregnant and capable apprehenſions) who after by his means came to be preferd to Church promotions, and after to Epiſcopall Dignities. I now proceed to *Merlins* next propheſie, which thus followeth.

The ſeven children proved ſeven Biſhops.

The Heavens in ſtead of water, bloud ſhall ſhowre,
And famine ſhall both young and old devoure:
Droop and be ſad ſhall the red Dragon then,
But after mickle time be blithe agen,
And now the Serpent that was white before,
Shall have his ſilver ſcales, all drencht in gore.
Seven ſcepter-bearing Kings in field ſhall die,
One of whoſe Sainted ſoules ſhall pierce the Skie,
Kept ſhall the babes bee from their Mothers wombes:
And ſoone as climbe on earth, grope for their Tombes.
All by a brazen man ſhall come to paſſe,
Who likewiſe mounted on his Steed of braſſe,

Both

Both night and day will Londons *prime Gate keep,*
Whether the careleſſe people wake or ſleepe.

Whoſoever ſhall read *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, our ancient Engliſh Chronologer, *pag.* 29. ſhall finde that in the days of *Cadwallo*, King of this Iſland the thirteenth after *Brute*, that for three dayes together bloud dropt from the clouds, after which came great ſwarms of infectious Flyes: by whoſe byrings or ſtingings there was great mortality in this Land, and by the ſhower of bloud is further intimated, the great effuſion of *Britiſh* bloud, ſometime by publicke hoſtility, ſometimes by Civill and Domeſticke enmity, profuſely waſted: in ſo much that the earth appeared, as if bloud had been powred downe from the Heavens, after which by the barrenneſſe of the earth followed ſo great a Famine, that nothing was found for the people to feed on, but the roots of withered Herbs and Graſſe, and ſuch fleſh as they could catch by hunting.

King Cadwallo *and his fortune.*

A great Famine.

No wonder then if this made the *Britiſh* Nation (figured under the *Red Dragon*) greatly to droop, which after much ſufferance and labour, was reſtored to his priſtine ſtate and dignity: For *Cadwallo*, who was King *Anno ſalutis* 633, after many horrid croſſes and diſaſters, exile, expulſion from his Kingdome, and the loſſe of his whole Inheritance was forced with a few of his followers that remayned of his many Le-

Britain *much diſtreſſed.*

gions, to retire into the lesse *Britaine*, to his Cousin King *Salomon*, who courteously received him, where hee wintred, and in the spring when Kings goe customably out to warre, hee furnisht him with an Army of ten thousand able men, when having shipt her safely, and prosperously arrived in this his owne native and hereditary provinces, And hearing that *Pæanda* King of *Mercia* (or middle *England*) had besieged in *Exeter*, his Cousin *Briant*, with those poore remainder of *Britons*, which he had left behind: dividing his souldiers into severall Squadrons, not only removed the siege, but took the King prisoner, who having given him sufficient hostages for his truth and fidelity, gave him also his only daughter to wife, so that hee became the Father in Law, who made him Generall of his Army.

Cadwallo *returns to* Britain.

Cadwallo *receiveth* Pæanda *into league.*

After which *Cadwallo* calling all his exiled subjects (dispersed abroad in severall provinces) into the Kingdome, hee raised a competent Army, and invaded *Northumberland* with fire and sword, of which *Edwinus* was then King, who assembling to his aide all the *Reguli*, (or lesse Kings) gave him a strong encounter, in which his whole Army was discomfited, and himselfe slain in the field, whom succeeded his sonne *Affricus*, assisted by *Chaldodus*, Duke of the *Orcades* whom *Matthew of Westminster* cals *Offridus* and *Gothaldus*) now *Cadwallo* not contented with his former victories, gathered his whole forces together, against *Offricus*; whom hee also

Cadwallo *victorious over the* Northumbers.

alſo ſlue in battaile, with his two Nephewes, and *Cadamus* the *Scots* King, who came to take part with the *Northumbers:* which done he paſt through all the Kingdome, being ſo maliciouſly and cruelly bent againſt the *Saxons*, that hee neither ſpared age, nor ſex, killing the old and young Infants new borne, and thoſe that never ſaw the ſun in their mothers wombs, purpoſing utterly to extirpate and root out all the *Saxon* Nation: thus you ſee *the red Dragon, namely the* Britiſh *Nation after much dejection exalted, and the ſcales of the white Serpent* (*the* Saxons) *ſtained in ſanguine tincture, by ſo generall a maſſacre.*

His cruelty againſt the Saxons.

It followeth, *ſeven Scepter-bearing Kings ſhall be ſlaine in the field, of which one of them ſhall bee Sainted:* now theſe ſeven Kings ſlaine by *Cadwallo*, and his father in law *Pæanda*, were *Edwinus*, his ſonne *Offricus*, and *Oſwaldus* (the Saint ſpoken of) which were three Kings of *Northumberland*, *Segebartus*, *Egricus*, and *Anna*, who raigned over the Orientall *Britons*, and *Cadamus* the *Scotch* King, concerning which *Oſwaldus* his ſanctity and other pious vertues, the ancient Chronicles write largely, (as alſo the Lords of thoſe times) many panegyricks in his prayſe, which would be too tedious here to inſert, yet ſome particulars of him, howſoever credible or no, I thought fitting to remember, it was ſaid of him, that when *Aldanus* Biſhop of *Scotland* (whoſe language neither he nor any of his *Saxons* underſtood) did at any time preach before him and his people, hee would put upon him

The names of the ſeven Kings ſlaine by Cadwallo.

The ſtory of Saint Oſwaldus.

him a royall garment, worn only on ſolemne Feſtivall days, and whether by vertue of that, or by divine rapture, he would deliver all that Sermon word for word to his Countrymen in their proper and moderne language: hee was alſo ſo temperate in his owne diet, and withall ſo liberall to the poore, that when he had gueſts at his Table, hee would not only ſpare from his owne ſtomach, but if hee ſaw any of them to gormondize, or feed more then became them, hee would bid them to eat more ſparingly, and to remember thoſe hungry bellies at the gate, which attended the reverſion and fragments from his boord and bounty.

His temperance and charity to the poore.

This reverent Biſhop *Aldanus* being feaſted by him on an Eaſter day, the King commanded a great ſilver Charger fild with the beſt meats at his Table, to bee carried to the beggars at his gate, who when they had eaten the meat, hee ſold the diſh, and equally divided it amongſt them, which the Biſhop ſeeing, ſaid aloud, Live may that liberall hand, ô may it always live and never taſte of corruption, which (if we will believe the *Roman* Legend) proved according to his propheticall acclamation, for many yeeres after his death, when his Tombe was ſearched, and all the reſt of his body according to the common courſe of Nature was putrified and turned to duſt, that hand and arme alone were preſerved, from corruption and rottenneſſe, and remained as entire, fleſh, bloud, veines, and arteries, as when he was interred.

A pr tended Miracle.

It

It followeth in the Hiſtory ſix of theſe before named Kings, being ſlaine in ſeverall conflicts, *Cadwallo* whoſe high ſpirit was irreconciliable towards the *Saxons*: purſued this *Oſwald* from province to province, chaſing him even to the wall which *Severus* the *Roman Emperour* built, to part and divide the two Kingdomes of *Britaine* and *Scotland*, and then ſent his Generall and Father in law *Pæana*, to give him battaile at a place called *Hed-field*, or holy *Camps*, in which by the prayers of this *Oſwaldus*. The *Britons* Hoaſt was quite diſcomfited, of which defeat when King *Cadwallo* underſtood, he gathered a freſh Army, and gave him a ſecond battaile at a place called *Bourne*: in which *Oſwaldus* and his Army were wholly routed, and himſelfe died lamented in his owne pious bloud, for whoſe charity and ſanctitie hee was after canonized, and remayneth to this day one of the Saints bleſſed in our Kalender, whoſe death happned in the yeere of our Saviour, 644: which improved that part of *Merlins* propheſie, *Seven Kings ſhall bee ſlaine, of which one ſhall bee Sainted.*

The battall of Headfield.

The death of Oſwaldus.

By *the brazen man, mounted upon a ſteed of braſſe, who is ſaid to do all theſe*, is *antonomaſtice* meant King *Cadwallo*, to honour whom, after his death, for his many brave victories, and expelling the *Saxons* out of the land, the peeres and people cauſed his ſtatue, at his full ſize and proportion to be caſt in braſſe, ſitting alſo upon an Horſe of braſſe, in whoſe buckler they in-

Cadwallo *the brazen man, and why ſo called.*

tombed his embalmed body, and after set it upon the prime gate of the Citie *London*, (it being a piece of admirable art and pulchritude) and neere unto the same, in further memory of him built a Church, dedicated to Saint *Martin*, therefore saith the Prophet, *The brazen Horse and Man shall watch the Gate whether the people wake or sleepe*, which continued for many yeeres after.

Chap. 8.

Hee propheseth of the civill Warres that shall bee in Britaine, *in the time of* Cadwallo, *and of the great dearth and desolation in the reigne of* Cadwallodor: *of the* Saxons, *exalting themselves, and of the first comming in of the* Danes, *into this land, &c.*

A continuation of the History.

AS *Merlin* in all his propheses aimeth at a continued History of the maine passages in this Ile of *Britain*: so I also desire to observe a concordance of times, lest the neglect of either might breed a confusion in both, as shall be made good in the sequell: his propheste followeth.

The

The crimſon Dragon with his owne fierce pawes
Shall teare his proper bowels 'gainſt the Lawes:
Of wholſome Nature, plague, and famine then
Shal fill the barren earth with ſhrowds of men.
After, the Dragon whoſe ſmooth ſcales are white,
Hither the Almans *daughter ſhall invite,*
And crown themſelves: Againſt whom ſhall riſe
An Eagle from the Rock, and both ſurpriſe,
Two Lions ſhall a dreadfull combate make,
Having their Liſts incompaſt by a Lake.
At length be atton'd, and after ſhall divide.
The glorious prey: a ſpeckled ſcale, whoſe pryde,
Shall ayme at high things; well his Lord betray
Poyſoning the Royall neſt in which he lay
Of the white Dragon, ſo the Fates agree,
At length a Decemvirum *there ſhall bee:*
What time the Red ſhall to his joy behold
The roofs of all his Temples deckt with gold,
&c.

The conquering Britains *fall at ods with themſelves.*

By the Crimſon Dragon is ſtill meant *England*, which after the death of *Cadwallo*, being impatient of peace, for want of forreigne Enemies ſhall be at Civill diſſention in it ſelfe, of which ſhall enſue much ſtrage and mortality, ſuch Dearth, alſo Famine and Deſolation which ſhall happen by the plague, that deſtroyeth the men, and the Murrian that killeth the cattle, that the Natives ſhall bee forced to leave the Kingdome as a Wilderneſſe unpeopled, the remaynder of the living being ſcarce ſufficient in

number to bury the dead, which strange depopulation fell in the third and last yeere of *Cadwallader* the sonne of *Cadwallo*, which was in the yeere of Grace sixe hundred fourescore and sixe, which maketh up the yeere of the World, by the account of *Polycronicon*, and other of our *Englisb* Chronologers, five thousand eight hundred, fourescore and five, so that it appeareth the native *Britains* had the title and soveraignty of this Kingdome from *Brute*: first landing by the space of one thousand eight hundred, and two and twenty yeeres, *Cadwalloder* being the last King of the *Britons*, after whom the *Saxons* or *Angles*, had the full dominion thereof, which maketh good that in the propheſie, *The white Dragon shall invite the* Almans *daughter*, which implyeth a greater supply of the *German* nation, *and crowne themselves*. For from that time they bare the Scepter, and had the absolute jurisdiction over the whole Land, which they continued for a long season.

Cadwallader *the last King of the* Britains.

To passe over all the *Saxon* Kings to the time of *Ethelredus*, in whose dayes *An Eagle from the Rock* (which was *Swanus* King of *Denmarke*) *shall rise &c.* The better to explain our prophet, and to carry the History along, this *Etheldred* the sonne of the most Royall King *Edward*, by his second Wife *Alfrida*, by some cald *Estrild*, when he came to bee crowned, by *Dunstane* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, hee could not containe himselfe, but with a propheticall spirit uttered those words: because by the bloudy slaughter

K. Etheldred *the sonne of* Alfride.

ſlaughter of thy brother thou haſt aſpired to the Kingdome, The ſinne of thy moſt wicked and miſchievous mother ſhall never bee expiated, nor any who were of her Diabolicall counſell, but by the greateſt effuſion of the *Saxon* bloud, that ever was ſhed ſince their firſt comming into *Britaine*, and further the beginning of thy Reigne ſhall be cruell, the middle thereof miſerable, and the end ſhamefull, all which accordingly hapned.

Edward *the eldeſt ſonne of* King Edgar *made* King.

His Father King *Edgar*, of ever ſurviving memory, had by his firſt wife called *Egelſleda*, a noble ſonne named *Edward*, and by his ſecond *Alfrida*, this *Etheldred*, *Edgar* being dead, the Barons aſſembled, and made *Edward* King in the yeere of grace eight hundred threeſcore and fifteene, at which his ſtepmother greatly repined, uſing all the means both of power, proofe, and friends to have inaugurated her ſonne *Etheldred*, being then a lad but of ſeven yeeres old, which in the end moſt traiterouſly ſhee accompliſhed, for the King hunting in the Forreſt, neere unto the Caſtle of *Corffe*, in the Weſt Country, who having loſt all his company, bethought himſelfe that his ſtepmother with her ſonne liv'd in that Caſtle, to whom hee would give a friendly viſit, who ſpying from her window afarre of, cald to a Villaine that attended her, and whiſpered in his eare what hee ſhould doe: by this the King was come to the gate, and ſhee deſcended to meet him, ſaluting him with a *Judas* kiſſe, and intreated him to alight

A wicked ſtepmother.

and ſojourne with her for that night, which hee modeſtly refuſing, ſaid hee would only drinke a horſback and ſo be gone, which being brought, as the cup was at his mouth, her trayterous ſervant with a long Dagger ſtrooke him quite through the body, at which hee put ſpurs to his horſe thinking to have recovered his ſervants, but through his great loſſe of bloud hee fainted, and falling from his horſe, one of his feet was faſtned in the ſtirrop, and ſo hurried to a place called *Coriſgate*, where his miſerably mangled body was found, and not being knowne at that preſent to be the King, without ceremony buried, whom as you have heard, his brother by the Fathers ſide ſucceeded.

The baſe murther upon King Edward.

In whoſe reigne hapned divers prodigies pretending great diſaſter, among which was the ſterility of the earth, the burning of *London* by an accidentall fire, but the moſt ominous and terrible was the invaſion of the *Danes* and their many maſſacres & inhuman butcheries committed through all the ſhires and provinces of the Kingdome, as more amply hereafter, but by the way is to be noted that in the eighth yeere of his reigne hee was eſpouſed to *Ithelgina*, whom ſome call *Elgina*, daughter to Earle *Edgebertus* by whom in proceſſe of time he received a ſonne called *Edmund* (after for his notable valour, ſirnamed *Ironſide*) and two others *Edwin* and *Ethelſtane*, with a daughter named *Egina*.

Ethelredus marriage and Iſſue.

About the eleventh yeere of his reigne the *Danes* pierced the land in ſundry places, againſt whom

The Invaſion of the Danes.

whom the King being wholy addicted to effeminacie and cowardiſe, durſt make no hoſtile oppoſure, but for the preſent oppeaſed them with great ſummes of mony, which being ſpent they fell to new robberies. Then the King bribed them with more, notwithſtanding which, they ſpoyled *Northumberland*, and at laſt laid ſiege to *London*, and to increaſe his ſorrow and trouble, Earle *Elphricus* who was Admirall of the Navy, fled like a Traitour to the *Danes*, and took part with them againſt his naturall Liege, for which the King commanded that his ſonne *Algarus* ſhould have his eyes torne out of his head: during which time, burning Fevers, and the bloudy Flix deſtroyeth many of the Natives, to which was added ſcarcity and penury amongſt the commons, in ſo much that they were forced to rob and ſteale from one another, ſo that what by their owne pilfering and pillage of the *Danes*, the land was brought to extreame miſery, by whoſe continuall invaſions, and the Kings puſillanimity, the Tribute paid unto them was raiſed from ten thouſand pounds to forty thouſand (named for the continuance thereof *Dane-gelt*) they yet not ſatisfied: to adde to the former, the *Britiſh* Peeres were ſo hollow breſted amongſt themſelves, that when they were at any time aſſembled, and had determined any thing to the impeachment of the *Danes*, they were warned thereof by ſome of the falſhearted Counſell, of whom were moſt ſuſpected *Elphricus*, and *Edricus, the Snake* formerly mentioned in the propheſie.

The ſon puniſht for the

Fathers treaſon.

Dane-gelt.

Edricus *intended by the* Snake.

The

The Kings second mariage.

The Land besides other distresses continuing under this grievous Tribute, the King by the advice of those familiars who were about him, married *Emma* the daughrer of *Richard* the third Duke of *Normandy*, and first of that name, who was for his boldnesse and valour sirnamed, *Richard the Hardy, or without feare:* and she (by the *French* Chronicles) *Emma* the flowre of *Normandy*, by which Match hee was greatly animated and incouraged, so that presuming on the power of his Father in Law, hee sent into all the Townes, Cities, and Villages of this Land, secret and straight Commissions, charging the Rulers and Magistrates upon the night succeeding the day of Saint *Brice*, that all the *Danes* should be murdered in their beds, the execution whereof they committed to their Wives and Women, which was also, accordingly performed (a strange wonder that so great a secret should passe generally through that sex, without uttering or discovery.)

A generall Massacre of the Danes throughout all the Land.

This generall Massacre of the *Danes* (as fame reports) began at a little Towne in *Hertfordshire* twenty foure miles from *London*, called *Wealwin*, from which act it tooke first name, as if there the weal of their Country was first warm, and the day of Saint *Brice:* hapned that yeare upon the Monday, which to this day is called *Hoc*, or *Hop-monday*, but wherefore I know not, unlesse by *Hoc:* this day as a remarkable note to posterity, or by *Hop*, as that day the *Danes* (according to a proverbe wee retaine from

Hoc, or Hop Monday.

An-

Antiquity) as that day hopt without their heads.

Now concerning the pride of the *Danes* and their incredible tyranny exerciſed throughout the whole Kingdome, which was the occaſion of this their univerſall ſlaughter, our Engliſh Hiſtorians have thus recorded of them, they cauſed the Farmers and Huſbandmen to plow, ſow, and eare the ground, and to doe all the ſervile labour that belonged to *agriculture* and huſbandry, whilſt they kept their wives and commanded their daughters and ſervants at their pleaſure, and when the Maſter of the houſe came home, hee was forced to ſalute his ſuperintendent Dane as his Lord, and whilſt the Uſurper eare and fed of the beſt, the poore oppreſſed owner could ſcarcely have his fill of the worſt: beſides, for feare and dread they calledthem in every houſe where they had rule Lord *Dane*, which after when the Engliſh had attained to their former honour grew to a title of great opprobry and contempt, for when any one would rebuke or revile an other hee would in ſcorne call him *Lurdan*, a word in the Countrey in uſe euen to this day.

The pride and inſolency of the Danes *over the* Britains.

Lord Dane *turned into* Lurdain.

But now comes in the *Eagle* by which is intended *Swanus* K. of *Denmark*, *who ſurpriſeth both*, that is ſubdueth the *Saxons* & the other *Almans* or *Germans*, whom they had admitted into the land, and after infinite devaſtations, depopulations and ſpoils with his broad wings ſoared over the whole Kingdome and made prey in every

province thereof (the particulars would aske much time and paper) who in conclusion tooke from the *White Dragon* the *Saxons* after they had held the sovereignty by many successive Kings both Crown and Scepter, but before this happened the unfortunate King: whose onely fight was with money to impoverish his owne people, and inrich the enemy (for hee often bought his peace which prov'd to no purpose) hee made *Edricus* whom *Merlin* calleth the Snake, Duke of *Mercia*, who was of low and base birth and parentage, yet had attained to great wealth and rich possessions, false of tongue, subtle of brain, and eloquent in speech, and perfidious in purpose and promise, which will more at large appeare hereafter.

Edricus *created Duke of* Mercia.

In this interim, *Swanus* so farre prevailed, that the King fearing the continuall persecution of the *Danes*, first sent *Emma* his Queene, with his two younger sonnes which were *Alfred* and *Edward*, to *Richard* the second of that name, and fourth Duke of *Normandy*, who was her naturall brother, and after was compeld to flie thither in person, with a slender traine of followers, of which wheu *Swanus* had notice, he grew inflamed with greater pride and insolence: and amongst other of his Tyrannies, hee fired the City of *Canterbury*, and slue nine hundred religious persons tithing them, as killing nine and saving the tenth, with 8000 women & children, and because the reverend Bishop would not, or could not pay him downe three thousand

The King with his Queene forc't to flye the Land.

ſand pounds, hee kept him priſoner ſeven moneths, and cauſed him after at *Greenwich*, foure miles from *London*, to be ſtoned to death: and whereſoever hee came, hee reſerved all the women to be vitiated and defloured, aſwell the religious as others: robbing the Shrine of Saint *Edmond*, not leaving any cruelty which could finde a name, unperformed. At length upon the day of the *Purification* of the bleſſed Virgin in the yeere one thouſand and fourteen, he died miſerably howling and crying, three dayes and nights together before his death: whom ſucceeded his ſonne *Canutus*. And two yeeres after, at one thouſand ſixteen expired at *London*, King *Edelfred*, and was buried in the Church of Saint *Paul*: whom ſucceeded his ſonne *Edmund*, ſirnamed *Ironſide*, and theſe two Princes were the *two Lions* ſpoken of in the former propheſie, of whom you ſhall heare more in the enſuing Chapter.

The Biſhops name was Elphigus.

The death of the Tyrant Swanus.

The death of Edelfredus

Chap. 9.

Of divers bloudy battails fought betwixt Canutus *and* Edmund: *their great opposition ended in a single Duel. They make peace and equally divide the Kingdome betwixt them: the trayterous death of* Edmund: Canutus *revengeth it upon the murderer, with other occurences pertinent to the story, &c.*

EDmund sirnamed *Ironside*, the sonne of *Egelredus*, and *Canutus* the sonne of *Swanus* King of *Denmarke*, began to rule the *English* Nation, *Anno* 1016, and in the twenty ninth yeere of *Robert* King of *France*, the *Londoners* with some of the *English* Nobles favouring *Edmund*, but the greater part of the Nobility, and Clergie adhering to *Canutus*, betwixt which yong and valiant Princes were fought sundry cruell and bloudy battails (too long here to reherse.) In which infinite both of the Natives and Strangers fell by the sword: one of which was fought in *Dorsetshire*, besides a Towne called *Gillingham:*

ham: another in *Worceſterſhire*, which continued from morning till night, when they ſurceaſed fight either for great wearineſſe, or for want of light, when both Hoaſts joyned the next morrow early, and eagerly; in which battaile the Traytour *Edricus* perceiving the fortune of the day to encline towards *Edmund*, pitcht a dead mans head upon a ſpeare, and calling to his Countrymen, cryed out with this acclamation, Fly you *Engliſhmen*, and preſerve your lives, for behold this is the head of *Edmund* your King: of which the Prince being warned, haſted to that part of the field, and plucking off his Helmet to ſhew that he was living, ſo comfortably and couragiouſly demeaned himſelf among his ſouldiers, that in the end hee had the better of the day.

In which battail Canutus *was overcome by* Edmund.

The treaſon of Eldricus.

In the preparation of another field, when both the Hoaſts were ready to joyne battaile, upſtarted one of the Commanders, and appearing betweene the two Armies, in the Front of either, ſpake aloud as followeth: You Princes both, to you I declare my ſelfe: you ſee how we daily periſh, for neither of you gaine an abſolute victorie: *Edmund* cannot bee overcome becauſe of his great ſtrength and courage, and *Canutus* cannot be ſubdued, being alſo much favoured by Fortune: what then ſhall be the finall ſucceſſe of this inveterate malice and contention? when all your Knights & ſouldiers are ſlain, ſhall you not bee then inforced either to compound your enmity, or to fight hand to hand, be-

This Commander was of K. Edmunds *party.*

betwixt your selves? If this must bee the end; why do you not one of these two? For the first, Is not this Kingdome now sufficient for two, which before contented seven? or if your spleen be so great that it cannot be reconciled, by an equall division of the Land; why doe not you two fight alone, that strive to be Lords alone? For if we all perish, who shall be left either to serve you, or to keepe forreigne invaders out of the Land?

Which words were so emphatically delivered, and tooke such impression both in the Princes themselves and both their Armies, that a Truce being made, they agreed to end the warre betwixt them in a single Duell, for which was assigned an Isle called *Olkney* neere *Gloster*, incompast with the water of *Severne*, which makes good the propheſie.

Two Lions shall a dreadfull combat make,
And have their Lists incompast by a Lake.

The combat betwixt Edmund and Canutus.

In which place at the day prefixed, the two worthy and warlike Champions compleatly armed, singly met, the two Hoasts standing without the Isle, where first they encountred with sharpe Lances on Horsback, breaking them even to the very Truncheons: then they alighted and fought long on foote with their keene swords, till their armours were broken in divers places, and they both were dangerously wounded, when retyring for breath, by the first motion of *Canutus*,

nutus, they made an accord betwixt themſelves, embracing one another as brothers, to the great rejoycing of both Armies.

Canutus *made the firſt motion of peace.*

After which, they made an equall partition of the Land, and *Canutus* married *Emma* the mother of *Edmund*, but the Snake *Edricus*, whom his Lord had not only pardoned for his former Treaſon, but promoted unto further dignity, by creating him Earle of *Kent*, notwithſtanding which, he corrupted his ſonne then attending the King, who awaited his opportunity, and as he was doing the neceſſiites of nature, ſtrooke him with a Speare into the fundament, of which mortall wound hee dyed ſoone after at *Oxford*: Then *Edricus* poſted in haſte to *Canutus*, and ſaluted him by the Title of ſole Sovereigne of the Kingdome, inſinuating, that for his love and honour hee had removed his Competitour, and told him the manner how, which *Canutus* having truly underſtood, and that the Treaſon was uttered from his owne mouth, and in his perſonall hearing, like a juſt and wiſe Prince, he replyed unto him: Foraſmuch, ô *Edricus*, as for my love, thou haſt ſlaine thy naturall Lord whom I entirely affected, I ſhall exalt thy head above all the Lords of *England*, and preſently commanded his head to be ſtruck off, and pitcht upon a pole, and ſet upon the higheſt gate of *London*, and his body to bee throwne into the River of *Thames*; yet *Marianus* and others write otherwiſe concerning the manner of his death, which makes good what is formerly ſpoken that a ſpeckled Snake,

Edmund *ſlaine by the traytour* Edricus.

A traytours juſt reward.

Ayming

Aiming at high things shall his Lord betray,
Poysoning the Royall Nest in which he lay.

Meaning the Kings Treason in which the Traitor was closeted, as one whom hee most favoured and honoured.

Canutus *sole Monarch of England.*

Canutus being now sole Monarch, the *white Dragon* was forced to stoop to the Eagle, that is, the *Saxons* were compeld to bee under the subjection of the *Danes*, by whom they were so miserably oppreſt, that scarce the tenth part of them were left in the Land, and these that remayned were forced to tithe their goods, and pay it as a tribute to the *Danes*: therefore saith the Prophet,

Of the white Dragon (so the Fates agree)
A Decimation in the end shall bee.

It followeth in the History, in a great assembly made of the King and his Barons: a question was propounded whether in the composition made betwixt *Edmund* and *Canutus*, there was any mention made of *Edmunds* children to have the inheritance of their Father after his death, that was, in halfe part of the Kingdome? to which a great part of them, thinking thereby to insinuate unto the Kings favour answered, Nay: but it hapned unto them contrary to their expectation, for knowing them to be naturall *Englishmen*, and before sworn to King *Edmund* and

and his heires, hee hated them for their perjury, never truſting them after, but ſome hee exiled, and ſome were ſlaine, and others being ſtrooke with the hand of God died ſuddenly: It was likewiſe ordered by the foreſaid Counſell, that the two ſonnes of *Ironſide*, *Edmund* and *Edward* ſhould be ſent to *Swanus* (the elder brother of *Canutus*) King of *Denmarke*: the purpoſe is diverſly reported, ſome ſay to be ſlaine, and that *Swanus* abhorring the Act, ſent them to *Salomon* then King of *Hungary*, where, *Edmund* died of a naturall death, but his brother *Edward* in the proceſſe of time, married *Agatha*, the daughter of *Henry* the fourth of that name Emperour, and by her (beſides daughters) had a ſonne ſirnamed *Ethelinge*: This *Edward* of our *Engliſh* Chronologers, is named the Out-law, becauſe he never returned into *England* his native Country. In this interim died *Swanus* King of *Denmarke*, and the Crowne fell to *Canutus*, ſo that he was ſole Sovereigne of both Nations, the *Engliſh* and the *Danes*.

The Kings conſcionable juſtice.

What became of the ſons of Edmund Ironſide.

Canutus landed in *Denmarke*, with a ſtrong Army to poſſeſſe himſelfe of his lawfull Inheritance, and to oppoſe the *Vandals* who had pierced that Land, and when the King was otherwiſe negotiated, Earle *Goodwin* with a band of *Engliſhmen* ſet upon the Invaders by night, and rowted their whole Army, for which noble act the King had him in great favour, and the *Engliſh* Nation ever after: This King was greatly beloved of his ſubjects, for many of his vertues,

as being very charitable and devout, a great repayrer and decorer of Churches, especially of divers Cathedrals which hee caused to be richly beautified with gilding, their Altars and Roofs more gloriously then in former ages: thereby confirming that part of the prophesie.

Meaning the red Dragon.

What time the red *shall to his joy behold*
The rooffs of all the Temple shine with gold.

Some attribute the cause of his devotion to a noble care he had, to repaire what his tyrannicall Father had before ruined, that the memory of his Atheisticall cruelty might bee quite forgot, others that it was at the Altar of *Emma* his Queen, the Widow Dowager of *Egelredus*, and mother of *Ironside*, who was a Lady of great religious sanctity: Hee made also a Voyage to *Rome*, where hee was pontifically received by *Bennet* the eight of that name, and demeaned himselfe with great magnificence and honour. It is further reported of him, that after his great entertainment there, and return from thence, he was so tumoured with pride, that standing by the *Thames* side, at a flowing tyde, hee charged the water that it should presume no further, nor dare to touch his feet, which was so farre from obeying his command, that he stil keeping his ground, from his ankles it came up to his knees, at which suddenly stepping backe out of the River, he blushing said: By this all earthly Kings may know, that their powers are vaine, and

Vaine pride soone repented of.

and tranſitory, and that none is worthy of that name but he who created the Elements, and to whom they only obey.

This *Canutus* married his eldeſt daughter, by his Wife *Elgina*, the daughter to the Earle of *Hampton*, to *Henry* ſonne of the Emperour *Conradus* the ſecond of that name, and ſoone after died at *Shaftbury*, and was buried at *Wincheſter*, when he had reigned nineteen yeeres, leaving two ſonnes, *Harold*, ſirnamed for his ſwiftneſſe in running, *Harefoot*, and *Hardy Canutus*, whom in his life time hee cauſed to bee crowned King of *Denmarke*: *Harold* ſucceeded his Father in the Crowne of *England*, in the beginning of whoſe Reigne: there was great doubt made of the Legitimacie of his birth, or whether hee were the Kings ſonne or no: but more eſpecially by Earle *Goodwin*, who was a man of a turbulent ſpirit, who to the utmoſt of his power, would have diſinherited him, and conferred the Kingdome to his brother. But *Leofricus* whom the King much loved and truſted by the aſſiſtance of the *Danes*, oppoſed mightily *Goodwin*, and his ſonne, ſo that they were utterly diſappointed of their purpoſe.

The death of Canutus.

Harold *ſonne of Canutus King of England.*

Harold was no ſooner ſetled in the Kingdome, but hee robbed his ſtepmother *Emma*, (that good and devout Lady) of her Jewels and Treaſure, and then baniſhed her the Land, wherefore ſhe ſailed to *Baldwin* Earle of *Flanders*, where ſhe was nobly entertained and continued, all the Reigne of this *Harold*, in which

Emma *wife to Canutus baniſhed.*

hee did nothing worth regiſter, or deſerving memory, who after three yeeres and ſome few moneths died at *London*, (or as ſome ſay at *Oxford*) and having no iſſue, left his brother *Hardy Canutus*, heire to the Crowne, with the death of whoſe elder brother I conclude this Chapter.

CHAP. 10.

Merlins *Propheſie of* Hardy Canutus, *and Earle* Goodwin, *which accordingly hapned: his many Tyrannies, amongſt other his Tithing of the* Norman *Gentlemen: the death of Prince* Alured *ſonne to* Canutus *and* Emma: *the ſtrange death of Earle* Goodwin. *After the death of* Edward *the Confeſſor,* Harold *Earle* Goodwins *ſonne uſurpeth.*

YOu ſee how hitherto *Merlin* hath predicted nothing which the ſucceſſe and event have not made good: wee will yet examine him further, and prove if hee have beene as faithfull in the future as the former: who thus proceedeth.

And

And Helluo *then with open jaws ſhall yawne,*
Devouring even till midnight from the dawn:
And he an Hydra *with ſeven heads ſhall grace,*
Glad to behold the ruine of his race,
And then upon the Neuſtrian *bloud ſhall prey,*
And tithe them by the pole (now well away)
Burſt ſhall he after gordg'd with humane blood,
And leave his name in part of the ſalt flood.
Iron men, in woodden Tents ſhall here arrive,
And hence the Saxons *with her Eglets drive,*
&c.

Hardy Canutus *the* Dane *crowned King of* England.

It followeth in the Hiſtory, *Hardy Canutus* the ſonne of *Canutus* and *Emma*, began his Reigne over *England*, in the yeere of Grace, one thouſand forty one, who was of ſuch cruelty, as that he was no ſooner ſetled in the State, but he preſently ſent *Alphricus* Archbiſhop of *Yorke*, and Earle *Goodwin* to *Weſtminſter*, to take up the body of his deere brother, and having parted the head from the ſhoulders, to caſt them into the River *Thames*, which was by them accordingly performed, the cauſe thereunto moving was for rifling, and after exiling his mother *Emma*, whom hee cauſed with great honour to be brought againe into the Land.

A barbarous cruelty in a brother.

His riot and exceſſe.

Hee revived alſo the (almoſt forgotten) Tribute called *Dane gelt*, which hee ſpent in drinking Deep, and Feeding high, for theſe were his delights: For beſides his immoderate quaffing, he had the Tables through his Court ſpred four

times a day, with all the riot and exceſſe that might be deviſed: who himſelfe minding only gormondizing and voracitie, committed the whole rule of the Land to *Emma* and *Goodwin*, (who had married the Daughter of *Canutus*, by his firſt wife *Elgina*) by whom many things were much miſordered to the great diſcontent of the Commons. This Earle had many ſonnes (as witneſſeth *Polychronicon, lib. 6. cap.* 15.) by his firſt wife who was ſiſter to *Canutus*, hee had but one, who by the ſtriking of an Horſe, was throwne into the *Thames* and there drowned, whoſe mother after died by Lightning, and was of ſuch incontinent life, that ſhee proſtituted Virgins and young women, to make baſe and mercenary uſe of their bodies: ſhe dead, he married a ſecond, of whom hee begot ſixe ſonnes, *Swanus*, *Harold*, *Toſtius*, *Wilnotus Syrthe*, or *Surthe*, and *Leofricus*, with a daughter named *Goditha* who after was married to *Edward* the Confeſſor.

Earle Goodwins *ſons and daughter.*

Hardy Canutus wholly devoted to all voluptuouſneſſe, being at a Feaſt at *Lambeth*, in the midſt of his mirth and jollity, drinking a carowſe out of a bowle, elbow-deep, fell downe ſuddenly and reſted ſpeechleſſe for the ſpace of eight dayes, at the end whereof he expired, in the eight day of *June*, when hee had raigned two compleat yeeres, leaving no iſſue lawful of his body, and was buried by his Father at *Wincheſter*, in whom ended the Line and Progeny of *Swanus*, ſo that after this King the bloud of the

Hardy Canutus *dieth drinking.*

the *Danes* was quite extinct, and made uncapable of any Regall Dignity within this Land. Their bloudy perſecution ceaſing, which had continued (counting from their firſt landing in the time of *Brightricus* King of the Weſt *Saxons*) by the ſpace of two hundred fifty five yeeres, or thereabout: by this *Hardy Canutus*, *Merlin* intended his *Helluo*, as being a gluttonous Prince, whoſe bibacity and voracity would continue from morning till midnight, in the firſt yeere of whoſe Reigne,

The end of the Daniſh perſecution and how long it continued.

The two ſonnes of *Egelredus* and *Emma*, namely *Alphred*, and *Edward*, who before were ſent into *Normandy*, came into *England* to ſee their Mother, and were Princely attended by a great number of brave *Norman* Knights and Gentlemen, of which Earle *Goodwin* (that ſubtle ſeven-headed *Hydra* before ſpoken of) having notice, hee began to plot and deviſe how to match his only daughter *Goditha* to one of the two Princes, but finding *Alured* the eldeſt to be of an high and haughty ſpirit, and would diſdaine ſo mean a marriage, he thought by ſupplanting him to conferre her upon the younger, who was of a more flexible diſpoſition, to compaſſe which, hee pretended to the King and Councell, that it might prove dangerous to the ſtate to ſuffer ſo many ſtrangers to enter the Land without licenſe.

By the ſeven heads are meant he and his ſix ſonnes who aſſiſted him in all his bloudy projects

Earle Goodwins policie.

By which he got authority and power to manage that buſineſſe according to his owne diſcretion, as being moſt potent with the King,

and

and a great incourager of his profuseneſſe and riot: therefore being ſtrongly accompanied he met with the two Princes and their traine, and ſet upon them as Enemies, killing the greater part of them at the firſt encounter, and having ſurpriſ'd the reſt upon a place called *Guil-downe* hee ſlue nine and ſaved the tenths, and then thinking the number of the ſurvivors too great, he tithed againe that tenth putting them to cruel deaths, as winding their guts out of their bellies, with other torturing deaths) then he cauſed the elder brothers eys to be pluckt out and ſent to a religious houſe in *Ely*, where hee dyed ſhortly after, but the younger he preſerv'd as an husband for his daughter, and ſent him to his mother *Emma*: all which fulfils the former propheſie which ſaith.

Earle Goodwins *great cruelty.*

And he an Hidra *with ſeaven heads ſhall grace,*
Glad to behold the ruine of his race.
And then upon the Neuſtrian *blood ſhall pray,*
And tithe them by the pole &c.

By Neuſtria *is underſtood* Normandy.

Emma nor truſting the tyranny of *Goodwin* by whom ſhe had left one ſon, the better to ſecure the other, ſhee ſent him into *Normandy*, but Hardy Canutus beeing dead, he was ſent for over to receive his iuſt and lawfull inheritance: ſo that this *Edward* the ſonne of *Egelredus* and his laſt wife *Emma*, began his Raigne over *England* in the yeare of Grace 1043. and was ſoon after maried to *Goditha* (whom *Guido* calleth *Editha*) the

Edward *after ſirnamed the Confeſſor made King.*

the ſole daughter of Earle *Goodwin*, who as all Authors affirme, lived with her without any carnall ſociety, whether it were in hatred of her kinred, as by the greatneſſe of her father compel'd to that match, or for that he altogether devoted himſelfe to chaſtity, it is left uncertaine.

The Kings mother accuſed of adultery, with Alwin *Biſhop of* Wincheſter.

In the beginning of his Raigne his mother *Emma*, was accuſed to have too much familiarity with the B. of *Wincheſter*, therefore the King by the counſell of Earl *Goodwin* ſeiſed vpon many of her iewels, and confined her to a ſtrict keeping in the Abby of *Worwell*, the Biſhop *Alwin* was alſo under the Cuſtody of the Clergy; but ſhee more ſorrowing for his defame then her owne, wrote unto divers Biſhops to doe their Iuſtice, affirming ſhe was ready to undergoe any triall whatſoever, to give the World ſatiſfaction of her innocence, who laboured to the King that their cauſe might have a juſt and legall hearing: but *Robert* Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* not pleaſed with the motion, ſaid unto them, My Brethren Biſhops, how dare ye plead for her, who is a beaſt and no woman? as by defaming the King and her ſonne, and yielding her ſelfe a proſtitute to the incontinent *Alwin:* (proceeding further) but if it be ſo that the woman would purge the Prieſt, who ſhall then purge the woman? who is accuſed to have been conſenting to the death of her ſonne *Alfred*, and hath prepared infectious Drugs for the poyſoning of her ſonne *Edward:* but be ſhe guilty or no; if ſhee will agree to goe bare foot upon

Robert *Archbiſhop of* Canterbury *againſt the mother Queen.*

nine plough-shares burning and fiery hot, for her selfe foure shares, and for the Bishop five, he may be then cleered, and she also.

This our English Chronicles affirme for truth.

To which shee granted, and the day of her purgation assigned, at which day the King in person with many of his Lords were present, she was hoodwinkt and led to the place where the Irons lay glowing hot, and having passed over the nine shares unhurt, shee said, Good God, when shall I come to the place of my purgation? When they opened her eyes, and shee saw that she had past the torment without any sence of paine, she kneeled downe, and gave thanks to the protectour of chastity and innocence. Then the King repented him of his credulitie, restoring unto her what hee had before taken from her, asking of her forgivenes and blessing. But the Archbishop *Robert*, who was once a Monke in *Normandy*, and was sent for over by the King, and first made Bishop of *London*, and after raised to be Metropolitan, fled into his Countrey, and was no more seene in *England* after.

Emma acquit from the suspition of Incontinency.

After many insolencies committed against the King, by Earle *Goodwin* and his sonnes (too long to rehersе) they were forced to abandon the Land, and flie into *Flanders* to Earle *Baldwin*, (whose daughter *Judith*, *Swanus* his eldest sonne had married) and then by a Parlament they were made Out-lawes and Rebels, and their goods and Lands seized: where they continued as exiles for the space of two yeeres: during

Earle Goodwin and his sons flie the Land.

ring which time *William* the baſtard Duke of *Normandy* came with a Noble Traine to viſit the King his Couſin, and were royally entertained, returning with great gifts and preſents into his Country, after which *Goodwin* by interceſſion of his friends here in *England*, was called home with his ſonnes, who were received into grace, and reſtored to their former dignities and poſſeſſions: giving for pledges of his fidelity, his ſonne *Wilnotus* and *Hacun* the ſonne of *Swanus*, whom the King ſent to *William* Duke of *Normandy*, to be kept in ſafe cuſtodie.

Goodwin *and his ſons reſtored.*

Not long after, in the twelfth yeere of the Reigne of this *Edward* the Confeſſor, upon an Eaſter Monday, *Goodwin* ſitting with other Lords at the Kings Table, in the Caſtle of *Winſor*, it hapned that the Kings Cupbearer ſtumbled, but recovered himſelfe of a fall, at which the Earle laughed heartily, and ſaid; there one brother helped the other, meaning one leg had ſupported the other, which the King obſerving, ſaid, yea, and ſo my brother *Alphred* might have lived to have helped and ſuſtained me, had it not bin for Earl *Goodwin*, by which words the Earl apprehending, that he upbraided him with his brothers death, thinking to excuſe himſelf of the Act, ſaid, ſo may I ſafely ſwallow this morſell of bread that is in my hand, as I am innocent of that deed, in ſwallowing of which hee was choaked: which the King ſeeing commanded him to be dragged from the board, his bodie being conveighed to *Wincheſter*, and there interred:

Goodwins *remarkable death.*

red: *Mucrinus* saith, that he was suddenly struck with a palsie of which hee died three days after: howsoever hee underwent a most remarkable judgement: His eldest sonne living who was *Harold* (for *Swanus* died in his pilgrimage to *Jerusalem*) had all his Fathers Dignities and Honours conferd upon him: But in processe of time all those his Lands in *Kent* (of which hee was Earle, were eaten up and devoured by the Sea, upon whose dangerous shelves and quicksands, many thousands have beene wrackt and drowned, and they are called *Goodwins Sands*, unto this day, which verifieth that part of the propheſie of the *Hydra*, where he saith,

Burst shall he after gordg'd with humane blood,
And leave his name in part of the salt flood.

Harold having done many noble services for the King and the countrey, in all which hee came off with great honour and victorie: about the 20. yeere of King *Edward*, hee sayled towards *Normandy* to visite his brother *Wilnotus* and his Nephew *Hucun*, who lay there as pledges for the peace betwixt the King and Earle *Goodwin*; but either by the mistake of the unskilfull Pilot or by the extremity of tempests, hee was driven upon the province of *Pountithe*, and there surprised, and sent as prisoner to *William* Duke of *Normandy*, who some say, forced him to take an oath to marry his daughter and keep the Kingdome of *England* to his behoofe: but

Harold *sayleth into* Normandie.

but that which carrieth more ſhew of trueth, is that *Harold* to inſinuate into the Dukes favour, in whoſe power hee now was, told him that his King in the preſence of his Baronry had ſelected him his Heire, and covenanted with him that if hee ſurvived his ſovereigne, hee would keepe the Crowne to his uſe; for which the Duke gave him his daughter in contract, with promiſe of a large dowry; but ſhe was yet in her minority not ripe for marriage; in confirmation of which, Duke *William* gave him alſo his brothers ſonne *Hucon* one of the Hoſtages and kept the other, and after ſent him over, with rich gifts: all which at his returne to *England* he acquainted the King with, who expired the fourth day of *Ianuary*, when hee had reigned twenty three yeeres ſeven months and odde dayes, and lyes buried in the Monaſterie of *Weſtminſter* which he before had much beautified and repaired.

Meaning the Duke.

The death of Edward *the Confeſſor.*

After whom ſucceeded in the Throne *Harold*, the ſecond ſon of Earle *Goodwin*, and laſt King of the *Saxons*, who began his Reigne over *England* in the yeere one thouſand forty ſix: the ambition to gain a Crowne, making him forget his oath and promiſe made to Duke *William*: In the beginning of his Reigne his Land was invaded by his brother *Toſtius*, who was beat out of the Kingdome by *Edwin*, and *Malcharus* Earles of *Mercia* and *Northumberland*: then *Harold Hafagar* King of *Denmarke* and *Norway*, (whom *Guido* the Hiſtoriographer calleth

Harold *crowned King of* England.

England invaded by the Danes.

leth the sonne of *Canutus*) hearing of the death of *Edward*, with an Army of three hundred ships, entred the mouth of the River *Tyne*, pretending to conquer *England*, as his right and lawfull inheritance, which *Harold* hearing sent the two aforesaid Earles of *Mercia* and *Northumberland*, till he himselfe had gathered sufficient forces: who gave the *Danes* a strong battaile, but being overset with multitudes, they were forced to give backe, so that the enemy entred further into the Land, which the King hearing, *Harold* made haste with his powers. And met them at a place called *Stratford* bridge. In which *Interim Tostius* came out of *Scotland*, and tooke part against his brother: Betwixt these two Hoasts was fought a bloudy and cruell battaile. In which many brave Knights breathed their last, and amongst them *Tostius*: the two *Harolds* of *England* and of *Denmarke*, met and fought hand to hand, in which combat *Harold* of *Denmarke*, fell under the hand of *Harold* of *England*, who was likewise Master of the field, in which *Olanus* brother to *Harfagar*, and *Paulus* Duke of the *Orcades* were taken prisoners: of whom *Harold* took sure pledges for their fidelity and homage.

A bloudy battail in which Harold *was victor.*

CHAP. II.

The Landing of Duke William *with the* Normans: *the battaile betwixt him and* Harold, *in which* Harold *is ſlaine, being the laſt King of the* Saxon *bloud.* William *remayneth Conquerour, and is crowned King of* England, *His death, and the ſucceſſe of the Propheſie.*

HArold ambitiouſly puft up with this great victory, divided not the ſpoyle from the enemy taken, equally, but avaritiouſly kept the greateſt part to his owne uſe, and the remainder hee diſtributed not to thoſe who had beſt fought, but to thoſe whom hee moſt favoured, by reaſon whereof hee loſt the hearts of many of his Knights: in this Interim, died the Daughter of Duke *William* (before contracted to *Harald*) by which hee thought himſelfe fully diſcharged of his former duty and promiſe: But Duke *William* was of a contrary minde, and by divers meſſengers mixing faire termes with menaces, put him in remembrance of the breach of both, to which *Harold* gave a ſlight anſwer, that raſh and unadviſed covenants might bee as well violated as kept, that it was not in his power to diſpoſe of the Crowne and Kingdome, without the aſſent of the Peeres and Barons

Some think it was a great cauſe of his loſſe of the battail againſt William.

Harolds *anſwer to Duke* William.

Barons of the Realme, besides oaths and promises made either by feare or force, were of no validity, and therefore left him to take what course hee pleased according to his best direction: for that was his peremptory answer.

Duke William *l ndeth in England.*

At which Duke *William* being much incensed, gathered a selected Army, which hee caused to be shipt with all things necessary for so great an Enterprize, and launching from the port of Saint *Valery*, In short time landed neer *Hastings* in *Sussex*, at a place called *Penusy*, making three pretences for his invasion: The first and chiefe was to challenge his right to the Crowne, as next Heire, and moreover bequeathed unto him by his Nephew *Edward* the Confessor upon his death-bed. The second was to vindicate the bloudy murder of his Cousin *Alfred*, and brother of the late King, committed by E. *Goodwin*, upon *Guildowne*, which was done (as hee pretended) by the especiall instigation of *Harold*: The third was to revenge the banishment of Archbishop *Robert* (before remembred in the accusation of Queene *Emma*) with which also hee chargeth *Harold*, as the sole animatour of his exile; and hitherto *Merlins* Propheſies admit no contradiction, when he saith,

Three pretenses for his Invasion.

Iron men, in wooden Tents shall here arrive,
And hence the Saxons *with the Eglets drive.*

The propheſie explained.

By the *Iron-men*, meaning the *Normans*, in Iron Casks and Corslets; by *wooden Tents*, their Navi-

Navigable Veſſels, who in *Harold* extinguiſht the bloud of the *white Dragon the Saxons*, and expelled the Eglets, who were the *Danes*, the brood of *Swanus* in that Princely bird ſo emblematized: the ſtory followeth, Duke *William* landing one of his feet ſlipt, and the other ſtuck faſt in the ſand, which one of his Knights obſerving, cried aloud, A good *Omen*, now *William*, *England* is thine owne, and thou ſhalt change the title of *Duke* into King, at which he ſmiled, and piercing further into the Land, hee made proclamation, that no man ſhould take any prey, or make any ſpoyle, or doe any violence to the Natives; ſaying, it were no reaſon that hee ſhould offer outrage to that which ſhould be his owne.

A good Omen.

Harrold was at that time in the North, who hearing the *Normans* were landed, gathered his forces by the way as he came, to ſupply his army, which was much weakned by reaſon of the laſt battaile fought againſt the *Danes* and *Norways*, and ſending ſpies into the Dukes hoſt to diſcover their ſtrength, word was brought him that his ſouldiers were all preiſts and lawyers, as having their upper lips chins and cheeks ſhaven, (which was their cuſtom then, and the *Engliſh* uſed to weare their Mouchatos thick and long) to which *Harold* anſwerd: but wee ſhall finde them neither Barmen, nor Bookemen, but valiant Knights expert in all manner of warlike diſcipline. Then *Gurth or Surthe* one of the yongeſt brothers of *Harold* adviſed him in perſon to

Harold *ſends ſpyes into the Dukes Hoaſt.*

ſtand apart, and that himſelfe with the Lords and Barons would incounter the *Normans*, becauſe he was ſworne to the Duke, and they not; and if they were put back, he then might rally their diſperſed troups and maintaine his owne claime and his Countrys quarrel, to which hee would by no meanes aſſent.

Three profers made by the Duke to the King before the battaile.

Then Duke *William* by a clergie man ſent him three proffers of which to take his choyce; the firſt, that according to his oath he ſhould deliver up the Crowne, and all the rights thereto belonging, which done, to receive it againe and hold it of him as in fee during the terme of his life, and after his death to returne it againe to the ſaid *William*, or to ſuch an one of his ſons as he would aſſigne it unto: the ſecond, to depart and leave the Kingdome without more contention: The third, that to ſpare the ſhedding of Chriſtian bloud, they two might ſingly end the quarrell by the ſword: All which offers *Harold* refuſed, returning anſwer by the Prelat, that hee would try his cauſe by the dint of ſwords, and not of one ſword, and that he and his Knights were ready, to defend their Country againſt all Forreigne Invaders whatſoever: The Duke hearing this his anſwer delivered unto him, he gave ſtrict charge, that all his people that night ſhould watch and ſpend the houres in prayer with the Prieſts, when on the contrary the *Engliſh* Hoaſt paſt away the time in dancing and drinking.

Two different diſpoſitions in the hoaſts.

The next morning (being Saturday) the fourteenth

teenth day of *October*, the two Hoaſts met at a place where now ſtandeth *Battaile Abbey* in *Suſſex*, (which was after built, and ſo called by Duke *William*, in memory of this battaile there fought, and his great victory then atchieved) in the beginning of which conflict a *Norman* Banneret called *Thilfer*, ſlue three *Engliſh* Gentlemen one after another, but in attempting the fourth was himſelfe ſlaine. Then began a terrible noyſe of the clattering of Harneſſe, the ruſhing of ſhields, the trampling of Horſes, with loud cryes and acclamations on both ſides, in which the *Normans* oppoſed mightily, and the *Engliſh* defended themſelves manfully, and the better, becauſe they fought cloſe keeping their battaile whole without ſcattering, or ranging abroad; which when Duke *William* obſerved, he gave a ſigne to his Commanders that they ſhould give backe, as if they were almoſt compel d to flie and forſake the field, yet ſubtlely embattailing the foot, and placing the Horſe for Wings on either ſide: the *Engliſh* hoping inſtantly to have routed them, diſſevered their Squadrons as for preſent purſuite: but the *Normans* returning tooke them at that diſadvantage, and ſtrooke them down on every ſide: yet was this battaile ſo ſtoutly fought by the Engliſhmen, that Duke *William* was there that day beaten from his Steed, and three Horſes ſlaine under him: but in the end *Harold* was ſlaine, being ſhot into the eye with an arrow, and fell downe dead in the field: which his army

Battaile Abby in Suſſex.

The battail betwixt King Harold *with Duke* William

King Harold *ſlain in the eye with an arrow.*

ſeeing, they diſperſed themſelves, and every man fled to his beſt ſafety.

Thus died this valiant King *Harold*, having worne the Crowne from the fift of *Ianuary* to the fourteenth of *October*, making up nine moneths, and ſome odde dayes, and was buried in the Monaſtery of *Waltham* which hee himſelfe had founded; in whom ended the bloud of the *Saxons* which had continued from the beginning of King *Hengiſts* reigne, for the ſpace of five hundred fourſcore and one yeere, all which time they had reigned as Kings in this Land, (ſaving thoſe foure and twenty yeeres in which *Edward* the Confeſſor had the Sovereignty) who was of the *Norman* bloud by his Mother *Emma*, daughter to *Richard* the *Hardy*, the third Duke of *Normandy*, and firſt of that name.

The end of the Race of the Saxons.

Then Duke *William* buried his ſlain men, and ſuffered the *Engliſh* to doe the like. Now when the news of *Harolds* death came to the two Earles of *Mercia* and *Northumberland*, who were not then in that battaile (ſome thinke, that by reaſon of the diſtance and difficulty of the way they could not arrive with their forces ſoon enough, but others have conjectured, that they purpoſely abſented themſelves, becauſe in the diviſion of the *Daniſh* ſpoyles, they were neglected, but howſoever, they came to Duke *William*, and ſubmitted themſelves, giving pledges for their truth and fealty: thus *William* Duke of *Normandy*, ſirnamed the Conquerour, baſe

Mercia *and* Northumberland, *not in this battail.*

Duke VVilliam *crowned King of* England.

ſonne

ſonne to *Robert*, the ſixt Duke of that Province, and Nephew unto *Edward* the Confeſſor, began his Dominion over this Realme of *England*, in the yeere of Grace, one thouſand threeſcore and nine, the fifteenth day of *October*, and was crowned upon Chriſtmaſſe day (by *Aldredus* Archbiſhop of *Yorke*) next following: I now proceed to *Merlins* next propheſie.

He that Iron Nation who leads forth for prey
Shall finde full ſpoile, and where hee feeds, will ſtay:
Suppreſſing the red Dragon *for a ſpace.*
Then ſhall ariſe two Dragons *from his race:*
One, aymes at, but attains not his deſire.
By Envies Dart the other ſhall expire.
The Lion *next of* Juſtice *muſt appeare,*
Who 'gainſt the Celticke *Towers will ladders reare.*
And 'cauſe the Lily like the Aſpen ſhake,
Whoſe rore ſhall all the Iſland Serpents quake.
(A cunning Alcumiſt) who hath the skill
Gold, both from flowers, and Nettles to diſtill.

Part of the Propheſie explained.

The firſt part is plaine and eaſie, the appearance whereof is gathered from the former circumſtances: under the *man*, *who leadeth the Iron Nation forth to prey*, is figured the Conquerour, who brought into this Kingdome the ſtrongly armed *Normans*, where *finding fat ſpoile*, that is, a rich and fertile Iland, *where he feeds will ſtay*: that is, where he fareth well, and hath all things

in his owne power, to his will and pleasure; there he will make his abode and plant himself, (*suppressing the red Dragon for a space*, that is, the first *Britains*, after mingled with the *Saxons*, and from *Hengists*-men called *Englishmen*, then with the *Danes*, and now againe oppresst by the *Normans*, yet was the bloud of the first Natives (howsoever mingled) never extinguished, and the Nation howsoever extreamly suffering, yet never altogether eradicated and extirpt: but to passe over the Reigne of the Conquerour (because no further aymed at by my Author) I proceed to the rest:

Then shall two Dragons issue from his race.

Meaning from Duke *William* now living, (by which *two Dragons* are intimated his two eldest Sons: *Robert* sirnamed *Corthose* or *Shorthose*, and *William Ruffus*, so stiled because of his ruffe haire and beard.)

Robert *rebelleth against his Father.*

This *Robert* the eldest, because hee might not be possest of the Duchy of *Normandy*, which his father had before promist him, hee by the aide of the *French* King *Philip*, and *Lewis* his sonne, invaded that Dutchy and tooke divers prizes thence; which put his Father to much grievance and trouble; in so much, that at length the father and the sonne with two great Hosts met in the plaine field, where betwixt them was fought a cruell and bloudy battell, in which King *William*, was wounded and beaten from his

his horſe, and in great danger to be tooke or ſlaine; which his ſonne *Robert* hearing, in true filliall piety hee reſtored his Father, ſet him upon a freſh Horſe, and delivered him from all danger: howſoever in that conflict many of the Kings men fell by the ſword, and his ſonne *William* received many wounds, ſo that they were compeld to forſake the field and yeeld the honour thereof to his Sonne *Robert*, for which rebellion as ſome have related, he laid an heavy curſe upon him, which proved fatall unto him in the end.

Robert gaineth the day of his Father.

Some write that by the leaping off an horſe hee got ſuch a ſtraine (meaning King *William*) that it was the cauſe of his death, and when hee found that hee was paſt hope of life, hee called his three ſonnes unto him exhorting them to fraternall love and unity, and by his will appointed to *Robert* the eldeſt, the Duchie of *Normandy*, to *William* the ſecond, the Kingdom of *England*, and to his third ſonne *Henry*, (becauſe hee was a piece of a Scholer, ſirnamed *Beauclerke*) hee bequeathed his moveables and treaſure: then he informed his two eldeſt ſonnes of the diſpoſition of the people, whom they were to governe, adviſing *William* to be affable, courteous, and liberall to the *Engliſh*: and *Robert* to behave himſelfe roughly and ſternly towards the *Normans*: which having uttered, hee died within few houres after in *Normandy*, and was buried in the City of *Cane*, in the third yeere of his Duchie, but of his Reigne over *Eng-*

K. Williams *admonition to his ſons.*

The death of William *ſirnamed the Conquerour.*

England, one and twenty yeeres and ten moneths, in the moneth of *July*: in which time of his Sovereignty, hee kept the *Englisſh* ſo ſtreight and low, that none of the Nation bore any office of pr(fit or honour, but hee ſomewhat favoured the City of *London*, by granting them their firſt Charter, which is written in the *Saxon* tongue, and ſealed with green Wax, and is comprehended in eight or nine lines at the moſt: with whoſe death I alſo conclude this Chapter.

Londons *firſt Charter granted by King* William.

CHAP. 12.

The prediction of the two Dragons, *made good by the ſubſequent Hiſtory, in* Robert, *and* William *the two ſons of the Conquerour: who the Lion of Juſtice was: and what was meant by his Alchymy, &c.*

William *the ſecond crowned King of* England.

WIlliam the ſecond of that name, ſirnamed *Rufus*, or the *Red*, beganne his Reigne in the moneth of *July*, in the yeere of Grace, one thouſand foureſcore and nine, but *Rainolf* Monke of *Cheſter*, in his *Polychronicon*, affirmes that *Robert* was abſent at the death of his Father, and hearing that hee had preferd his younger brother to the Crowne of *England*, hee was greatly inraged,

raged, and laid his Dukedome to pawne to his brother *Henry*, for certaine ſummes of money, with which hee hired an Army, and landed at *Hampton*: of which his brother having intelligence, ſent unto him with this ſubmiſſion following, Thy brother *William* entreateth thee to be no way incenſed at what I have done. For he calleth himſelfe not abſolute King, but Viceroy and thy Subſtitute, and to reigne under thee, being greater, and therein better, becauſe before him borne, who hath taken upon him this charge, only becauſe of thine abſence; yet ſince he is now in place and authority by thy ſufferance, he humbly prayes thee that he may under thee ſtill ſo continue, paying unto thee annually three thouſand marke, with condition, that the ſurvivour of the two may peaceably enjoy the Kingdome.

A ſtrange ſubmiſſion of a King.

Duke *Robert* who was not unacquainted with the politick proceedings of his brother, ſhaked his head, and began to pawſe, about an anſwer, and being of a loving and gentle diſpoſition, bountifull withall, and ſtill preferring his honour before his profit (as in all his after proceedings hee made manifeſt) condeſcended to his brothers requeſt, and returned into *Normandy*: but *William* was of a more ſubtle and crafty condition, and yet withall ambitious after vainglory, to maintaine which, hee extorted both from the Spiritualty and Temporalty. He builded *Weſtminſter* Hall, and by reaſon that his brother *Robert*, was then in the holy Warres, to re-

The two brothers attond.

He buildeth Weſtminſter Hall.

redeeme *Ieruſalem* from the Pagans, hee ſpent ſome time in *Normandy*, about his brothers affaires: but at his returne, the building of the Hall being finiſhed, he ſeemed much diſcontented with the littleneſſe thereof, ſaying it was more fit for a Dining Chamber then a Kings Hall, purpoſing, if hee had liv'd, to have made a farre greater.

The King murthered to death by Sir Walter Tyrrell.

In the beginning of the thirteenth yeere of his Reigne, the third day of *Auguſt*, being hunting in the New Forreſt, by the glancing of an Arrow ſhot by the hand of one Sir *Walter Tyrrell*, the King was wounded to death in the forty fourth yeere of his age; who eſcaped and ſaved himſelfe, for none purſued him, and few (in regard of his former tyranny) ſorrowfull for his death: ſome thinke that this arrow was purpoſely aymed at him, to fulfill the propheſie of the two brothers.

One aimes at, but attains not his deſire,
By envies dart the other ſhall expire.

The Kings Character.

Now *Robert*, though hee ſtill aymed at the Kingdome, yet never attained unto it, and the other died, according to *Merlins* words, *ſpiculo Invidiæ*, by the dart of Envy: the King thus wounded was laid in a Horſe-litter, and conveyed to *Wincheſter*, where hee died and was buried. In his life time he took upon him great things: the day before hee died, one aſked him where he purpoſed to keep his Chriſtmaſſe: to which

which he anſwered, at *Poyctiers*, for the Earle intendeth a Voyage for *Jeruſalem*, meaning to ſeize upon his Earldome.

Henry of *Huntington* reporteth of him, that though he was generally reported avaritious and gripple-handed, yet he was in his owne condition, bountifull, and liberall, as may appeare by the narration following. The Abbot of a great Monaſtery being dead, too wel-monied Monks of the ſame place made friends to the King offering large ſummes, to be promoted to that dignity: there was alſo a third Monk, who out of his meekneſſe and humility had accompanyed them to the Court, and to give attendance on him whom the King ſhould admit to be Abbot: who called to the Monkes ſeverally, and either of them outbid the other: the King caſting his eye upon the third (who came as their ſervant) thinking, his buſineſſe had been to the ſame purpoſe, demanded of him, if hee would give more then his brethren had proffered: who anſwered him againe, that he would neither offer nor give to the value of one penny, neither would he take any ſuch charge upon him which came unlawfully by ſymony: whoſe words when the King had duly conſidered, he ſaid that he of the three was beſt worthy to take ſo holy a charge upon him, and gave it him freely.

Iuſtice and liberality in the King.

Duke *Robert* being at this time in the holy Wars, the yongeſt brother *Henry*, third ſon to the Conquerour, and firſt of that name, began his Reigne the fift day of *Auguſt*, in the yeere

Henry uſurpeth the crown.

of our Lord eleven hundred and one, and this was he whom *Merlin* cals *Leo Justitiæ*, the Lion of Justice: who baniſht from his Court all flattering and effeminate Sycophants: he was alſo abſtinent, and abhorring gormondizing, and the exceſſe of Feaſts: hee was further well ſtudied in the ſeven Liberall Arts, and uſed to fight more with counſaile then the ſword, and yet upon juſt occaſion, hee would ſhew himſelfe as valiant as he proved fortunate.

Duke Robert *offered to bee made King of* Ieruſalem.

In the ſecond yeere of whoſe Reigne, *Robert* his brother, being there imployed in the Wars of *Palæſtine*, againſt the Miſcreants and Infidels, receiving newes that his brother *William* was dead, and that his brother *Henry* had uſurped the Crown of *England*, notwithſtanding that the Chriſtian Princes offered to make him King of *Jeruſalem*, yet he refuſed that honour, but with great ſpeed returned into *Normandie*, and there raiſed forces, to claime his right unto the Crown of *England*, and landed at *Portſmouth*, but a mediation of peace was made betwixt them, and that hee ſhould have the ſame yeerly revenue of three thouſand Marks, which he had in the days of King *William:* with which he returned fully ſatisfied, at which his Lords and Peeres were much diſcontented, as alſo for other things which in his eaſie nature hee had yielded to, both againſt his honour and profit, for which he was by them leſſe regarded, and in the end quite neglected.

Duke Robert *neglected by his Peeres.*

This *Robert* in his Fathers days was in all his en-

enterprizes victorious, and after did many brave exployts at the ſiege of *Acan* againſt the *Turks*: and (as is before ſaid) was by the great ſuffrage of the Chriſtian Hoaſt choſen King of *Jeruſalem*, but whether hee thought it to be an honour with too much trouble, or for the covetouſneſſe of the Crowne of *England*, hee made refuſall thereof, for which it hath beene thought, that hee ſped the worſe in all his endevours after. For a diſſention fell betwixt him and his Nobles, ſo that they ſent to King *Henry* his brother, that if hee would come over into *Normandy*, they would deliver up the whole Country into his hands, and acknowledge him their ſole Lord and Governour, of which profer it is ſaid, *Henry* accepted: but before any hoſtility was threatned, *Robert* came into *England* to viſit his brother and new ſiſter (for the King was lately married to *Mawd* the daughter of *Malcolme*, King of *Scotland*) at whoſe requeſt he releaſed to his brother the tribute of three thouſand Marks by the yeere, and ſo departed.

Duke Roberts *eaſie and liberall diſpoſition.*

Notwithſtanding which, by the inſtigation of bad and wicked Counſellours, this ſeeming brotherly love was quite abrogated and diſſolved, ſo that the King with a ſtrong Army invaded *Normandy*, and by reaſon that *Roberts* Peeres and Nobles fell from him, hee chaſed him from place to place, and won from him his Cities, *Cane*, *Roan*, and *Faloys*, with all other places defenſible; ſo that *Robert* was forced to de-

ſire aide of *Philip* the *French* King, and after of the Earle of *Flanders*, but they both failed him, ſo that with thoſe few forces which hee could make, hee gave battaile to his brother, in the which hee was ſurprized and taken priſoner, and ſent over into *England*, and put into the Caſtle of *Cardiffe* in *Wales*, where hee remayned his whole life time, and being dead was buried at *Gloceſter*, and thus hee who might have been King of *Ieruſalem*, and twice King of *England* (had he taken the opportunity offered him) died with no greater title, then the bare Duke of *Normandy*.

Duke Robert *taken priſoner by his brother.*

The Duchy of Duke Robert.

Warres then grew betwixt the King of *England*, and the *French* King, in which they ſped diverſly, but in the end *Henry* beat him in his own Country, and had of him a glorious victory, to the great terrour and aſtoniſhment of all the *French* Nation, and thoſe leſſer Princes of his Confederacie, making good that of the Prophet:

The Lion *next of* Juſtice, *ſhall appeare,*
Who 'gainſt the Celticke *Towers ſhall ladders reare,*
And 'cauſe the Lily like the Aſpen ſhake,
Whoſe rore ſhall all the Iſland Serpents quake.

The Propheſie explained.

By the *Lily* is meant the *Flowre de Lyce*, which the *French* King beares in his Scutcheon, which was ſaid *to quake like an Aſpen*, (whoſe leafe of all others is ſooneſt moved with the winde) by reaſon

reaſon of the great affright and terrour hee put the *French* into at the noyſe of his Drummes, the thundring of his Horſes hoofs, and the lowdneſſe of his warlike inſtruments.

About the twentieth yeere of this Kings Reigne, when he had been three yeeres together in *Normandy*, the King took ſhipping at *Harflute* (a part of that Duchie) the foure and twentieth day of *November*, and arrived ſafe in *England*, not many houres after: And ſoon upon that his two ſonnes, *William* who was Duke of *Normandy*, with *Richard* his brother, with *Notha* the Counteſſe of *Parſie*, *Richard* Earle of *Cheſter*, with his wife the Kings Niece, The Archdeacon of *Hereford*, with Knights, Gentlemen, and others, to the number of an hundred and forty perſons: Theſe took ſhipping at the ſame Port to follow the King, but in their paſſage, the ſhip ſunke under them, and they were all drowned to one man, ſaving a Butcher, who reported that this diſaſtrous misfortune fell by the negligence of the Maſter and Saylers, who in the night being at diſſention amongſt themſelves, ran the Veſſell upon a Rocke, and ſplit her; from which danger the young Duke *William* was eſcaped by getting into a boat neer the ſhoare: but when hee heard the lamentable cut-cry of the Counteſſe *Notha*, hee commanded the Rowers to row back, and if it were poſſible to ſave her life, who having recovered her into the boat, they were by a tempeſtuous guſt ſo over-charged, that it was violently overturred,

The Kings two ſonnes with many others drowned.

ned, and they all ſwallowed in the Sea, of which ſtrange accident *Merlin* alſo propheſied in theſe words:

Catuli Leonis in æquoreos piſces tranſformabuntur.

The Lions whelps their nature ſhall forſake,
And upon them the ſhape of fiſhes take.

The King to maintaine his former Warres which proved ſo terrible to the *French* and others, was forced to exact money from all manner of people, not ſparing the Clergie nor the Laitie, and therefore *Merlin* cals him

A cunning Alcumiſt, who hath the skill
Gold, both from flowers, and Nettles to diſtill.

By the *Flowers*, meaning the Spiritualty, by the *Nettles* the Temporalty: in the twenty ſeventh yeere of this Kings Reign died *Henry* the fourth Emperour of that name, who had before married *Mawd*, the daughter to *Henry* King of *England*, after whoſe death ſhe came to her Father in *Normandy*, who becauſe hee had no heires male left of his body, hee cauſed all the Biſhops and Barons to ſweare in his preſence, that they ſhould keep the Crowne of *England* to the uſe of this *Mawde* the Empreſſe, if hee died without iſſue male, and ſhe ſurviving.

The Lords ſworne to the ſucceſſion of Mawd *the Empreſſe.*

In the eight and twentieth yeere of his Sovereignty, *Jeffery Plantaginet* Earle of *Anjoy*, was eſpouſed unto *Mawde* the Empreſſe, from whom deſcended *Henry* the ſecond, ſirnamed *Short-Mantle*,

Her ſecond mariage.

Mantle, who after *Stephen* was King of *England*; King *William* being in *Normandy*, (as ſome write) fell either with his Horſe or from his Horſe, which after was the cauſe of his death. But *Rainolph* ſaith, that he tooke a ſurfet by eating of a Lamprey, and died of that, when he had reigned thirty five yeers and odde moneths, whoſe body when it was embowelled, before it could be embalmed, caſt ſuch a ſtench that none could abide the place, where hee was diſſected, and though it was wrapped in a Buls skin, yet it little abated the ſmell, in ſo much that divers were infected therewith, and the Chyrurgion who clenſed the head, died of the unwholſome ſcent which proceeded from the braine, which ſome conjectured to bee a juſt judgement laid upon him for his mercileſſe cruelty ſhewed upon his brother *Robert*, whoſe eyes (as ſome have reported) hee cauſed to bee torne out of his head during his impriſonment: his body was brought into *England*, and was afterwards buried in the Abbey of *Reading* which he before had founded; after whoſe death, Fame ſpoke of him, as of all other Princes, both in the better and worſe part. Divers ſaid, that he ſurpaſſed many of his Predeceſſour Kings in three things, in wit, in eloquence, and good ſucceſſe in battaile; and others ſpared not to ſay that he was peſtilently infected with three notorious vices: Covetouſneſſe, Cruelty, and Lechery.

The death of Henry the firſt of that name.

How the King was ſpoken of after his death.

Chap. 13.

A brieſe relation of the tronbleſome Reigne of King Stephen, *and his oppoſition againſt* Mawde *the Empreſſe, of* Henry Short-Mantle, *and his proceedings, with a continuance of our* Engliſh *Hiſtory. In every circumſtance making good* Merlins *Propheſie.*

Stephen *Earle of* Bulloigne *crowned King.*

Stephen Earle of *Bolloigne*, and ſonne to the Earle of *Bloys*, and *Mawd* ſiſter to the wife of *Henry* late deceaſed, began his Reigne over the Realme of *England*, in the yeere of grace, one thouſand one hundred thirty ſix, who was valiant and hardy, but as ſome affirme, contrary to the oathe made to King *Henry* concerning *Mawd* the Empreſſe, he uſurped the Crown, and was inaugurated by the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, at *Weſtminſter*, upon the day of Saint *Stephen*, in Chriſtmaſſe weeke, which Archbiſhop (who had taken the ſame Oath) died ſhortly after, with diverſe other Lords guilty of the ſame perjury: which as ſome write, was animated and incouraged by one *Hugh Bigot*, who was Steward to King *Henry*, and preſently after his death came over into *England*; and before the ſaid Archbiſhop came, other Lords tooke

Perjury puniſhed by the hand of God.

tooke an Oath, and ſware that he was preſent a little before the Kings death, when hee heard him to diſinherit his Daughter *Mawd*, for ſome diſtaſte that hee had taken againſt her, and had adopted, as his lawfull Heire *Stephen* his Nephew: to which the Archbiſhop with the reſt gave too haſty battaile: neither did this *Hugh* for his wilfull perjury eſcape unpuniſhed, who ſoone after with great trouble of conſcience moſt miſerably expired: but before I proceed further in the ſtory, I will deliver unto you *Merlins* Propheſie of thoſe times: which followeth.

Hugh Bigot *dyeth miſerably*

The propheſie.

Drop muſt a Sagittary *from the Skies,*
But againſt him an Eglet will ariſe,
(That in the Morian *Mountains built her neſt)*
And againſt that Celeſtiall ſigne conteſt.
Shee fayling, will a Lions whelpe appeare,
Whoſe rore ſhall make the Centaure *quake with feare.*
But when the two ſhap't Monſter ſhall be tam'd,
By gentle means, the whelpe will be reclaim'd:
And when the Iron brood in the Land ſhal fail,
The blood of the white Dragon *muſt prevail.*

Part of it explained.

By the *Sagittary*, which is one of the twelve Celeſtiall Signes, and is the ſame which hee calleth the *two ſhap't Centaure*, is figured King *Stephen*, who gave not the Lions, as his former predeceſſours had done, but emblazed the beforenamed *Sagittary* in his Scutcheon: and there-

fore he is by the Prophet so stiled: by the *Eglet* is also intended *Maud* the *Empresse*; and by the *Moriam Mountaines* a place in *Italy* so called, figuratively including all *Italy* by a part thereof: now let vs see how this with the rest is made good by the event.

King Stephen extorteth both from the Clergie and the Laity.

In the beginning of his reigne, King *Stephen* used great rigour against the Clergy, as fining some Bishops, and imprisoning others. Besides he seised on all the strong holds and Castles within the Realm, as still fearing the comming in of *Maud* the *Empresse*: in which time *Robert* Earle of *Gloceſter*, the base sonne of King *Henry* took displeasure against the King, for seising the strong holds of *Gloceſter*, *Hereford*, *Webly*, *Briſtol*, *Dudly* and others, part of which belonged to his Inheritance; and therefore he sent letters to his sister *Maud*, promising to assist her in the iust claime of her Inheritance.

Mawd *the Empresse landeth in* England.

In the moneth of *Iuly* and sixth yeare of King *Stephen*, *Maud* the *Empresse* landed at *Portsmouth* and made towards *Briſtol*, at what time *Stephen* layd siege to the Castle of *Walling-ford*, who hearing of her arivall gathered all the forces hee could make, and drew towards the Enemie; in which time *Robert* Earle of *Gloceſter* & *Ranulph* Earle of *Cheſter* were ioyned to the *Empresse*; and when both their hoasts were in the field, ready to give the alarme, *Ranulph* Earle of *Cheſter* thus spoke to his souldiers and sayd.

The Barons Oration to their souldiers.

I require you friends and Countrimen, that I who am the cause to bring you here, to hazard your

lives, may be the first man to put mine owne in danger: whom Earle *Robert* interrupted, and said, It is not unworthy to thee, who demandest the first stroake and hazard of this battaile, who both for thy nobleneſſe of bloud, and thy knowne magnanimity and courage farre surpasseſt other men; but the Kings falſe oath hath levied men to this unjuſt warre, in which wee muſt either ſtrive bravely to winne the maſtery, or elſe be baſely overcome; and we now are run into that hazard, that none of us is ſafe, which ſhall not acquit himſelfe by his reſolution and Knightly boldneſſe: therefore ſhew your valour, and be aſſured of victorie.

Earle Baldwins *incouragement to to the* Kings *Army.*

Then Earle *Baldwin* ſtanding in the front of the Kings battaile, began to incourage his ſouldiers in this manner: To men that ſhall fight three things are by them to be obſerved: The firſt, the Juſtice of the cauſe, leſt they indanger their ſoules, which is cleere on our part, who fight for our King & Country: the ſecond is the number of men, and the accommodation of Armes, for few are not to oppoſe a multitude, nor naked men againſt armed; and we parallel, if not exceed them both in amunition and number: the third is, boldneſſe and courage, not for defence only, but offence: which me thinks I eſpy in your faces: and therefore of all theſe three our Army is ſufficiently furniſhed. Now what bee our enemies? A weake and diſtreſſed woman, aſſiſted by two weak ſupporters; *Robert* Earle of *Gloceſter*, a man daring without deed, and accuſtomed

customed to word, with words, not weapons: and *Ranulph* Earle of *Chester*, haughty, but withall fool-hardy, constant in nothing, and conscious only of Conspiracies, who proposeth great enterprizes, but never brings any to good effect: and for many Legions, conducted by such Leaders; the more they be in company, the sooner they be overcome.

The battell betwixt the King and the Empresse.

At which word, he was cut off by the violent comming on of the enemy: and now beganne a cruell battaile, resolutely and bravely fought on both sides, the violence whereof lasted long uncertain who should be victors; but in the end, the Kings Hoast was utterly routed: but hee of a more heroicke spirit (as scorning to flie) mayntained the fight with some few of his Knights, and was taken prisoner; and being brought before the Empresse, shee commanded him to bee conveyed under safe custody to the Castle of *Bristoll*, where he remayned in durance, from *Candlemasse* to *holy Rood day* next ensuing: after which victory, she was so exalted in thought, and puft up with pride, that shee thought now shee had the whole Kingdome in her owne possession, and came triumphantly to *Winchester*; after to *Wilton*, to *Oxford*, to *Reading*, to Saint *Albans*, and lastly, to *London*: in all which places she was royally received: and during her abode there, the Queene made assiduate labour, for the delivery of the King her husband, promising he should surrender the whole Land into her possession, and either betake himselfe to some Religious

The King taken prisoner.

The Queenes petition to the Empresse.

ligious Order, or to become a baniſht Pilgrime to the end of his life: but all was in vaine, ſhee could receive no comfort from the Empreſſe upon any conditions.

The Citizens of *London* likewiſe petitioned unto her, that they might uſe the Laws of *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, as they were confirmed by the *Conquerour*, and that ſhe would be pleaſed to diſanull the ſtrict innovations impoſed on the land by her Father *Henry*: to which ſhe nor her Counſell would in the leaſt wiſe condiſcend: but the tyde ſoone turned, for *Kent* tooke part with the King, and the *Londoners* being diſcontented at the deniall of their ſuite, and being aſſured that the *Kentiſh* men would in all their Enterprizes aſſiſt them, they purpoſed to have ſurprized her perſon; of which ſhe having ſecret intelligence, left a great part of her Jewels and houſhold-ſtuffe, and fled to *Oxford*: in which flight many of her adherents were diſheartned, and a great part of her forces diſperſed and ſcattered.

The Londoners and Kentiſhmen take part with the King.

Then the Queene before ſo much deſpiſed, by the ayde of her friends, the *Kentiſh* men, *Londoners* and others gathered a ſtrong hoſt, under the conduct of one *William De-Pre*, to purſue the *Empreſſe*; who underſtanding the Queens forces daily to increaſe, and hers aſſiduatly to diminiſh, ſhee left *Oxford*, and ſecretly eſcaped to *Gloceſter*, whither the Queenes hoſt followed her: in defence of which City *Robert* brother of the *Empreſſe* making an excurſion from the towne

The Queene purſueth the Empreſſe.

Earle Robert of Gloceſter taken priſoner.

towne was surprised and taken: Briefly, a Communication was held between the two opposite parties, in which after much debating the businesse on both sides, it was concluded that there should be one exchange made of the two prisoners, so that the King vpon *Holy rood day* in harvest was released and delivered up to the Queen and her Army, and *Robert* of *Gloceſter* was surrendred to his sister *Maud* the *Empresse*.

King Stephen *released in exchinge of Earle* Robert.

The Land in this time was much distressed by these two Armies who were in continuall agitation, sometimes the King having the better, and sometimes the *Empresse*, to relate which at large would aske too long circumstance: but in the end the King had the better, in the seventeenth Yeare of whose Raigne, dyed *Ranulph* Earle of *Chester*, and *Jeffry Plantaginet* husband to *Maud* the *Empresse*, after whose death their sonne *Henry* sirnamed *short mantle* (because hee used to goe in a short Cloak) was created Duke of *Anjou*, and *Normandy*; whose sonne few yeares after maried *Elenor* daughter to the Earl of *Poyctow*, who had before bin maried to *Lewis* the *French* King: but for the too neerneſſe of blood divorced, after hee had received two daughters from her, *Mary*, and *Alice*: so that this *Henry* was the Earle of *Anjou* by his father, Duke of *Normandy* by his mother, and Earle of *Poyctow* by his wife.

The death of Ieffery Plantaginet.

The marriage of Henry *Duke of* Normandy.

This King *Stephen* had a sonne named *Enstace*, who by ayde of the *French* King, warred upon the forenamed *Henry*, in which the Duke so

Eustace *the sonne of King* Stephen.

ſo Knightly demeaned himſelfe, that it proved to their great diſadvantage. Some ſay that King *Stephen* would have crowned his ſonne in his life time, but the Clergie would not agree thereto, having a command from the Biſhop of *Rome*, to the contrary, and therefore his purpoſe tooke no effect. Then the King ſaid ſiege to the Caſtles of *Newbery*, *Wallingford*, *Warbycke*, and *Warwell*, which had beene kept by the friends of the Empreſſe to her uſe, in hope of the comming over of her ſonne Duke of *Normandy*, &c. who the ſame yeere, with a great Hoaſt entered *England*, and firſt wanne the Caſtle of *Malmsbury*, and after came to *London*, and poſſeſſed himſelfe both of the City and the Tower, which more by his policie and promiſe, then his potencie and power performed.

Duke Henry *landeth in* England.

Then King *Stephen* with his Hoaſt, drew neer to Duke *Henry*, but by the mediation of *Theobald*, Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, and others of the Clergie and Nobility (who met at a place called the *water of Vrme*) they were kept from preſent hoſtility, ſome endevouring peace, others labouring warre, as their humours and affections guided them. After which the King took his way towards *Ipſwich* in *Suffolke*, & the Duke towards *Shrewsbury*: in which interim died, and was drowned *Euſtace* the ſonne of King *Stephen*, and was buried at *Feverſham* in *Kent*, in the Abbey which his Father before had founded.

A peace mediated betwixt the King and the Duke.

The death of Prince Euſtace

After which, *Theobald* with others, ceaſed

not to bring these two Princes to an attonement, which was so earnestly laboured; that a peace was concluded, upon the conditions following, namely, that the King (having now no heire) should continue in the sole Sovereignty during his life: and immediately after the conclusion and establishing of that Edict, *Henrie* should be proclaimed Heire apparant, in all the chiefe Cities and Boroughs of *England*; and that the King should take him for his sonne by adoption, as immediate Heire to the Crowne and Kingdome, wherein that part of the prophesie is fulfilled, which saith,

She failing, will a Lions whelpe appeare,
Whose rore should make the Centaure *quake with feare:*
But when the two shap't Monster shall be tam'd
By gentle means the whelpe shall be reclaim'd.

By the *Centaure*, and *two shap't Monster*, or the *Sagittary*, which are all one, meaning the King, and by the *Lions whelpe*, *Henry* Duke of *Normandy*, &c. and after King of *England*. In the end of this yeere died King *Stephen*, when hee had reigned eighteen yeeres and odde moneths, and was buried by his sonne *Eustace* at *Feversham*.

The death of King Stephen.

This King spent his whole Reigne in great vexation and trouble, which (as some conjecture) hapned because hee usurped the Crowne contrary to his Oath made to *Henry* the first: that

that hee ſhould maintaine the inheritance of his daughter *Mawd* the Empreſſe: this *Stephen* was the ſonne of *Euſtace* Earle of *Bulloigne*, and of *Mary* ſiſter to *Mawd* who was married to his predeceſſor *Henry*: theſe two are the daughters of *Margaret* the wife of *Malcolm* King of *Scots*, which *Margaret* was the ſiſter to *Edgar Etheling*, and daughter of *Edward* the outlaw, who was ſonne to *Edmund Ironſide*.

Upon what grounds Stephen pretended his title to the Crown.

Mawd the Empreſſe daughter to *Henry Beauclarke*, had by her ſecond huſband *Jeffery Plantaginet*, this *Henry* the ſecond of that name, by whom the bloud of the *Saxons* againe returned to the Crowne, partly by King *Stephen*, but more fully by him, ſo that conſequently the bloud of the *Normans* continued but threeſcore and ten yeeres, accounting from the firſt yeere of *William the Conquerour*, to the laſt of the reigne of *Henry* firſt, compleating thoſe words the propheſie.

The Norman *bloud in ſixty yeeres extinguiſhed.*

And when the iron brood in the land ſhall fail,
The bloud of the red Dragon *muſt prevail.*

Chap. 14.

Divers remarkable passages during the Reigne of Henry *the second, his numerous issue, and how they were affected towards him: his vices and vertues, his good and bad fortune: all which were by this our Prophet predicted.*

The Coronation of King Henry *the second.*

HEnry the second, sonne of *Ieffery Plantaginet*, and *Mawd* the Empresse, began his Reigne over *England*, in the moneth of *October*, and the yeere of our Lord God, one thousand one hundred fifty five, of whom before it was thus propheſied.

The propheſie of his Reigne.

The Eglet of the Flawde league ſhall behold,
The Fathers of her prime bird ſhine in gold,
And in her third neſt ſhall rejoyce: but hee
Who from the height of the great Rocke may ſee
The Countries round (both neer and far away)
Shall ſearch amongſt them, where hee beſt can pray:
Some of whoſe numerous ayrie ſhall retaine
The nature of the Deſert Pelican,
The all commanding keys ſhall ſtrive to wreſt,
And force the locke, that opens to his neſt,
But break their own wards: of all flowers that grow

The

The Roſe ſhall moſt delight his ſmell, and ſo
That leaſt it any ſtrangers eyes ſhould daze,
Hee'l plant it cloſe in a Dedalian *Maze.*
Fortune at firſt will on his glories ſmile,
But fail him in the end; alack the while.

Part of the propheſie explained.

The firſt words of this Propheſie ſeeme to reflect upon the Empreſſe his Mother: *by rejoycing her third neſt*, may be intended, that having three ſonnes, *Henry*, *Ieffery*, and *William*, the two later failing, (as dying in their youth) ſhee might rejoyce in him *whoſe Father* (being King) ſhe ſaw to ſhine in gold: or elſe, being firſt eſpouſed to *Henry* the Emperour, and next to *Ieffery Plantaginet*, ſhee might in her death rejoyce in her third eſpouſall with her Saviour: but againe, where hee ſtiles her the *Eglet of the Flawde*, or *Barbon Leagne*; It may bee conferd upon the Queen, who being firſt married to the King of *France*, and through neerneſſe of bloud divorced from him, and ſent to her Father, and after married to this King, being then Duke of *Normandy*, ſhe may be ſaid firſt to have built her neſt in *France*, ſecondly, in *Normandy*, and thirdly, and laſt in *England*.

The Kings Character.

This Prince (as the Chronicle deſcribes him to us) was ſomewhat high-coloured, but of a good aſpect, and pleaſant countenance, fat, full cheſted, and low of ſtature: and becauſe hee grew ſomewhat corpulent, hee uſed a ſparing and abſtinent diet, and much exerciſed Hunting. He was well ſpoken, and indifferently learned,

Noble in Knighthood, and wise in counsaile, bountifull to strangers, but to his familiars and servants gripple-handed, and where hee loved once or hated, constant, and hardly to be removed: he had by his wife *Eleanor* six sonnes and three daughters: The names of five of them were *William*, *Henry*, *Richard*, *Godfery*, and *Iohn*; of which two came to succeed him in the Throne, *Richard* and *John*, of the sixt there is small or no mention: the eldest of his daughters hight *Maud*, and was married to the Duke of *Saxony*; the second *Eleanor*, to the King of *Spaine*; the third named *Iane*, to *William* King of *Sicily*.

His Issue.

This King was prosperous in the beginning of his Raigne, but unfortunate in the end, as the sequell will make apparant: he was of such magnanimity and courage, that hee was often heard to say, that to a valiant heart, not a whole World sufficeth, and according to his words hee greatly augmented his Heritage, and much added to his Dominions. For hee wonne *Ireland* by strength, and in the seventh yeere of his Reigne, (for divers affronts offered him by *William* King of *Scotland*) he made such cruell warre upon him, that in the end hee tooke him prisoner, and compeld him to surrender into his hands, the City of *Carlile*, the Castle of *Bamburch*, the new Castle upon *Tyne*, with divers other holds, and a great part of *Northumberland*, which *William* before had wonne from the Borderers. He likewise added the whole Kingdome

The Kings Dominions.

He taketh the Scots King prisoner.

dome to his owne, and from the South Ocean to the North Iſlands of the *Orcades*, hee cloſed all thoſe Lands, as under one principall; which done, and receiving fealty and homage of the ſaid King, having a certaine ſumme of money promiſt to bee payd unto him within nine moneths following, hee ſuffered him to goe at liberty.

No King before him of ſuch large Empire.

He ſpred his Empire ſo far, that none of all his predeceſſours had ſo many Countries and Provinces under their Dominion and rule: for beſides the Realme of *England*, he had at once in his poſſeſſion, *Normandy*, *Gaſcoine*, and *Guien*, *Anjou*, and *Chinon*, with *Alverne* and others, and by his wife as her rightfull Inheritance, the *Pyrene* Mountaines, which part *France* and *Spaine*: which proves

——— *that hee*
Who from the height of the great rock may ſee
The Countries round (both neere and far away)
Shall ſearch amongſt them, where hee beſt can prey.

Tho Becket created Archbiſhop of Canterbury.

In the ſeventh year of his Raigne, died *Theobald* Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury*, and *Thomas Becket*, who was then Chancellour of *England*, was tranſlated unto that See: and in the ninth yeare the King cal'd a Parliament, at *Northampton*. where hee intended to aboliſh ſome privileges which the Clergie had uſurped, amongſt which one was, that no Prieſt, or Clergie man, though he had committed felony, murther or treaſon againſt

againſt the Kings owne perſon, yet had hee not power to put him to death, which he purpoſed to have reformed; in which *Thomas Becket* then Arch-Biſhop violently oppoſed him, and gave him very peremptory and unſeemly language, vilifying the Kings prerogatiue and authority, to his face; but when he ſaw he had not power to prevaile againſt the King, hee in great heate and haſt, ſped him to *Alexander* then Biſhop of *Rome*, grievouſly complayning on the King, and ſuggeſting, what iniuries and innovations he would put upon the holy Church continuing there partly in *Italy*, and partly in *France*, for the ſpace of ſix yeares together.

The Archbiſhop oppoſeth the King.

After which time *Lewis* King of *France*, reconciled the King and the Archbiſhop (the King being then in *Normandy*) and *Becket* returned to his See at *Canterbury*, whither hee ſummond all ſuch perſons as in his abſence had ſpoyled, and rifled his moveables and goods, adviſing them firſt by faire meanes to reſtore them; but when he ſaw that courſe prevailed not, he tooke a more ſevere and compulſory way, excommunicating and denouncing all ſuch accurſed in his *Anathema* (not ſparing the Kings royall perſon,) at which the parties here in *England*, whom it particularly concerned, ſailed over unto the King in *Normandy*; and made a grievous complaint againſt the Archbiſhop, at which his being extraordinarily incenſed, ſayd in the open audience of thoſe then about him, had I any friend that tendered mine honour and ſafe-

The King and the Archbiſhop atton'd.

The King curſed by the Archbiſhop.

ty.

ty, I had ere this time beene revenged of that traiterous Archbiſhop.

At that time were preſent, and heard theſe words, Sir *William Breton*, Sir *Hugh Morvill*, Sir *Richard Fitzvile*, and Sir *William Tracy*, which foure Knights, having communed and conſidered amongſt themſelves, with an unanimous reſolution took ſhipping, and landed at *Dover*, and road thence to *Canterbury*, where the fift day in Chriſtmaſſe weeke, they ſlue the ſaid Biſhop in the Church as hee was going to the Altar, who had before in the open pulpit denounced the King, and divers others of his ſubjects accurſed: which anſwers to the former,

The Archbiſhop ſlain going to the Altar.

The All-commanding keys ſhall ſtrive to wreſt,
And force the lock that opens to his neſt:
But breake their own wards, &c.

By the *All-commanding Keys*, is meant the power of the Keyes of *Rome*, who ſtriving *to force the lock opening to his neſt*, that is, his principality and prerogative, *broke their owne wards*, which proved true in this *Th. Becket*, Primate and Metropolitan, who was ſlaine in the yeer 1170, over whoſe Tombe this Diſtich was inſcribed:

Anno milleno, centeno ſeptuageno,
Anglorum *primus corruit enſe thronus.*

which with ſmall alteration may bee thus paraphraſed,

The inscription over his Tombe

Anno, *one thousand one hundred seventy dy'd,*
Thomas *the Primate, in his height of pride.*

Henry in the fourteenth yeere of his Reigne, caused his eldest sonne *Henry* to bee crowned King of *England*, at *Westminster*, giving him full power over the Realme, whilst hee himselfe was negotiated in *Normandy*, and his many other provinces, which after proved to his great disadvantage and trouble. In which interim he had cast his eye upon a most beautifull Lady called *Rosamond*, on whom hee was so greatly enamoured, that it grew even to dotage, insomuch that hee neglected the Queenes company, insomuch that she incensed all his sonnes, who tooke up armes against their Father in the quarrell of their mother, by which the peace of the Land was turned to hostility and uprore; yet the King so farre prevailed, that hee surprised the Queen, and kept her in close prison, and withall was so indulgent over his new Mistresse, that he built for her a rare and wondrous fabricke, so curiously devised, and intricate with so many turning *Meanders*, and winding indents, that none upon any occasion might have accesse unto her, unlesse directed by the King, or such as in that businesse hee most trusted: and this edifice he erected at *Woodstocke*, not farre from *Oxford*, and made a Labyrinth which was wrought like a knot in a Garden called a Maze, in which any one might lose himselfe, unlesse guided by a line or threed, which as it guided him in, so it di-

Henry *crowneth his sonne* Henry *King.*

The faire Lady Rosamond.

The King imprisons the Queene.

directed him the way out: But in proceſſe it ſo hapned, that the ſonnes having the better of their Father, ſet at liberty their Mother, who when the King was abſent, came ſecretly to *Woodſtocke* with her traine, at ſuch a time when the Knight her Guardian being out of the way, not dreaming of any ſuch accident, had left the Clue careleſly and viſible in the entrance of the Labyrinth.

The Sonnes releaſe their mother.

Which the Queene eſpying, ſlipt not that advantage, but wound her ſelfe by that ſilken threed, even to the very place where ſhee found her ſitting, and preſenting her with a bowle of poyſon, ſhee compeld her to drinke it off in her preſence, after which draught ſhee within few minutes expired, and the Queene departed thence in her revenge fully ſatisfied, for which cruell act the King could never be drawne to reconcile himſelfe unto her after, and this makes good that of *Merlin*.

Lady Roſamond *poiſond by the Queene.*

——— *of all the flowers that grow,*
The Roſe ſhall moſt delight his ſcent: and ſo
That leſt it any ſtrangers eyes ſhould daze,
He plants it cloſe in a Dedalian *Maze.*

Roſamund being dead, was buried in the Monaſtery of *Goodſtow*, neere unto *Oxford*, upon whoſe Tombe was inſcribed,

Hic jacet in tumba, Roſamundi non Roſamunda:
Non redolet, ſed olet, quæ redolere ſolet.

Her inſcription on her tombe.

Which by an ancient Writer was thus paraphraſed into Engliſh.

The Roſe of the World, but not the clean flower
Is graven heere, to whom beauty was lent
In this grave full darke, now is her bower
That in her life was ſweet and redolent:
But now that ſhe is from this life blent,
Though ſhe were ſweet, now fouly doth ſhe ſtink,
A mirrour good for all that on her think.

Such was their Engliſh poetry in thoſe dayes. Long after the death of *Roſamond* was ſhewed in that Abbey, a rare Coffer or Caſket of hers about two foot in length, in which was a ſtrange artificiall motion, where were to be ſeen Giants fighting, Beaſts in motion, Fowls flying, and Fiſhes ſwimming: This *Henry* was troubled by the Queenes animating of his ſonnes againſt him: betwixt whom were divers conflicts, which would appeare tedious to bee rehearſed. It is written of this King, that in his Chamber at *Windſore*, hee had painted an Eagle with foure young ones, whereof three of them, pulled and pecked the body of the old Eagle, and the fourth picked at his eyes: and being aſked what that picture ſhould ſignifie, hee made anſwer, This old Eagle figureth my ſelfe, and the foure birds, my foure ſonnes, who ceaſe not to purſue my life: but moſt of all my ſonne *John*, whom I moſt have loved, and therefore

Henries *character of his foure ſonnes.*

Some

Some of his numerous ayrie will retain
The nature of the Deſert Pelican.

The nature of the Pelican in the Deſert being to pierce her breſt with her bill, and feed her young ones with her owne bloud. In the twenty eight yeere of this *Henry*, died his eldeſt ſonne *Henry*, whom hee had before crowned, much repenting on his death-bed, for his unnaturall rebellion againſt his Father.

The death of King Henry ſonne of King Henry.

Rainold Monke of *Cheſter* relates, that ſoon after the death of the Lady *Roſamond*, *Lewis* the *French* King, and the eighth of that name, ſent to King *Henry* one of his daughters to bee kept for his ſecond ſonne *Richard*, whom the King vitiated, and laboured to *Haguntia* a Cardinall then in the Land, for a Divorce betwixt him and his wife, intending to have maried that *French* Lady; but he failed of his purpoſe (for he meant by that match to have diſinherited his unnaturall ſonnes.) It is further recorded, that when *William* King of *Scots* was taken by the King of *England*, Hee did him Homage at the City of *Yorke*, and in witneſſe of ſubjection, he offered his Hat and Saddle upon Saint *Peters* Altar, which were kept there many yeeres after.

Henry laboureth a divorce betwixt him and his wife.

This King had many ſtrange admonitions for the amendment of his life: one was that in his returne from *Ireland*, as he was taking his horſe, there appeared unto him a man of a pale and meager aſpect, bare-foot, and in a white Mantle,

Sundry admonitions to the King to amend his life.

who spake unto him and said, I am sent to thee from the Lord of the Sabbaoth, who commandeth thee to take order that no Markets bee kept, nor any servile worke bee done on the Lords day (dressing of meate excepted only) which if thou seest performed, whatsoever thou purposest, thou shalt bring to a good and happy end: whose speech the King seemed to distaste, and said to him, that held his bridle, aske of this Churle, if he have dreamed that which hee speaketh? to which the apparition answered againe: whether I have dreamed or not; take thou heed to my words, and amend thy life, or what thou now mockest, shall returne to thy great misery, which having said, he vanisht suddenly: the strangenesse whereof though he seriously apprehended, yet of the former there was nothing amended.

His second admonition.

He had a second admonition by an *Irishman*, who told him all things which the King had done in secret, which hee had thought none had knowne but himselfe, and withall advised him to repentance and amendment of life, but hee regarded it as the former: about which time being the foure and twentieth yeere of his Reigne, were taken up the bones of King *Arthur*, and his Queene *Guenever*, in the Vale of *Avalon*, the haire of her head seeming white, and of a fresh colour, but as soone as touched, they turned to powder: their bones were after translated to the Church in *Glastenbury*, and there the second time buried: they were found

The bones of King Arthur *and his Queen found.*

by

by a Bard or Singer of Rythmes under the root of an Oke fifteen foot within the ground: his third admonition I leave to the next Chapter.

CHAP. 15.

The inauguration of Richard *the first, sirnamed* Cordelion, *a prediction of his Reigne. His warres in the* Holy Land, *his imprisonment by the Duke of* Austria: *his brother* Johns *usurpation, his second Coronation, with his unfortunate death, &c.*

A Knight called Sir *William Chesterly, alias Lindsey*, told him boldly, that there were seven severall things by him specially and suddenly to be reformed. First, to see better to the defence of the Church, and provide for the maintenance thereof: Secondly, to see his Lawes better executed, and Justice more exercised: Thirdly, not to rob the rich, nor extort from them their goods by violence: Fourthly, to make restitution of all those lands and goods as hee had so wrested: Fiftly, to make no demurre or delay in just sentence, but suffer the right to have lawfull processe: Sixtly, to see his subjects satisfied for such things as had beene taken up to his use, and to pay his servants and souldiers which fell to

His third admonition.

to robbery, for that default. Seventhly, that he ſhould ſpeedily cauſe the *Jewes* to avoid the Land. But this adviſe prevailed with him as the former.

In his thirtieth yeere, *Heraclius* Patriarch of *Ieruſalem*, came into *England*, to ſolicite his aid againſt the *Saracens* (who had invaded the Chriſtian Territories:) and to defend the holy City, which by *Saladine* King of *Surry*, was wonne ſoon after. For by the relation of *Peter Deſroy*, a *French* Chronicler, *Ieruſalem* was wonne by *Godfrey* of *Bulloigne*, in the yeere of Grace, one thouſand foureſcore and nineteene, and continued under nine Chriſtian Kings, of which *Guy* of *Reſingham* was the laſt: this *Heraclius* further profered the King the keyes of the holy City, and of our Lords grave, preſenting him Letters from Pope *Lucius*, the third of that name, which charged him to take upon him the journey, according to an Oath by him formerly made: to which the King anſwered, he could not leave his Land in trouble as a prey to the *French*, and his owne aſpiring ſonne; but he would give largely out of his owne coffers, to ſuch as would take that voyage in hand.

Nine Chriſtian Kings raigne ſucceſſively over Hieruſalem.

The King refuſeth to be Generall for the Holy Land.

To which the Patriarch replyed, we ſeek a man, not mony, every Chriſtian Prince ſendeth us money, but none ſendeth us a Prince, and therefore we demand a Prince that needeth money, and not money that needeth a Prince; who finding no other comfort from the King, departed his preſence much diſcontented: but the

King

King thinking to sooth him up with faire words followed him to the Sea-side; but the more the King laboured to humour him, the more harsh, and hardned he grew against the King, and said unto him, hitherto thou hast, reigned gloriously, but hereafter thou shalt be abandoned of him whom thou forsakest: think what he hath given to thee, and what thou in gratitude hast returned to him againe: who at the first wast false to the *French* King, and after slewest *Thomas Becket*, and now lastly forsakest the protection of Christs faith: at which words the King was much moved, and sayd to the *Patiarch*, though all the people of the Land were one body and spoke with one mouth, they durst not say to me as thou hast done: true, saith the *Patriarch*, for they love thine, and not thee; the safety of thy goods temporall, but not the safety of thy soule: then he offered his head to the King, saying; now doe me that right which thou did'st to thine Arch-Bishop: for I had rather be slayne by thee, then by the *Sarazens*.

The Patriarchs answer to the King.

The King kept his patience, and replied; should I depart out of the Land, mine owne sons would seise upon my Crowne and Scepter in mine absence: no wonder (answered the *Patriarch*) for of the devil they come, and to the devill they shall: and so departed from the King in great anger: after which all things went averse & against him. *Giraldus Cambrisius* writes of him, that he cherisht strife amongst his owne children, thinking thereby to live himselfe in the

A proud and peremptory Patriarch.

more rest and further saith, that hee was peereleſſe for three things, wit, war, wantonneſſe. He Raigned twenty ſixe yeares victoriouſly and glorioufly, foure yeares diſtractedly and doubtfully, and his five laſt yeares infortunately and miſerably: in the end by meere vexation and anger he fell into a fever, and dyed thereof in the Caſtle of *Chinon* in *Normandy* in the moneth of *July*, when he had raigned thirty foure yeares eight moneths and odd dayes, and was buried at *Founte-blew*: fulfilling that of the former prediction.

The death of King Henry *the ſecond.*

Fortune at firſt, ſhall on his glories ſmile,
But faile him in the end, &c.

Richard the *firſt ſuccedeth his father.*

Richard the firſt of that name, and ſecond ſonn of *Henry* ſirnamed *Short Mantle*, ſucceeded his father, and began his Raigne over *England* in the moneth of *July* 1189, who upon the day of his Coronation, commanded that all the priſoners about *London*, which lay in for the Kings debt or otherwiſe (murder and treaſon excepted) ſhould be ſet at large, of whoſe future Reign it was thus predicted.

The Lions heart weel gainſt the ſarazen riſe,
And purchaſe from him many a glorious priſe.
The Roſe and Lilly ſhall at firſt vnite,
But parting of the prey prove oppoſite.
Iebus and Salem will be much oppreſt
As by the lame and blind againe poſſeſt.
The Lion-hearted amongſt Wolves ſhall range,
And by his art, Iron into ſilver change.

But

But whilſt abroad, theſe great acts ſhall be done,
All things at home ſhall to diſorder run,
Coopt up and cag'd, then ſhall the Lion *bee,*
But after ſufferance ranſom'd and ſet free.
Then doubly crowned: two mighty ones whoſe prides
Tranſcend; twixt whom a ſeas arme only glides,
(Ambitious both ſhall many conflicts try;
Laſt, by a poyſonous ſhaft the Lion *dye.*

This King ſoone after his Coronation, conferd upon his brother three great dignities and honours, as the Earldome of *Nottingham*, *Cornwale*, *Cheſter*, and *Lancaſter*, and maried him to the daughter of the Earle of *Gloſter* who was his only childe, by which he was heire to that Earldome alſo, all which he after but cruelly requited: then the king fought to be abſolved for his rebellion againſt his father, which he eaſily purchaſt upon promiſe to purſue the wars in *Paleſtina* which his father refuſed, and to expedite that voyage, he gave over the two Caſtles of *Barwick* and *Rocheborough* to the *Scotch* king for ten thouſand pound towards the charges of his journey: moreover he ſould to the old Biſhop of *Durham* that Province for a great ſum of mony, and (as he had covenanted) made him Earle thereof: which done the king laught and ſaid to the ſtanders by, obſerve what art and cunning is in me, who can make a young Earle of an old Biſhop: by ſuch meanes hee emptyed many of the Clergies bagges and fil'd his own

Richard *undertaketh the holy voyage.*

coffers, granting large fees and annuities out of the Crowne; for which some (as far as they durst) blaming him, he replyed unto them, that it was good for a man to ayde himselfe with his owne: adding; that if the citty *London* were his, at that time of his neede he would sel that also, if he could meete with a merchant able to buy it.

The Bishop of Ely made Vice-Gerent in the Kings absence.

In the second yeare of his Raigne hee made *William Longshamp* Bishop of *Ely*, Chancellour of *England*, leaving the whole Land to his guiding, then sayled he into *Normandy*, and thence into *France* to *Philip* the second, and after covenants drawne betwixt them, for the continuance of so great and hazardous a iourney, in the spring of the yeare they set forward, *Richard* by sea, and *Philip* by land, appointing their randevouz in *Sicily*: where meeting (as it was agreed) a difference grew betwixt the 2. Kings, in so much that King *Phillip* left *Richard* in *Sicily*, and departed towards *Acon* or *Acris*: in which time the King of *Cyprus* tooke two of king *Richards* ships, and peremptorily denyed their delivery.

Difference betwixt the English and French Kings.

For which he invaded the kingdome of *Cyprus*, making sharpe war therein, chacing the King from Citty to Citty; in so much that he was compeld to yield unto him upon condition, that he should not bee layed in bonds of iron, whereof the king accepted, and kept his promise, causing him to be fettered in chaines of silver, verifying that of the propheſie,

K. Richard conquered the Kingdome of Cyprus.

The

The Lion-*hearted amongſt Wolves ſhall range,*
And by his art iron into ſilver change.

When he had remained there for the ſpace of 2. months taking his pleaſure of the countrey, & victualled his navy, he ſteered his courſe towards *Acon*, and by the way he encountered a great ſhip of the *Soldans* furniſht with ſtore of amunition and treaſure, which he ſurpriſed & ſeized, after which he ſafely arived at the foreſaid citty, and met with the king of *France*, of whom he was ioyfully received: for not long before, 2000 of his army were cut off by the *Sarazens*: then King *Richard* cauſed the Citty to be violently aſſaulted on every ſide, ſo that they were forced to yield it upon theſe covenants following; to depart the place, leaving behind them horſe, armour, victuals, and all things belonging to war, and further, reſtore, and ſet at liberty all ſuch Chriſtian priſoners, as were then under their yoke and bondage, with divers other conditions, but theſe the chiefeſt: and this was done in the moneth of *Auguſt*, and in the year of our Lord one thouſand one hundred foureſcore and twelve.

The City of Acon taken by the Chriſtians.

But in dividing the ſpoyle of the citty, which was great and rich, there fell out alſo a diviſion betwixt the 2 Kings, wch kindled a fire which was never quench'd, the motives inducing there to were (as *Polychronicon* reports) becauſe *Richard* denied to *Philip* half of the ſpoile & booty taken in *Cyprus*, alledging that their covenants ſtretched no further then to thoſe purchaſed in the

Cauſes of the ſecond breach between the two Kings.

the holy Land; another was, that king *Richard* being in *Sicily* maried the daughter of the king of *Navar*, where before he had promiſed to eſpouſe the ſiſter of the King; for which and other cauſes the *French* King with a ſmall number of ſhips, departed from *Acan*, thence to *Puis*, after to *Rome*, and ſo into his owne country, leaving the Duke of *Burgundy* Generall of the *French* in his ſtead, which fulfils that part of the propheſie.

The French King departs to his country.

The Roſe and Lilly ſhall at firſt vnite,
But parting of the prey prove oppoſite.

During King *Richards* ſtay there, he ſould the kingdome of *Cyprus* to the knight *Templers*, for 30000 marks, and (as the *French* Chronicle reports) forc'd it from them againe by ſtrength and gave it to *Guy* of *Leſingham* the laſt K. of *Ieruſalem*, & further for an affront offered him, he took the Duke of *Auſtria's* Banner, and ſtampt it and trampled it under his foote, for which the Duke ſought all advantages to be revenged on him, (as ſhall be related hereafter) he then, becauſe the *Turks* had not delivered to him the holy croſſe according to their agreement at the taking of *Acon*, ſlew all that were in the City with their pledges and hoſtages, the whole number as ſome write, amounting to 5000 perſons: then he provided for the preſent ſeige of *Jeruſalem*, which as he was given to underſtand, was at that time much diſtreſſed: for it followeth.

Richard ſels the Kingdome of Cyprus.

He vilifieth the Duke of Auſtria.

He intends to beſiege Ieruſalem.

Iebus

Iebus, and Salem ſhall be much oppreſt,
As by the lame and blinde againe poſſeſt.

Of *Iebus* and *Salem*, the holy City had the denomination of *Jeruſalem*: and by the lame and blinde is intended the idols of the infidels, who have feete and walke not, eyes and ſee not, &c. King *Richard* marching within five mile of the place, purpoſed to inviron it round, that no ſupply or ſuccour might bee brought unto it, daily expecting when the Duke of *Burgundy* with the *French* would follow him, who perfidiouſly againſt his oath and promiſe, made an oration to his ſouldiers as followeth: It is knowne unto you all noble friends and countrymen, that though our Soveraigne Lord the King be abſent, yet all the flower and chivalry of *Fraunce* are here preſent, and whatſoever is done to the dignity of the Chriſtians, and diſgrace of the infidels, is moſt likely by us to be atchieved, the *Engliſh* being cowards and meacockes, and we courragious and manly; yet whatſoever noble act ſhall be attempted by us, the honour thereof ſhall bee attributed to them, their King being reſident here, & ours ſo far remote from hence: my counſaile is therefore, that we march back to *Acon*, and leave them to the hazard that ayme at the honour: which ſpeech ſo prevailed with his people, that *Richard* was prevented in his former purpoſe, and the Duke of *Burgundy* ſoone after dyed.

The Duke of Burgundies *Oration to his Souldiers.*

The death of the Duke of Burgundy.

Yet this Lyon-hearted leader was no way daunted

danted with the *French* delirements: but raysing his siege, hee pursu'd the *Soldans*, who then begirt the towne and Castle of *Iaphath*, and won it, taking there many Christians prisoners, and then man'd it with his owne men, sending them whom he surprised to bee elsewhere imprisoned, whom K. *Richard* comming too late to the siege, most fortunately met and rescued: which done hee set upon the towne and Castle and tooke them, setting there a strong garrison of Christians. After which victory he wonne *Dacon* and *Garles*, two great Cities, and repaired the Castle of *Askelon* with sundry others, which the Pagans had much defaced and ruined: after which, he commanded all his prisoners to be slayne, which others sold to their profit (and advantage) by which hee grew to be the greater terror to the *Turks*: but victuals daily diminishing & sicknes increasing in his army, and the *French* fayling him, having set things there in the best order that necessity would permit him, he took shiping at *Acon* (called also *Tholomida*, & from thence he sailed into *Cyprus*: then he sent his wife and her sister with the greatest part of his people, into *Sicilia*, and because he could not well brooke the Sea, hee thought to make a short cut into *Histria*, but by force of weather was driven a shore betwixt *Venice* and *Aquilea*, where landing with that small traine which followed him, He was espyed, by some of the Duke of *Austria's* Knights (whose standard he had trod under foote, who after

King Richards victory over the Souldiars.

King Richard leaveth the Holy Land.

after laid waite for him, and tooke him; the manner whereof I leave to the enſuing Chapter.

CHAP. 16.

The reſt of the Propheſie made good in the ſubſequence; the troubleſome raigne of King Iohn, *his loſſe of* Normandy: *his Land interdicted by the* Pope, *to whom he is compeld to reſigne his Crowne, and after hold it as from him: his death.*

The tyranny of the Biſhop of Ely, *made protector of the Land.*

IN the abſence of the King, whilſt he was buſie in his warres abroad, the Biſhop of *Ely* Chauncellour, and *Pro rex* at home; oppoſed the Lords, abuſed the Commons, and oppreſſed the Clergy: hee rid not abroad, attended with leſſe then a thouſand horſes; to maintaine which pompe, and Luciferian pride, hee extorted from the poore, from the Peeres, but eſpecially from the Prelates; holding in his hands at once, beſides *Ely*, the two Archbiſhopricks of *Canterbury*, and *Yorke*: impriſoning whom he pleaſed, and releaſing where he liked: nor was the King more earneſt in vexing the Pagans and Infidels in the Land of *Paleſtine*,

leſtine, then he was eager and extreame againſt his Chriſtian brethren, whoſe patronage and protection were committed to his charge, ſo that it verifies;

Whilſt that abroad ſuch great acts ſhal be done,
All things at home will to diſorder run.

King Richard *ambuſht in his returne.*

In which interim, the King being on all ſides ambuſht by the *Auſtrians*, for betwixt *Venice* and *Aquilea*, in a Province belonging to the Duke, he was beſet by one *Mainart de Goreſen*, but with loſſe of ſome of his traine, he by his manhood eſcaped. After at a towne named *Friſach*, one *Frederick de Saint Soon* made a ſecond attempt upon him, and tooke ſix of his Knights, but he by his noble valour made his way through the ambuſh of the enemy, without ſurprizall, and ſtrooke up towards *Germany*: but ſpies being ſet to know what courſe he took, he was at length betrayed into the hands of the Duke of *Lemple* couſin to the Emperor, who ſent him to the Duke of *Auſtria*: he preſently rifled him of all the treaſure and iewels hee had about him, and committed him for a moneth to ſtrait and cloſe priſon.

King Richard *taken.*

Hence he had the appellation of Cur de Lyon.

During which time (as ſome write) the Duke put him to cope ſingly with a great and mighty Lion, weaponleſſe and unarmed, who having conquered the beaſt, ript up his heart and flang it in the Dukes face, and after that with a blow under the eare he ſlew the Dukes ſonne; and further

further, that his daughter being enamoured both of his perſon and great valour, he left her vitiated and deflowred: but howſoever in this all witneſſes agree, that when the moneth was expired, he ſent him to the Emperour who was *Henry* the firſt of that name, and ſonne to *Frederick* the firſt, who put him into a darke and obſcure dungeon, covenanting with the Duke, that he ſhould have the third part of his ranſome: there he remained for the ſpace of a yeere and three moneths, at length upon a palm-ſunday, he cauſed him to be brought before his Princes and Lords, to anſwer what could be obiected againſt him, where hee appeared with ſuch a manly and maieſtick aſpect, and withal anſwered ſo directly and diſcreetly to whatſoever was laid to his charge, that they generally comiſerated his iniuſt durance: then his ranſome was ſet at an hundred thouſand pound ſterling, and hoſtages given for the payment by ſucha time: which done, he was ſet at liberty: which verefies,

King Richard *ranſomed at an hundred thouſand pound, and ſet at liberty.*

Coopt up, and cag'd then ſhall the Lion *be,*
But after ſufferance ranſomd and ſet free.

The King in the eight yeere of his Reigne, about the latter end of March landed at *Sandwich*, and came ſtraight to *London*, where he was ioyfully received, and then calling a Counſaile of his Lords, he firſt took order to pay his ranſome: and becauſe his brother

The Kings arrivall into England.

Iohn in his absence had usurped the Diadem & was at that time in *France*, he deprived him of all Honour and title, and tooke from him, all those Earledomes and revenewes that hee before had conferd upon him, and causèd him selfe at *Wincheſter* to be the second time crowned, and then began the ancient grudge to revive betweene the two Kings of *England* and *France*, which was the more aggravated, because the *French* King supported *Iohn*, against the King his Brother: But Prince *Iohn* seeing how much his fame was magnified in the mouths of all men, and that all the parts both of *Christendome*, and *Paganisme*, resounded with his praise, he made means to his mother Queene *Eleanor*, by whose mediation a peace was made betwixt her two sonnes, whilest the wars in *Normandy* and *France*, went stil forwards.

John *reconciled to the K. his brother.*

Many wery the battailes fought betwixt the two Kings, and much effusion of bloud on both sides, where sometimes the one, sometimes the other had the better, but for the most part *Richard* the best, during which combustion before the last 20000 pound for his ransome was payd, his two hostages the Bishops of *Bath* in *England*, and *Roan* in *Normandy*, came unto him and told him that they were set at liberty by the Emperour, and further shewed, that his great enemy the Duke of *Austria*, was accused of *Innocent* the third then Pope, for the iniuries before offered him, and

and that upon Saint *Stephens* day hee prickt his foot with a thorne, which gangrend, and ſhould have beene cut off, and being told hee muſt die, he ſent to his Biſhops to be abſolved, which they had denied to doe, till hee had ſhowne himſelfe repentant, for the foreſaid wrongs, and releaſed his hoſtages, which being accordingly done, the Duke died, and they were delivered.

The death of the Duke of Auſtria.

In the proceſſe of the wars before ſpoken of, King *Richard*, in the tenth yeere of his Reigne, after Chriſtmaſſe, beſieged a Caſtle in *France* neere *Lymoges*, called *Gaylyard*, the cauſe was, that a rich treaſure being found within the Seigniory of the King of *England*, by one *Widomer* Vicount of *Lemruke*, hee had denyed to render it up, and fled thither for his refuge, and defended it manfully till the fift day of *April*, upon which day the King walking unadviſedly, to take view of the Fort, and where it might be beſt entred, one named *Bertrand Genedow* (whom ſome Writers call *Pater Baſale*,) marked the King and wounded him in the head, (but ſome ſay in the arme) with a poyſoned arrow, after which hurt received, hee cauſed a violent and deſperate aſſault to be made, in which hee wonne the Caſtle, then hee made inquiry, who hee was that had wounded him? who being found and brought before him, the King demanded of him, why he ſhould rather ayme at his perſon, than any of thoſe who were then about him? who boldly made anſwer, becauſe

The King too unadviſed.

thou ſleweſt my Father and my brethren, for which I vowed thy death whatſoever became of me: the King after ſome pawſing leiſure, for that anſwer gave him his pardon and liberty, but the reſt of the ſouldiers he put to the ſword, and cauſed the Caſtle to bee razed to the earth, and dyed the third day after, whoſe body was buried at *Fount E-a-Bleu*, at the feet of his Father, which no way erres from the propheſie.

The death of King Richard the firſt.

——— For potent Kings, whoſe prides
Tranſcend: 'twixt whom, a ſea-arm onely glides,
(Ambitious truth) ſhall many conflicts, try
Laſt, by a poyſonous ſhaft the King ſhall die.

Iohn the youngeſt ſonne to *Henry* the ſecond, and brother to the late deceaſed *Richard*, was proclaimed King, the tenth day of *April*, in the yeere of Grace, one thouſand one hundred foureſcore and nineteene, and was crowned at *Weſtminſter*, upon holy Thurſday next enſuing: of whom it was thus predicted:

Iohn *made King of England.*

The ſubtle Fox into the Throne ſhall creep,
Thinking the Lion dead who did but ſleepe,
But frighted with his walking rore, finds cauſe
To flie the terrour of his teeth and paws,
After this Leopard, ſtain'd with many a ſpot
Shall loſe all Rollo *by his* Gilla *got,*
Then ſhall thoſe keyes whoſe power would awe the fates
For a long time, lock up his Temple gates,

Vn-

Vnburthen him of all the charge he beares,
And wrest from him the Lawrell that he wears.
Woes me, that from one Leopard should be torne
What many Lions in their pride have worne.
Hither the French *flower would it self transpose*
Where must spring after, many a glorious rose.
Hee that did (all he might) the Kirk despise,
Against his life shall a base Kirk-man rise.

The former part of this prediction is apparant in the premisses, where *Iohn* fought like a Fox subtlely and craftily to insinuate into the peoples hearts, and rob him of his Kingdom, thinking his brother all that time as dead, when hee was utterly despairing of his liberty, but finding him waking, as being enfranchised and set at large, he then was frighted by the least frown of his brows, being glad to mediate his peace by his Mother: the rest shall follow in order: hee was of a disposition, course, and retrograde, self-will'd, and proud, in all or most of his undertakings very infortunate. In the first yeere of his reigne, he divorced himselfe from his first wife daughter to the Earle of *Gloceſter*, pretending too neere propinquitie in bloud, and soone after married *Isabel* daughter to the Earle *Angolesme*, in *France*, by whom hee had issue two sonnes *Henry* and *Richard*, and three daughters, *Isabel*, *Eleanor*, and *Iane:* He was before his coronation girt with the sword of the Dukedome of *Britany*, and suffered it to be taken from him by his yong Nephew *Arthur*, son to *Ieffery Plantaginet*, to

John *cald here the Fox, and after the Leopard.*

King Johns *character.*

King Iohns *second mariage and issue.*

John *looſeth* Normandy.

to his great derogation and diſhonour, he after left all *Normandy*, which the *French* King wonne from him, even to one Towne and Village, approving that of the Prophet.

Rollo *and* Gilla.

After this Leopard, ſtain'd with many a ſpot,
Shall loſe all Rollo, *by his* Gilla *got.*

The Prophet, for his ſtained and contaminated life and government, would not vouchſafe him the name of a Lion, but a Leopard alluding, as well to his ſpotted fame as his ſkin, by whoſe cowardly and unkingly proceedings *Philip* the *French* King, ſeized all *Normandy*, and tooke it into his abſolute poſſeſſion, annexing it to his Crowne, which no *French* Monarch ever had, ſince the time of *Charles* the Simple, who gave that Duchie to *Rollo* as a dowry, with *Guilla* his daughter, which had ſucceſſively continued under the Sovereignty of the Dukes of *Normandie*, and the Kings of *England*, three hundred yeers and upwards.

The ground of a great quarrel betwixt the King and the Archbiſhop.

In the firſt yeere of his Reigne, *Stephen Langton* being choſen Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, by the Monks, the election was oppoſed by the King, for which hee complained him to the Pope, who ſent unto him loving and kinde Letters, to admit of the ſaid *Stephen*, to which his Lords adviſed him; but the more he was importuned, the more implacable hee grew, returning the Popes meſſengers backe with peremptory deniall. The next yeere came a ſtrict commandement

dement from *Rome*, that unleſſe the King would peaceably ſuffer the Archbiſhop to enjoy his See, that the whole Land ſhould be interdicted, charging theſe four Biſhops, *William* of *London*, *Euſtace* of *Elie*, *Walter* of *Wincheſter*, and *Giles* of *Hereford*, to denounce the King and his Land accurſed, unleſſe his command were punctually obey'd: but though theſe Prelates, with the reſt of his Peeres were urgent with him, to eſchew the rigorous Cenſure of the Church, all was to no purpoſe, for which, upon the ſix and twentieth day of *March*, they began in *London*, and firſt ſhut up the doores of all Temples, Churches and Chappels, with all the other places where Divine Service was uſed, and as in *London*, ſo they did through the whole Land, for which the King was ſo inraged, that he ſeized all their temporalties into his hands, putting them into ſuch feare, that they were forced to flie to the baniſht Archbiſhop, ſome write, that this interdiction was of ſuch power and validity, that during the time therof, which was ſix yeers, three moneths and odde dayes, no Service was ſaid, no Sacraments adminiſtred, no Childe Chriſtned, none Married, and not any ſuffered to come to Confeſſe.

King Iohns obſtinacy.

The whole land by the Pope accurſed.

An uncharitable Bull.

In this interim, the King from anger grew to rage, proclayming that all perſons Spirituall or Temporall, that held any Lands or other livelihood here, ſhall by the next *Michaelmaſſe* returne into the Land, or failing therein, forfeit their whole eſtates, beſides that diligent ſearch

The Kings Proclamation.

He extorteth from the Clergie,

ſhould be made, what Letters ſhould be brought from *Rome*, which ſhould bee delivered to the King: then hee extorted from all the Monaſteries, not ſparing any Religious Houſe that had dependance on the Clergie: For which a new Commiſſion was ſent from *Rome*, by vertue whereof the Curſe of interdiction was againe denounced, to which by the authority of the Pope was added, that this his Bull acquitted and abſolved all the Lords of *England*, as well ſpirituall as Temporall, from all duty and allegiance before ſworne to the King, and that they might lawfully riſe in armes againſt him, to depoſe and deprive him of all Regall honour and dignity; but all theſe tooke no more impreſſion in him, then if they had beene clamoured in the eares of a deafe man, or proclaymed to a Statue of Marble.

The Lords and others acquit of their allegiance by the Pope.

But by the way (which I cannot let paſſe) this King *Iohn*, in the tenth yeere of his Reigne, and of grace, one thouſand two hundred and ten, granted to the City of *London* by his Letters Patents, that in ſtead of two Bayliffs, by which their Magiſtracy was held, they ſhould yeerly chooſe themſelves a *Major*, and two *Sheriffs*; which *Major* was *Henry Fitz-allwin*, and *Peter Duke*, and *Thomas Neale*, *Sheriffs*. The ſame yeere *London* bridge which before was of timber, was begun to be builded of ſtone, and Saint *Mary Overies* Church to be erected in *Southwark*.

The firſt Major and Sheriffs of London *made by* K. Iohn.

London bridge Saint Mary Overies.

CHAP.

CHAP. 17.

A continuance of ſome paſſages in King Johns *Reign.* Henry *the Third ſucceedeth his Father, a prediction of his Reigne: his brother* Richard *made King of the* Romans. Henries *long Reign: the mad Parlament. The Barons Wars, &c.*

I Proceed where I left: in the ſame yeere the Pope ſent over his Legate *Pandolphus*, with another *a Latere*, to accompany him, to ſolicit the ſame buſineſſe, who were ſent back with a like frivolous anſwer: yet hee ſent againe the yeere following, the ſame *Pandolphus* threatning wonders if hee did not receive *Stephen Langton* into his Archbiſhoprick, and make reſtitution of all ſuch moneys and other moveables of which he had robbed the Monaſteries, &c. Then at laſt, the King conſidering, into what dangers hee had intricated himſelfe hy his peremptory denials, how he had loſt *Normandy* abroad, and then in what deſperate caſe his Kingdom ſtood at home: that his Lords were acquitted of their allegiance, and in what danger his ſouls and his peoples were, hee and his whole Nation ſtanding accurſed, he at length condiſcended, to ſubmit himſelfe to whatſoever the Court of *Rome*

More thunderings from the Pope.

King Johns *ſubmiſſion.*

ſhould determine. The Articles propoſed by the Pope, and by him to be performed were theſe following.

The Articles that hee ſhould yield to.

Peaceably to ſuffer *Stephen Langton* to enter into the Land, and to enjoy the primacy and profits of his Archbiſhoprick, that theſe whom hee had baniſht ſhould be repeald, and their goods whom hee had rifled, ſhould be to them reſtored: and that he ſhould yield up his abſolute right and title to the Crowne of *England*, and he & his heirs, thence-forward, to hold it of the Pope and his ſucceſſors: to which having granted, and he and his Lords being ſworne to obſerve the ſame, Hee kneeling tooke the Legate to him, the Crowne from his head, and delivered it to the Popes uſe, ſaying theſe words, I here reſigne up the Crowne of the Realmes of *England* and *Ireland*, into the hands of pope *Innocent* the third, and put my ſelfe wholly into his power and mercy; then *Pandolph* as Deputy for the Pope tooke the Crowne, and kept it five dayes in his poſſeſſion, and then the King received it from him againe: Firſt, having ſealed and delivered up an Inſtrument or writing, the effect was, that he could challenge no power but by permiſſion of the Pope; and further to pay unto the Apoſtolicke See yeerly a thouſand Marks of ſilver, ſeven hundred for the Crowne of *England*, and three hundred for the Kingdome of *Ireland*: for the payment of which tribute but the *Peter-pence* were after gathered, and this confirmes the premiſſes expreſt in the propheſie.

Iohn delivers up his Crowne to the Popes uſe.

Tribute yeerly paid by King John *to* Rome

Then

Then ſhall thoſe keyes whoſe power would awe
the fates,
For a long time lock up his Temple gates,
Vnburthen him of all the charge he beares,
And wreſt from him the Lawrell that he wears.
Woes me, that from one Leopard ſhould be torne
What many Lions in their pride have worne.

It is made ſo plaine, that it needs no further Interpretor: In thoſe days, lived one called *Peter* of *Pomfret*, a Bard, (and ſuch then were held as Southſayers and prophets) who predicted divers of the Kings diſaſters, which fell out accordingly: amongſt which one was, that hee ſhould reigne but fourteene yeeres: but when the King had entred the fifteenth, hee called him into queſtion for a falſe propher, to which hee anſwered, that whatſoever hee had foretold was juſtifiable and true. For in the fourteenth yeer hee gave up his Crowne unto the pope, and hee paying unto him an annuall tribute, the pope raigned, and not hee: notwithſtanding which apology he cauſed him as a Traytour to be hanged and quartered.

Peter *of* Pomfret.

After which he bore himſelfe ſo averſly, towards his Barons, that the greateſt part of them fell from his Allegiance, and called in *Lewis* (ſon to the *French* king) into the Land, covenanting to make him king, who was received with his whole Army, and poſſeſſed of *London*, the Tower, and many other ſtrong holds in the

Lewis *ſonne to the* French *King called into* England *by the Barons.*

kingdome; betwixt whom and the king were ſundry conflicts and skirmiſhes, in which they diverſly ſped, during which diſſention in the ſeventeenth yeere of his Reigne he expired (as the Authour of *Polychron.* ſaith) at *Newarke*, of a bloudy flix. But by the relation of our *Engliſh* Chronicle, to which we give more credit, as alſo by the authority of Maſter *Fox* in his *Martyrologie*, he was poyſoned by a Monke (having been a great Rifler of their Monaſteries) and dyed at *Swinſted* Abbey in *Lincolnſhire* (this Monke being of the ſame Houſe) and his body was after buried in the Cathedrall Church at *Wincheſter*, which fatall accident hapned unto him the day after Saint *Luke*, being the eighteenth of *October*, after hee had reigned ſixteen yeeres, ſix moneths and odde days, leaving behind him two ſonnes, *Henry* and *Richard*. In his death verifying,

The death of King Iohn.

He that did (all he might) the Kirke deſpiſe,
Againſt his life, ſhall a baſe Kirkman riſe.

Not forgetting the former, which was predicted of *Lewis* comming into the Land,

Hither the French *flower would it ſelf tranſpoſe*
Where muſt ſpring after many a glorious Roſe.

Henry the third of that name, and eldeſt ſon to King *Iohn*, at the age of nine yeeres beganne his Reigne over the Realme of *England*, the twentieth

Henry *the third crowned King.*

twentieth of *October*, in the yeere of Grace one thouſand two hundred and ſixteene, *Philip* the ſecond being then king of *France*: this king reigned the longeſt, and did the leaſt (of remarkable memory) of any of his predeceſſours: Of whom it was thus predicted,

The Propheſie.

Dreame ſhall the Leopards iſſue in the throne,
(Crudled in reſt) careſull to keep his owne:
Nor forcing ought from others: changing then
His Leopards ſpots, a Lion turn agen,
Abroad the ſecond whelpe for prey will rore
Beyond the Alps, *& to* Joves *bird reſtore: (rage*
Her decayde plumes: the King *of beaſts whoſe*
His youth conceal'd, ſhall rowſe him in his age,
Againſt the Boare, the Talbot, and the Beare,
The Mountain Cat, & Goat: with whom cohere
Of fowls, the Falcon, Hearn, the Peacock, Swan,
With Fiſhes too, preſt from the Ocean,
With whoſe mixt blouds the Foreſt ſhalbe dyde,
Till love unite, what diſcord did divide.

The Engliſh Lords revolt from Lewis *to* Henry.

Preſently upon the young Kings Coronation, the greateſt part of the *Engliſh* peeres, revolted from the *French* party, and acknowledged him their ſole King and Soveraigne, ſo that within a ſhort ſeaſon, they quit both him and all the Aliens, and Strangers out of the Land: in the eight yeare of his Raigne was held a Parlament in which was granted to the King and his ſucceſſor Kings, the Wardſhip and Mariage of all the Heires: which act was called by wiſe men of that age, *Initium Malorum.*

The firſt granting of Wards.

In

The death of the Emperour Frederick.

In the thirtieth yeare of his Raigne dyed *Frederick* the Emperour who had before maried *Jsabell* the Kings sister, who for his contempt of the church of *Rome* was accursed, of whom was made this Epitaph,

Fre: fremit in Mundo, De: deprimit alta profundo.
Ri: res rimatur, cus: cuspide cuncta minatur.

Which though it cannot sound so well in our *English* tongue, yet is thus paraphrased.

Free: frets the world: De: Height, which depth confounds.
Ri: searcheth all things, Cus with the weapen wounds.

After whose death the Electors could not agree in the choise of a successor: some nominated the Duke of *Thoring*, others the Earle of *Holland*, and some againe stood for *Richard* Earle of *Cornwale* the Kings brother, but in the end *Rodulphus* Duke of *Habspurg*, was inaugurated by Pope *Gregory* the ninth: so that great variance and strife continued for the space of 27 yeares, to the great Impoverishment of *Italy*, and the lands of the empire, in the fortieth yeare of the King landed in *England* upon Innocents day in Christmas weeke, divers Princes of the Empyre, and did their homage to *Richard* Earle of *Cornwale*,

Richard *Earle of* Cornwall *crowned Emperour.*

as

as King of the *Romans* and Emperour, who upon *Aſcention* day after was crowned in *Aquiſgrane*, verifying:

Abroad the ſecond whelp, for prey will rore
Beyond the, Alps *and to* *Joves *bird reſtore*
Her decai'd plumes.

*Meaning the Eagle.

In the 41 yeare, about Saint *Barabas* day in the moneth of *Iune*, the king called his high Court of Parliament at *Oxford*, which was called the mad parliament, becauſe in it divers Acts were concluded againſt the Kings pleaſure, for the reformation of the ſtate: for which, after great diſſention grew betwixt the King and his Nobles, called the Barons Wars, which proved the periſhing of many of the *Peeres*, and almoſt the ruine of the whole Realme: for in that Seſſion were choſen twelve *Peeres*, whom they called the *Douz Peeres*, who had full Commiſſion to correct and reforme whatſoever was done amiſſe in the Kings *Court*, the Courts of Juſtice, and Exchequer throughout the Land, to whoſe power the King and Prince *Edward* his ſonne ſigned and aſſented unto, though ſomewhat againſt their wills: of all which paſſages, ſuch as would be fully ſatisfied, I referre them to our Engliſh Chronicles, or to *Michael Draytons* Poem of the Barons Warres, wherein they are amply diſcourſed: and my narrow limits will not give mee leave to relate them at large: yet I borrow permiſſion to

The mad Parliament.

Twelve of the Nobilitie choſen, and called the Douz Peeres.

insist a little further on one particular.

The Barons Letter to the King.

All things being in combustion betwixt the King and his Peeres, and their Armies assembled on both sides, the Barons framed a Letter to the King to this purpose. To the most excellent Lord King *Henry*, by the grace of God King of *England*, Lord of *Ireland*, Duke of *Guian*, *&c.* The Barons, and other your faithfull servants, their fidelity and oath to God and you coveting to keep, sending due saluting, with all reverence and honour under due obeysance, &c. Liketh it your Highnesse to understand, that many being about you have before time shewed unto your Lordship of us many evill and untrue reports, and have found suggestions not onely of us, but also of your selfe, to bring your Realme to subversion: Know your excellency, that we intend nothing but health, and security to your person, to the uttermost of our powers. And not onely to our enemies, but also yours, and all this your Realme, wee intend utter grievance and correction, beseeching your grace hereafter to give to them little credence; for you shall find us your true and faithfull subjects to the uttermost of our powers. And wee *Simon Mountfort*, Earle of *Leceister*, and High Steward of *England*, and *Gilbert Clare*, Earle of *Gloceſter*, at the request of others, and for our selves, have put to our Seals the 10. of *May*.

The Kings answer to the Barons Letter.

To which Letter the King framed this Answer. *Henry* by the grace of God, King of *England*, Lord of *Ireland*, and Duke of *Guian*: to

Simon

Simon de Mountfort, and *Gilbert de Clare*, and their Complices: Whereas by Warre and generall diſturbance in this our Realme, by you begunne and continued, with alſo burnings and other enormities, it evidently appeares that your fidelity to us due, you have not kept, nor the ſecurity of our perſon litle regarded: for ſo much as our Lords, and other our truſty friends, which daily abide with us, yee vexe and grieve, and them purſue to the utmoſt of your powers, and yet daily intend; as you by the report of your Letters have us aſcertained: we, the griefe of them admit, and take for our owne, eſpecially when they for their fidelity, which they to us daily impend, ſtand, and abide by us, to ſuppreſſe your infidelity and untroth: Wherefore of your favour and aſſurance we ſet little ſtore, but you, as our enemies, we utterly defie. Witneſſe our ſelfe at our Towne of *Lewis*, the twelfth of *May*.

Richard *the Emperour and Prince* Edwards *Letter to the Barons.*

Moreover, *Richard* his Brother King of the *Romans* (who was come over into *England* with his wife and ſon) with Prince *Edward* and other Lords about the King, ſent them another Letter, the tenour whereof was this: *Richard* by the grace of God King of the *Romans*, *ſemper Auguſtus*, and *Edward* the Noble firſt begotten ſonne of the King of *England*, and all other Barons firmly ſtanding and abiding with our Soveraigne Lord the King: To *Simonde Mountfort*, and *Gilbert de Clare*, and all other their falſe fellowes, &c. By the Letters which yee ſent to

our Soveraigne Lord, wee understand that wee are defied of you; nevertheleſſe, this word of defiance appeared to us ſufficiently before, by the deprivation, and burning of our Mannors, and carrying away of our goods; wherefore we will that yee underſtand, that we defie you as our mortall and publicke enemies, and whenſoever we may come to the revengement of the injuries that you to us have done, wee ſhall requite it, to the utmoſt of our power; and where yee put upon us, that neither true nor good counſell to our Soveraigne Lord we give, you therein ſay falſely and untruely: and if that ſaying, yee Sir *Simon de Mountfort*, and Sir *Gilbert de Clare*, will teſtifie in the Court of our Soveraign Lord, we are ready to purchaſe to your ſurety and ſafe comming; that there wee may prove our true and faithfull innocency, and your falſe and trayterous lying. Witneſſed with the Seales of *Richard* King of the *Romans*, and Sir *Edward* Prince, before named. Given at *Lewes* the twelfth of *May*. The ſucceſſe of the Battaile followeth in the next Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. 18.

The deaths of Henry *the third and* Richard *Earle of* Cornwale *King of the* Romans : *Prince* Edwards *victories in the* Holy *Land: his* Coronation: *the propheſie of his Raigne : his firſt reducing of* Wales *under his dominion , for ever : the beginning of his warres in* Scotland,&c.

WHen the Barons had received theſe letters, they were reſolved to try it out by the ſword,& on wedneſday being the 24 day of May,early in the morning,both hoaſts met,where the *Londoners* who took part with the Barons gave the firſt aſſault, but were beaten back, ſome-what to the diſmay of the Barons Army : but they cheared their freſh and luſty Souldiers in ſuch wiſe, that they valiantly came on:by whoſe brave reſolution,thoſe before diſcomfited reſumed their former ſtrength and vertue,fighting without fear : in ſo much that the Kings vaward gave back & left their places : in this battaile the father ſpared not the ſonne, nor the ſonne the father, (ſuch was the miſery of thoſe home bred wars) in ſo much that the field was every where ſtrowed with dead bodyes , for the fight continued the greateſt part of the day : at laſt the victory fell

The battaile betwixt the King and the Barons.

The King taken priſoner with the King of the Romans, *and P.* Edward.

fell to the Barons: ſo that were taken the King, the King of the *Romans*, and prince *Edward* with five and twenty Barons and Bannerets, and the people ſlaine on both ſides, amounted to above twenty thouſand.

Theſe royall priſoners being put in ſafe keeping, a peace was after debated, and at length concluded, and they releaſed, but it proved to ſmall purpoſe, for many battailes were after fought betwixt them, in which ſometimes the King, ſometimes the Barons had the better (the circumſtances are too long to relate) in which Prince *Edward* bore himſelfe bravely: in proceſſe the five & fiftieth yeer of this Kings Reign, the King of the *Romans* made attonement betwixt the King his brother, and *Gilbert Clare* Earle of *Gloceſter*, who had continued the wars of the Barons, upon condition that hee ſhould take a Voyage into the *Holy Land* for the King, for which hee ſhould have towards his charge eight thouſand Marks in hand, and when hee was on ſhipboard foure thouſand more, and to bee ready the firſt day of *May* next following: but this failing in him; Prince *Edward* undertooke it in his ſtead, and the yeere after about the end of *March*, dyed *Richard* Emperour of *Almaine*, King of the *Romans*, and Earle of *Cornwall*, being the Kings brother, after hee had governed the Empire betwixt fifteen and ſixteene yeeres, and was buried at *Hales* an Abbey of white Monks which hee had before time founded: and the yeere following, upon the ſixteenth day

The death of Richard K. *of the* Romans.

day of *November*, died *Henry* the Third King of *England*, after he had governed the Realme fifty ſix yeeres, and twenty ſeven days, leaving for his Heire Prince *Edward*, who was then in the *Holy Land*, and another ſonne called *Edmund Crowchbacke*: His body was buried in the Abbey of *Weſtminſter*, and over him inſcribed: *The death of Henry the third.*

Tertius Henricus *jacet hic, pietatis amicus:*
Eccleſiam ſtravit iſtam, quam poſt renovavit.
Reddat ei munus, qui regnat trinus & unus.

His Epitaph.

Thus Engliſhed,

Third Henry *here doth reſt,*
Of Piety poſſeſt,
Down firſt this Church he threw,
And after did renew.
O grant him thy immunity,
Thou Trinity in Vnitie.

The premiſſes confirme the propheſie of his Reigne towards the latter end of his time: which was turbulent and troubleſome, to the exhauſting of the Kings treaſure, the deaths of many of his Noble Barons, and almoſt to the deſtruction and deſolation of the whole Realm: therefore it was truly ſaid of him:

——— The King of beaſts whoſe rage
His youth conceal'd, ſhall rouze him in his age,
Againſt the Boare, the Talbot, and the Beare,
The Mountaine Cat and Goat, with whom cohere, &c.

By

By the Lion the King is personated, and by the rest of the beasts and birds named, the severall Crests and Emblazons in the Barons Armes and Scutchions, by which they were distinguisht. Prince *Edward* his sonne was at the time of his death in the Land of *Palæstine*. Of whom also it was thus predicted.

The Propheſie.

An Occidentall Dragon bright as noone,
Shal (breathing flames) dark the Oriental Moon.
The Cambrian *Wolves he through their Woods*
shall chace,
Nor cease till hee have quite extirpt their race.
Then from the North shall fiery Meteors threat,
Ambitious after bloud) to quench their heat
(The Dragons bloud) at which his Creſt wil riſe,
And his scales flame: and where he treads as flyes
Fright all shal him oppoſe: the Northern Dyke
Paſſe shall hee then, and set his foot in Wyke.
After which, showers of bloud will fall upon
And barren the faire fields of Caledon.
Then having ended what he took in hand,
Die in the Marches of another Land.

Prince Edwards *expedition to the* Holy Land.

Hee in the yeere one thousand two hundred threescore and eleven, and in the yeere of his fathers Reigne fifty five, upon the twentieth of *August*, tooke shipping at *Dover*, and sailed thence to *Burdeaux*, but because the *French* Army (bound upon the same adventure) was removed thence, he sped after, and met with them at *Tunis*, and from thence he took shipping for the

the *Holy Land*, and arrived with ſome *French* forces joyned with his owne. At *Acris* or *Acon*, what time the Chriſtians poſſeſſed that City only, and the City of *Tyre*, holding ſome few Caſtles to preſerve them from the rage of the *Soldan*, There he was honorably received, and with great joy: after whoſe being there; the *Soldan* or *Saladine*, who had wonne all the Countrey there about, came thither with an Hoaſt of an hundred threeſcore thouſand *Sarazens*; and beſieged the City, and made many bold and bloudy aſſaults. But the Prince, ſo valiantly demeaned himſelfe, that hee defended the City, the Caſtles belonging to it, and all the Territories about, that notwithſtanding the multitude of the *Soldans* Army, hee was compeld to forſake the ſiege to his great ſhame and diſhonour.

Prince Edwards valour in defending Acris.

Even the *French* Chronicles, whoſe cuſtome is to write boaſtingly of themſelves, and ſparingly of others, beſtow on him a character of invincible courage, and that in all his ſtratagems and martiall exploits, hee ſo honourably behaved himſelfe, that his very name was a terrour to the *Turks*, for many yeers after: who ſeeing his great boldneſſe, and that they were not able to ſtand him in battaile, they plotted how to take away his life by Treaſon, and to that purpoſe, when he was reſident in *Acon*, they ſent to him a *Sarazen*, in the name of a Secretary, who in delivering unto him a counterfeit meſſage, wounded him in the arme with an empoyſo-

The French Chronicles teſtifie of P. Edwards valour.

P. Edward traitcrouſly wounded.

ned Knife, which he wreſting from the Infidels hand, ſlue with the ſame weapon, ſo that he died incontinently: Then hee cald for a Surgeon, and with incomparable ſufferance, commanded him to cut out all the putrified and corrupted fleſh, even to the ſcaling of the bone, without the leaſt ſhrinking or alteration of countenance: of which baſe treachery hee was after revenged upon them to their great detriment and damage: and thus,

The Occidentall Dragon, bright as noon,
Did (breathing flames) dazle the oriental moon.

Hee is called Occidentall, as being bred in this our Weſterne Iſland, and the *Soldan* is figured in the Orientall Moone, being a Prince in the Eaſterne part of the World, and bearing the ſemicircled Moone in his Banner: Prince *Edward* during his aboad there, had by the Princeſſe his wife, a daughter called *Ioane*, who tooke a name from the place, and was called *Ioane* of *Acris*, becauſe there born, and was after married to the Earle of *Gloceſter*: After his being there ſome two yeeres and upward, his father dying, hee was called home to take poſſeſſion of the Crowne of *England*.

His wife was Iſabell *of* Spain. Joan *of* Acris.

Edward the firſt of that name, and ſonne of *Henry* the Third (by reaſon of his tall ſtature, ſirnamed *Long-ſhanks*, began his Reign, *Novem.* 17. the yeere of Grace, one thouſand two hundred threeſcore and twelve who came to *London*, the

the ſecond day of *Auguſt*, and was crowned at *Weſtminſter*, the fourteenth of *December* following being the ſecond yeere of his Reigne, at whoſe Coronation was preſent *Alexander* King of *Scots*, who the morrow following did homage to him for the Kingdome of *Scotland*: but *Lewellin* prince of *Wales*, refuſed to come to that ſolemnitie, for which King *Edward* gathered a ſtrong power, and ſubdued him in his owne borders: and in the yeere after hee called his high Court of Parlament, to which alſo *Lewellin* preſumptuouſly denied to come, therefore after Eaſter, he aſſembled new forces, and entring *Wales*, hee conſtrained him to ſubmit himſelfe to his mercy, which with great difficulty hee obtained: then the King built the Caſtle of *Flint*, and ſtrengthened the Caſtle of *Rutland*, to keepe the *Welſh* in due obedience.

The Coronation of P. Edward, ſirnamed Long-ſhanks.

Lewellin P. of Wales rebelleth.

Lewellin took to mercy.

He gave alſo unto *David* brother of *Lewellin*, the Caſtle of *Froddeſham*, who remayned in his Court, and with his ſeeming ſervice much delighted the King: but *David* did it only as a ſpie, to give his brother ſecret intelligence, of whatſoever the King or his Counſell ſaid of him or againſt him; who tooke his opportunity, and privatly left the Court, ſtirring up his brother to a new Rebellion, of which the King being informed, hee could hardly thinke that hee could prove ſo ingratefull, but being better aſcertained of the truth, he made fierce warre upon them: at length *Lewellin* was ſtrictly beſieged in *Swandon* Caſtle, from which when hee

David brother to Lewellin.

thought early in a morning to escape with ten Knights only, hee was met by Sir *Roger Mortimer*, (upon whose Lands hee had before done great out-rage) who surprized him and cut off his head, and sent it to the King being then at *Rutland*, who commanded it to bee pitcht on a pole and set upon the Tower of *London*, and further, that all his heires should be disherited, and their claime to the Soveraignty of *Wales* to be deprived the right thereof, solely remayning in the Kings of *England*, and their Successours. Soone after was his brother *David* taken, and after doomed to be drawn, hanged and quartered, and his head sent to the Tower and placed by his brother *Lewellins*: in which the propheſie is verified:

The death of Lewellin *P. of* Wales.

The death of David *his brother.*

The Cambrian *Wolves, he through their woods*
shall chace,
Nor cease till he have quite extirpt their Race.

Of this *Lewellin a Welsh Metrician* writ this Epitaph,

Hic jacet Anglorum *tortor, tutor* Venedorum,
Princeps Wallorum, Lewelinus *regula morum,*
Gemma Coævorum, flos regum præteritorum:
Forma futurorum, Dux, Laus, Lex, Lux popu-
lorum.

A Welsh *poet upon the death of* Lewellin.

Thus anciently Englisht:

Of Englishmen the scourge, of Welsh the protector,
Lew-

Lewellin *the Prince, rule of all vertue,*
Gemme of Livers, and of all others the flower:
Who unto death hath paid his debt due,
Of Kings a mirrour that after him enſue,
Duke, and Prieſt, and of the Law the right,
Here in this grave, of people lyeth the light.

To which an *Engliſh* Poet of thoſe times made this anſwer,

An Engliſh poets anſwer to the former.

Hic jacet errorum princeps ac prædo virorum,
Proditor Anglorum, *fax livida, ſectareorum,*
Numen Wallorum, *Trux, Dux, Homicida piorum:*
Fex Trojanorum, *ſtirps mendax, cauſa malorum.*

Here lyeth of Errour, the Prince if yee will ken:
Thiefe and Robber, and traytor to Engliſhmen,
A dimme brood, a Sect of doers evill,
God of Welſhmen, cruell without skill,
In ſlaying the good, and Leader of the bad:
Laſtly rewarded, as he deſerved had:
Of Trojans *blond the dregs, and not the ſeed;*
A root of falſhood, and cauſe of many evill deed.

The death of Q. Eleanor.

In the twentieth yeere of the King, upon Saint *Andrews* Eve, being the twentie ninth of *November*, died Queene *Eleanor*, ſiſter to the King of *Spaine*: by whom the King had foure ſonnes, *Iohn*, *Henry*, *Alphons*, and *Edward*; the three firſt died, and *Edward* the youngeſt ſucceeded

The Kings Royall Issue.

ceeded his Father, and five Daughters, *Eleanor* who was married to *William* of *Bar*, *Ioan* of *Acris*, to the Earle of *Gloceſter*, *Gilbert de Clare*: *Margaret* to the Dukes ſonne of *Brabant*, *Mary* who was made a Nun at *Ambrisbury*, and *Eliſabeth* eſpouſed to the Earle of *Holland*, aud after his death to *Humphrey Bohun* Earle of *Hereford*.

The death of K. Edwards mother.

This yeere alſo died old Queene *Eleanor* wife to *Henry* the third, and mother to King *Edward*. I come now to the twenty fourth yeare of his Reigne, in which *Alexander* King of *Scotland* being dead, hee left three Daughters: the firſt was married to Sir *Iohn Baliol*, the ſecond to Sir *Robert le Bruiſe*, the third to one *Haſtings*. Amongſt which there fell diſſention about the Title to the Crown, as ſhall appeare in the next Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. 19.

The right that the Kings of England *have anciently had to the Crowne of* Scotland, *for which they did them homage: King* Edwards *victorious wars in* Scotland. *The Propheſie fulfilled. His death. And Coronation of his ſonne, &c. The death of* Gaveſton, *with a Propheſie of King* Edward *the Second.*

THeſe three before-named, *Baliol*, *Bruſe* and *Haſtings*, came to King *Edward* as chiefe Lord and Soveraigne of that Land, to diſpoſe of the right of their Titles to his pleaſure, and they to abide his cenſure, who to the intent that they might know hee was the ſole competent Judge in that caſe, cauſed old Evidences and Chronicles to be ſearcht, amongſt which was *Marianus* the *Scot*, *William* of *Malmsbury*, *Roger* of *Hungtington*, and others; in which were found and read before them, that in the yeere of Grace nine hundred aud twenty, King *Edward* the elder made ſubject unto him the two Kings of *Cambria* and *Scotland:* In the yeere nine hundred twenty one; the ſaid Kings of *Wales* and *Scotland*, choſe the ſame *Edward* to bee their Lord and Patron. In the yeere nine hundred twenty

Authority by which England *claimed homage from the* Scotch *Kings.*

twenty ſix *Ethelſtane* King of *England*, ſubdued *Conſtantine* King of *Scots*, who did him fealty and homage. And *Edredus* brother and ſucceſſor to *Ethelſtane*, ſubdued the *Scots* againe, with the *Northumbers*, who reigned under him.

It was alſo found in the ſaid Chronicles, that King *Edgar* overcame *Alpinus*, the ſonne of *Kinudus*, King of *Scots*, and received of him homage, as hee had done of his father before time. And that *Canutus* in the ſixteenth yeere of his Reign, overcame *Malcolm* K. of *Scots*, and received of him oath and homage: that *William* the Conquerour in the ſixt yeere of his Reigne, was victorious over *Malcolme*, who before received the Kingdome of the gift of *Edward* the Confeſſor, who did him fealty; the like did *Malcolme* and his two ſonnes to *VVilliam* ſirnamed the *Red*, ſonne to the Conquerour: *David* King of *Scots* did homage alſo to *Stephen* King of *England*. *VVilliam* King of *Scots* did the like to *Henry* the third at the time of his Coronation, and when this *Henry* was dead, hee came after to his father *Henry* the ſecond, into *Normandy*; and did the like to him alſo. *Alexander* King of *Scots* in the thirty firſt yeer of *Henry* the ſecond, (ſonne of King *Iohn*) married at *Yorke* the Daughter of the ſaid *Henry*, and did him homage for the Realme of *Scotland*, &c.

This Henry *cald the third, was ſonne to* Henry *the ſecond, and was crowned, but dyed before his Father.*

Further, was ſhewed unto them the Popes Bulls, ſent into *Scotland*; by vertue whereof, thoſe of their Kings were accurſed that would not

not bee obedient to their Lords, the Kings of *England*: Briefely, they acknowledging all theſe to be true, Bonds were made on both ſides, in which thing *Edward* was tyed in an hundred thouſand pounds to nominate their King, and the *Scots* againe bound to obey him, nominated as their Soveraigne: After which writings ſealed, they delivered the poſſeſſion of the Kingdome of *Scotland* into King *Edwards* hands, to preſerve it to his uſe, of whom hee would make election, who made choiſe of Sir *Iohn Baliol*, as true and immediate heire, by marrying the eldeſt ſiſter, for which he did him homage and ſware him fealty: which done, the *Scots* with their new King, departed joyfully into *Scotland*.

Authority from Rome.

Sir Iohn Baliol *made king of* Scots.

But ſoone after, *Baliol* repented him of his Oath, and as ſome ſay, by the Counſell of the Abbot of *Menroſſe*, others by the inſtigation of the King of *France*; but whether by one or both, certaine it is, that hee perfidiouſly revolted, and made warre upon *England*, which *Edward* hearing, ſped him with a great hoaſt into *Scotland*, and laid ſiege to *Barwicke*, but they bravely defended the Towne, and burnt ſome of our Engliſh, with which they were ſo inflamed with pride, that they made this ſcornfull Rime upon the Engliſh:

The Scots *revolt.*

What ween is King Edward *with his long ſhanks,*
To have won Barwicke, *all our unthankes,*
Gaas pikes him,

And when he had it,
Gaes dikes him.

At which King *Edward* being mightily moved, ſo incouraged his ſouldiers, that they firſt wonne the Ditches, and after with great difficulty the *Bulwarkes*, and then came to the gates, which they inforced, and entring the Towne, ſlew twenty five thouſand, and ſeven hundred *Scots*, and loſt no man of note, ſave *Richard* Earle of *Cornwall*, and of meaner people twenty ſeven and no more; which hitherto upholds the former prediction.

King Edward winneth Barwicke.

Then from the North ſhall fiery Meteors threat,
Ambitious after blood to quench their heate.
(The Dragons blood) at which his Creſt wil riſe,
And his skales flame: & where he treads or flies
Fright all ſhall him oppoſe, the Northerne Dyke
Paſſe ſhall he then, and ſet his foot in wyke.

By the Northerne *Dyke* is implyed the River *Tweede*, and by *Wyke* the Towne of *Barwicke*: but I purſue the Hiſtory: The King having poſſeſt the Towne and Caſtle, hee ſent Sir *Hugh Spencer*, with Sir *Hugh Parcy*, and other Noble men to beſiege *Dunbar*, whither came a mighty Hoſt to remove them thence, with whom the Engliſh had a fierce and cruel battail, in which were ſlaine of the *Scots* twenty two thouſand, and of the *Engliſh* a very ſmall number, wherefore the *Engliſh* to reproach the

A glorious victory at the taking of Dunbar.

Scots

Scots in regard of their former Rime made this,

Theſe ſcattered Scots Hold we for ſets.
Of wrenches unware,
Earely in a morning, in an evill timing,
Came yee to Dunbar.

After the taking of the Towne and Caſtle of *Dunbarre*, the King beſieged the City of *Edenborough*, and wonne both it and the Caſtle, in which were found the Regalities of ſtate, which King *Edward* tooke thence, (and offered them at the ſhrine of Saint *Edward*, upon the eighteenth day of *Iune* the year following.) Then Sir *John Baliol*, with diverſe of his Clergy and Nobility, ſubmitted themſelves to the kings grace, and having ſetled the affaires of *Scotland*, hee brought them up to *London*, and then aſked them what amends they would make him for all the trouble and damage they had put him to? who anſwered, they wholly ſubmitted themſelves to his mercy. Hee then replyed, your Lands nor your goods doe I deſire, but I will that you take the Sacrament, to be my true Feodaries, and never more to beare Armes againſt me: to which they willingly aſſented, of wch were ſir *Iohn Commin*, the Earle of *Stratherne*, & the Earle of *Carick*, and foure Biſhops took Oath in the behalfe of themſelves and the whole Clergy: which done, the king gave them ſafe conduct into their Country.

Edenborough taken, with the Caſtle, Crown, &c.

The Scotch *ſworne on the Sacrament.*

But not long after, they hearing the king was

They breake their oath.

busied in his warres of *Gascoyne*, against the *French* king, they made a new insurrection, having one *VVill. Wallis* a desperate Ruffin and of low condition to be their chiefe Leader: which the King hearing, having ordred his affaires in *France*, hee sped towards *Scotland*, and entring the Kingdome, he burnt and wasted whereſoere he came, sparing only all Churches, Religious Houses, and the poore people who besought him of mercy. At length hee met with the Scottish Army upon Saint *Mary Mawdlins* day, at a place called *Fonkirke*, where hee gave them battaile, and slue of them thirty three thousand, with the losse only of twenty eight men and no more, and finding no other enemies able to resist him, hee returned into *England*; and after married *Margaret* the *French* Kings sister, by which a peace betwixt *England* and *France* was concluded.

The brave battaile at Fonkirke.

King Edward *marrieth the* French *Kings sister.*

Then went king *Edward* a third time into *Scotland*, and almost famished the Land, and tooke the strong Castle of *Estrevelin*, and soon after was taken *William VVallis* at the Town of Saint *Dominick*, who was sent to *London*, where he received his judgement, and upon Saint *Bartholomews* Eve, was drawne and quartred, his head stooke off and set on *London* bridge, and his foure quarters sent to bee hanged up in the foure chiefe Cities of *Scotland*: after this *Robert le Bruce* claymed the Crowne of *Scotland*, without acquainting king *Edward* therewith, and drove all the Englishmen out of the Land;

The end of William Wallis.

of

of which he vowed revenge, and to hang up all the Traytors in that kingdome: who before hee ſet forward on that expedition made foure hundred and foure knights at *VVeſtminſter*, upon a Whitſon Sunday, with whom and the reſt of his Army he once more pierced *Scotland*, and upon Friday before the Aſſumption of our Lady, hee met with *Robert le Bruce* and his Hoaſt, beſide Saint *Iohns* Towne, and ſlue of them ſeven thouſand at the firſt encounter, and the reſt fled. In this battaile was taken Sir *Simon Frizell*, and ſent to *London*, where hee was drawne, hanged and quartered: there ſuffered alſo *Iohn* Earle of *Athelus*, and *Iohn* brother to *VVilliam VVallis*, but *Robert le Bruce* fled from *Scotland* into *Norway*, to the King, who had married his ſiſter.

King Edward *maketh* 400, *and foure Knights.*

King Edwards *laſt victory over the* Scots.

When King *Edward* had thus abated the pride of his enemies, he returned again Southward, and a great ſickneſſe took him at *Bozroes* upon Sands, in the Marches of *Scotland*, beyond *Carlile*, and when he knew hee ſhould die, hee called unto him *Aymer de Valence* Earle of *Pembroke*, Sir *Henry Piercy* Earle of *Northumberland*, Sir *Henry Lacie* Earle of *Lincolne*, and Sir *Robert Clifford* Baron; and ſwore them to crowne his ſonne *Edward* of *Carnarvan* after his death: then hee called his ſonne, charging him with many things upon his bleſſing, but eſpecially that hee ſhall never receive *Pierce Gaveſtone* his old companion (before baniſht) into the Kingdome: and ſo dyed upon the ſeventh

The Barons ſworne to the ſucceſſour.

The death of K. Edward *the first.*

of *July*, when hee had reigned foure and thirty yeeres, seven moneths and odde dayes, and thence his body was conveighed to *Westminster*, and there buried: approving the propheſie.

After which, ſhowres of bloud will fall upon,
And barren the faire fields of Caledon:
Then having ended what he took in hand,
Die in the Marches of another Land.

Upon whoſe Tombe this Diſtich was inſcribed:

His Epitaph.

Dum vixit Rex, & valuit ſua magna poteſtas,
Fraus latuit, pax magna fuit, regnavit honeſtas.

Thus in thoſe dayes Engliſht:

While lived this King, by his power all things,
Was in good plight,
For guile was hid, great peace was kid,
And honeſty had might.

A propheſie of the Reigne of Edward *the ſecond.*

Of his ſonne Prince *Edward*, the Propheſie runs thus:

A Goat ſhall then appeare out of a Carr,
With ſilver hornes (not Iron) unfit for warre,
And above other ſhall delight to feed
Upon the flower, that life and death doth breed.
A Corniſh *Eagle clad in plumes of gold*
(Borrowed from others) ſhall on high behold

What

What beſt can pleaſe him to maintain his pride.
Whoſe painted feathers ſhall the Goat miſguide,
Who at length ayming to ſurpriſe the Beare,
Him ſhall the rowzed beaſt in pieces teare.
Two Owles ſhall from the Eagles aſhes riſe,
And in their pride the Foreſt beaſts deſpiſe.
They forc't at firſt to take their wings and flie
Shall (back returning) beare themſelves ſo hie,
T' out-brave both birds and beaſts, and great ſpoyls winne,
By the Goats caſing in a Lions skin.
But after, be themſelves depriv'd of breath
By her they ſcorn'd (the flower of life and death)
And the crown'd Goat, thinking himſelf ſecure
Shall (after all) a wretched end endure.

To confirme which, *Edward* the ſecond of that name (and ſonne of *Edward* the firſt) borne at *Carnarvan* a Town of *VVales*, began his Reigne over *England*, the eighth of *July*, in the yeere of Grace one thouſand three hundred and ſeven, and was crowned at *Weſtminſter* the fourteenth day of *December*, whoſe Fathers Obſequies were ſcarcely ended, but forgetting the great charge and command layed upon him in his death, hee ſent in haſte for his old friend and familiar *Pierce Gaueſtone* out of *France*, whom hee received with great joy, then ſayling into *France* the fifteenth of *January* following, at *Bolloigne* in *Picardy*, eſpouſed *Iſabell* the daughter of *Philip* the *Faire*, and returned with her into *England*, where ſoone after hee made

His Coronation

Pierce Gaveſtone *revoked from baniſhment.*

His marriage.

Gaveston *made Earle of* Cornwall.

Gaveston Earle *of Cornwall*, and gave him the Lordship of *Wallingford*, to the great displeasure of the Barons, who were sworne to his father not to suffer him to come into the Realm.

The Bishop of Chester *sent to the Tower.*

In the second of his Raign, remembring the complaint that *Steph. Langton* Bishop of *Chester* had made of him and *Gaveston* for sundry ryots committed in his fathers dayes, for which he was banished, he sent him prisoner to the Tower, where he was strictly kept, and ill attended, for which end seeing how by this *Pierce* the kings treasury was howrely exhausted, the Barons assembled themselves, and contrary to the Kings pleasure, banished him into *Ireland* for a yeere, where the King gave him the Dominion over the whole Land, but so mourned and lamented his absence, that by the consent of Lords he was shortly call'd back again: where he demeaned himselfe with greater pride and insolence then at first; despising the Lords and chiefe peeres of the Land, calling Sir *Robert* of *Clare* Earle of *Gloster* whoreson, the Earle of *Lincolne* sir *Henry Lacy Burstenbelly*, sir *Guy* Earle of *Warwick*, black dog of *Arderne*, and the noble Earle *Thomas* of *Lancaster* churle: and moreover having the keeping and command of all the kings treasure, he tooke out of the Iewell-house a table of Gold and tressels of the same, which once belonged to King *Arthur*, with many other invaluable Iewels, and delivered them to a merchant called *Amery* of *Friskband*, to beare them over into *Gascoigne*, which

Gaveston *banished into* Ireland.

Gavest. *abuseth the peeres*

He robs the Kings treasury

was

was a great loſſe to the kingdome: and further by his looſe and effeminate conditions, he drew the King to many horrible vices, as adultery (&as ſome think) ſodomitry, with others: therefore the Lords againe aſſembled, and maugre the king, baniſht him into *Flanders*.

He is baniſht into Flanders

In the firſt yeere upon the day of ſaint *Brice* being the 13 day of *November*, was born at *Winſor* the firſt and eldeſt ſonne of King *Edward* that after his father was king of *England*, & named *Edward* the third: and the ſame yeere *Gaveſton* was called out of *Flanders* by the king, and reſtored to all his former honours; and then he demeaned himſelfe more contemptuouſly toward the Barons then before, who beſieged him in the Caſtle of *Scarborough*, and won it, and tooke him and brought him to *Gaverſed* beſides *Warwick*, and there ſmote off his head, which was done at the inſtigation of *Thomas* Earle of *Lancaſter* (whom *Merlin* calls the bear) and this approveth the premiſſes:

The birth of Edward *the third;*

The death of Pierce Gaveſt.

A Corniſh Eagle *cladin plumes of gold,*
(Borrowed from others) ſhall on high behold,
what beſt can pleaſe him to maintain his pride.
whoſe painted feathers ſhall the Goat *misguid:*
who at length aiming to ſurpriſe the Beare,
Him ſhall the rowzed beaſt in pieces teare.

Chap. 20.

The Kings unfortunate wars in Scotland : *The battle of* Bannocsbourn, *&c.* Barwick *betrayed to the* Scots : *The pride and insolency of the* Spencers : *Their misleading the King. Their hate to the Queen, she is sent over into France: Her victorious return with the Prince : The King and his Minions taken :the death of the two* Spencers, *&c.*

BY the *Cornish* Eagle in the former Chapter is meant *Pierce Gaveston* Earle of *Cornwall*; by his plumes of gold, his pride and riches borrowed and extorted from others: by the Goat, the King who was given to all intemperate effeminacie: by the *Beare*, *Thomas* Earle of *Lancaster*,&c. This King was of a beautifull aspect, and excellent feature : of a strong constitution of body, but unstedfast in promise, and ignoble in condition, as refusing the company of men of honour, to associate himselfe with lewd and vile persons, he was much addicted to bibacity, and apt to discover matters of great counsell and of stupration, and adultery, perswaded thereto by his familiars the *French* men, for whose death the King vowed an irreconciliable revenge

King Edwards *Character.*

revenge againſt the Barons, which he after performed: indeed ſo unking-like was his miſgovernment, that a baſe Villaine called *Iohn Tanner*, named himſelf the ſon of *Edward* the firſt, and that by the means of a falſe nurſe, hee was ſtoln out of his cradle, and this *Edward* being a Carters ſon was laid in his place, which the people for the former reaſons were eaſily induced to believe: but the Impoſtor was diſcovered, and by his own confeſſion, judged to be hanged and quartered.

John Tanner *an Impoſtor.*

In the ſeventh yeere of his Reigne, *Robert le Bruce*, King of *Scots*, whom his Father made flye into *Norway*, hearing of the miſguiding of the Kingdome, and the diſſention betwixt him and his Barons, warre ſtrongly againſt him and his friends in *Scotland*, and wonne from them Caſtles and Holds howſoever well munified, to the great damage of the *Engliſh*, who were intereſſed in the Land. For which affront, the King aſſembled a great power, and invaded *Scotland* by Sea, burning and deſtroying all ſuch Townes and Villages as were in his way, which *Robert le Bruce* hearing, he haſted with a ſtrong Army, and upon S. *Iohn Baptiſts* day both Hoaſts met at a place called *Eſtrivelin*, neere unto a freſh River called *Bannoksburne*, where betwixt them was fought a cruell battaile, in which the *Engliſh* were compeld to forſake the field. For which, in deriſion of the *Engliſh*, the *Scots* made this Ryme Doggerill,

Robert le Bruce *wars againſt* England.

The Kings power againſt Scotland.

The Scots derision of the English.

Maidens of England, *sore may you mourn,*
For the Lemans you have lost at Bannocksborn
With a heave and hoe:
What weened the King of England, *so soone to have wonne* Scotland?
With a Rumby low.

Barwick betrayed to the Scots.

In his ninth yeere, *Barwick* was betrayed to the *Scots*, by one *Peter Spalding* whom the King had made Governour of the Town and Castle: and in the eleventh yeere, the *Scots* entred the borders of *Northumberland*, most cruelly robbing and burning the Country, even the houses of women who lay in Childbed, not sparing age, nor sex, religious nor other: therefore the King raised a new Army, and laid siege to *Barwick*, in which interim the *Scots* past the River of *Swale*, and leaving the Coast where the Kings people lay, came into the Borders of *Yorkeshire*, to whom the Archbishop with Priests and ploughmen (unexercised in armes) gave battail, but were discomfited, in which so many Priors, Clerks, Canons, and other Clergymen were slaine, that they called it the *white battaile:* when the King heard of this overthrow, hee broke up his siege, and retyred to *Yorke*, and soone after to *London*.

The cruelty of the Scots.

The white battaile.

After this, nothing was done without the advice of the two *Hugh Spencers*, the father and the sonne: and in a Counsell held at *Yorke*, *Hugh Spencer* the sonne, maugre the Lords, was made

made high Chamberlain of *England*, who bore him as haughtily as ever did *Gaveſtone*: but let me take the propheſie along.

The pride of Hugh Spencer the ſonne.

A Goat ſhall then appeare out of a Carr,
VVith ſilver hornes (not Iron) unfit for warre,
And above other ſhall delight to feed
Vpon the flower, that life and death doth breed.

By the Goat is figured laſcivious *Edward*, therefore ſaid to appeare out of a *Car*, as born in *Carnarvan*, his hornes of ſilver and not of Iron, denotes his effeminacie, being unſerviceable for warre, as may appeare, in his ſucceſſe againſt the *Scots*: by the *Flower of life and death* is intended his Queene *Iſabel* the *Flower* of *France*, at firſt deare to him as life, but in the end (as moſt Writers have ſuſpected) with *Mortimer*, acceſſary to his death: but to proceed with the Hiſtory.

The aſſembly of the Barons.

The Barons (to a great number) ſeeing how the *Spencers* miſled the King and miſgoverned the affaires in the Land, aſſembled themſelves and tooke a ſolemne and unanimous vow to remove them out of the Kingdome: and as their firſt attempt, certain of them appointed to that purpoſe, entred upon the Mannors and Caſtles of the *Spencers*, in the Marches of *Wales*, ſpoyling and ruining them to the earth, of which riot they complained to the King, who ſummoned them to appeare before his Counſell, which they refuſed to doe, but gathered unto them a

The petition of the Barons to the King.

ſtronger Hoaſt, and ſent to his Majeſty, humbly beſeeching him to remove from his perſon the two *Spencers*, which daily did to him great diſhonour, and to the Common-weale: which damage, with humble requeſt the King hearing, and doubting his owne ſafety, called a Parliament to be held at *London*, to which the Barons came with a great Hoaſt all ſuited in demy-parted Jackets of yellow and greene, with a liſt of white, caſt overthwart, for which the common people called it the Parliament of *white-bands*, in which the two *Spencers* were baniſhed the Kingdome for ever.

The Parlament of white-bands

But the yeere following, the King revoked the Acts made in the former Parliament, and called them into *England*, contrary to the will of the Barons, and ſet them in greater authority then before, to the great diſturbance and almoſt utter ſubverſion of the Realme: for now the whole Land was in combuſtion, and the King animated by the *Spencers*, tooke on him the ſhape of a Lion, and ceaſed not till hee had cut off the chiefe and prime Nobility of the Land: For beſides thoſe that were ſlaine, none was brought to the Barre, but was thence led to the blocke: who having got the better of his Barons, he called a Parliament at *Yorke*, in which *Hugh Spencer* the Father was made Earle of *Wincheſter*, and ſoone after was one *Robert Baldock* a fellow of debaucht life and condition, made Chancellour of *England*: Then forfeits and fines were gathered, without ſparing of pri-

Hugh Spencer *the father made Earle of Wincheſter.*

Robert Baldock *made Chancellour.*

priviledged places or other, till a mighty ſumme of money was gathered towards another expedition into *Scotland*, and then his Army conſiſted (according to *Caxton* and others) of an hundred thouſand men, but hee ſped in that as in the former, for on Saint *Lukes* day, at a place called *Bellalaund*, or *Brighland*, hee had like to have beene taken as he ſat at dinner, which could not have beene, had he not had ſome traitours about him: and now confer the premiſſes with the Propheſie:

The King almoſt ſurprized at dinner.

Two Owles ſhall from the Eagles aſhes riſe,
And in their pride the Foreſt beaſts deſpiſe.
They forc't at firſt to take their wings and flie
Shall (back returning) beare themſelves ſo hie,
T' out-brave both birds and beaſts, and great
ſpoyls winne,
By the Goats caſing in a Lions skin.

The two Owls are the two *Spencers*, who from the aſhes of the *Corniſh Eagle Gaveſton*, grew into the eſpeciall favour of the King, who were ſayd to eaſe the Goat in the skinne of the Lyon, by animating the effeminate King to the warres againſt the Barons, by whoſe deaths they got many rich ſpoyls, and then forced to take their wings to fly where they were baniſht the Realme at the parliament of white *Bands*, *&c.*

The ſtate of the kingdome thus ſtanding, and the two *Spencers* commanding all the Land had

had Warres with *France* about the Dutchy of *Guian:* to attone which difference betwixt the two Kings, the two *Spencers* being in all things opposite to the Queen, whom they had brought to the bare allowance and pension of twenty shillings a day, they further plotted how to rid her out of the Land, and perswaded the King to send her into *France*, to make peace betwixt the two Kingdomes, having before seized on all her lands, and those belonging to the Prince. Briefely, the Queene arrived in *France*, and was royally received by her brother, who hearing of her base usage, and by whom, he was much incensed against the K. and his wicked Counsellors, and sent to him under his seale to come in person into *France* to doe him homage, or he should forfeit the Dutchy of *Guian:* Of which K. *Edward* took little regard, in hope his Queen would salve all things that were amisse betwixt the brother and husband.

The hate of the Spencers towards the Queene, which was after the cause of their ruine.

The Queen sent into France.

She is royally received by the King her brother.

After the Queenes three months abode in *France*, the Prince desired of his Father, that he might have leave to visite his mother and unckle, which his Father granted, and said to him at parting, Goe my faire sonne in Gods blessing, and mine, and returne to mee againe as speedily as you may: who passing the Sea and comming to the Kings Court, hee joyfully received him, and said; Faire sonne, you bee welcome, and since your Father came not to doe homage for the Dutchy of *Guian*, as his antecessors have done, I give you the Lordship to hold

hold of me in heritage, and ſo the Prince was created, and thence forward called the Duke of *Guien*:

P. Edward made Duke of Guien.

Which being knowne to King *Edward* hee was highly incenſed, eſpecially becauſe the Prince was inſtated into that honour without his conſent and pleaſure, and finding that (notwithſtanding his often ſending) they made no haſte to returne, hee made Proclamation, that if within ſuch a day prefixed they made not their repaire into the Land, they ſhould be held as enemies to the Crowne and ſtate: but the Queene much fearing the malice of the *Spencers*, whom ſhe knew to bee her mortall enemies, ſhe removed not thence: then the King made forfeiture of all their goods and Lands, before ſeized, and took the profits of them to his owne uſe, and ſent ſharpe and threatning Letters to the *French* King, if he ſuffered them to ſojourne longer in his Realme, upon which he commanded them thence, without any further comfort or ſuccour.

The French *King refuſeth to aid his ſiſter.*

At that time Sir *Iohn Henaud*, brother to the Earle of *Henaud* (a man of great courage and valour) being in the *French* Court, much commiſerating the Queene and the Prince, deſired her to goe with him to his brother the Earle, of which ſhe was glad, and taking his noble offer, was there honourably received. Then was a marriage concluded betwixt Prince *Edward* and *Phillip* the Earles Daughter, upon certaine conditions, one of which was, that the Earle

The Prince contracted to Philip *daughter to the Earl of* Henaud.

ſhould ſend over into *England* the Queene and her ſonne with 400 men at Armes, under the conduct of his Brother. In which interim, the two *Spencers* ſent three Barrells of Coyne, with Letters, to ſome of the *French* Peeres, that if it were poſſible they ſhould make away the Queene or her ſonne, or at leaſt ſend them away diſgraced out of the Realme, which mony and Letters were taken by a ſhip of the *Henanders*, and brought to the Queene during her abode there, which the Earles brother ſeeing, ſaid unto her, bee of comfort Madam, this is a good Omen, the *Spencers* your enemies have ſent you money to pay your ſouldiers.

The Spencers beat at their own weapons.

Of which the King of *England* having intelligence, he ſent to all the Ports and Havens to interdict their landing: notwithſtanding which, the Queene and Prince, with theſe foure hundred *Hollanders*, and a ſmall company of *Engliſh* gentlemen, who had fled to her in the time of her exile landed at a port called *Orwel*, beſides *Harwich* in *Suffolke*, the fifteenth of *September* (Sir *Iohn Henaud* the Earles brother being their Captain and Leader) without any oppoſition or reſiſtance, to whom after their landing, the people reſorted in great companies, and ſped towards *London*, where the King and the *Spencers* were then reſident, who hearing of the multitudes that then drew unto her: left *Walter Stapleton* Biſhop of *Exeter*, *Cuſtos* of the Citie, and with a ſmall company fled towards *Wales*: ſhe came then to *London*, where the people were wil-

The Queene landeth in Suffolk.

The King and Spencers *flie to* Wales.

willing to receive her, which the Biſhop with many ſharpe and bitter words oppoſing, the Commons of the City tooke him violently, and beheaded him with two of his Eſquires, at the Standard in Weſt-cheap, whoſe bodies were borne to the *Thames* ſide (where the Biſhop had begun a new edifice contrary to their liking) and there unreverently buried.

The Queene purſueth the King.

The Queene with an eaſie march followed the king, who came to *Briſtoll* with the Earle of *Arundell*, the two *Spencers*, and his infamous Chancellour *Baldock*, where after counſell taken it was agreed, that *Hugh Spencer* the father ſhould ſtay there and take charge of the towne and caſtle, whileſt the King and the reſt tooke ſhipping thence for Wales, to raiſe the Welſhmen in his aid, of which the Queene having notice, ſent thither the Earle of Kent, Sir *Iohn Henaud*, with others, who with ſmall difficultie tooke the towne and caſtle, with *Hugh Spencer* the father alive, and delivered them to the Queene, who remained there till the greateſt part of her army purſued the King and his other Minions into Wales, who took the King, the Earle of Arundell, *Hugh Spencer* the ſon, and the Chancellour, and brought them all priſoners to Hereford, in which interim the Citizens of London won the tower of London, and kept it to the Queenes uſe.

The Town and Caſtle of Briſtoll taken.

The tower of London *taken by the Citizens*

Upon the morrow after the feaſt of *Simon* and *Iude*, the ſame day that the L. Major takes his oath, was *Hugh Spencer* the father put to death,

Hugh Spencer the father put to death.

Hugh *the son drawn, hanged and quartered.*

death, and after buried at Winchester, and upon Saint *Hughs* day following, being the eighteenth day of November, was Sir *Hugh* the son drawne, hanged and quartered at Hereford, and his head sent to London, and set upon the Bridge, making good:

They after be themselves depriv'd of breath,
By her they scorn'd, the flower of life and death.

The common fame went, that after this *Hugh* was taken, hee would take no manner of sustenance, and that was the cause he was the sooner put to death, of whom was made this Distich following.

Funis cum lignis, à te, miser ensis & ignis:
Hugo, *securus equus, abstulit omne decus.*

Rope, gallows, sword, and fire, with a just knife
Took from thee Hugh, *thy honour with thy life.*

Baldock *the Chancellour dyes in Newgate.*

Foure dayes after was the Earle of *Arondell* put to death and *Robert Baldock* the Chancellour being committed to Newgate, dyed miserably in prison: then the Queene with the Prince her son with the rest of the Lords, were with great joy the fourteenth day of *December*, received at *London*, and thence conveighed to *Westminster*, where a Parliament was called, the effect whereof expect in the following Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. 21.

The depoſing of Edward *the ſecond: his repentance, his death: His ſonne* Edward *made King. A Propheſie of his Reigne. His great victory over the* Scots, *with the taking of* Barwicke. *His famous victory at Sea over the* French: *Hee layes claime to the Crowne of* France: *inſtituteth the Order of the Garter. His victory at* Creſſie. *His taking of* Calice, *&c.*

FRom this Parliament were Meſſengers ſent to the King, then priſoner in *Kenelworth* Caſtle, three Biſhops, three Earles, two Abbots, two Barons, two Judges, with Sir *William Truſſell*, Procurator of the Parliament, to depoſe him of all Kingly dignity, who the five and twentieth of *January*, in the preſence of the aforeſaid Lords, from the body of the whole Houſe delivered unto him theſe words following.

King Edward *depoſed from all Kingly power.*

I *William Truſſell*, in the name of all men of this Land of *England*, (procurator of this Parliament) reſigne to thee *Edward*, the homage that was ſometimes made to thee, and from this time forth, deprive thee of all Kingly power, and I ſhall never be attendant on thee as King

after this time. And thus was *Edward* the ſecond depoſed (and his ſonne *Edward* made King) when hee had raigned full eighteene yeeres ſixe moneths and odde dayes, who during his impriſonment, firſt, at *Kenelworth*, and after at *Barckley* Caſtle grew greatly repentant of his former courſe of life, finding at length what it was to be miſled by upſtarts and people of mean condition: many of whoſe penitentiall fancies are ſtill extant. And amongſt the reſt this following.

Edward *greatly repentant.*

Moſt bleſſed Jeſu,
Root of all vertue,
Grant I may thee ſue,
In all humilitie;

Sen thou for our good
Liſt to ſhed thy blood
And ſtretch thee on the Rood
For our iniquitie:

I thee beſeech,
Moſt wholſome leech,
That thou wilt ſeech
For mee ſuch grace,

That when my body vile
My ſoule ſhall exile,
Thou bring in ſhort while,
It in reſt and peace.

Edward

Edward the third of that name, ſonne of *Edward* the ſecond, and *Philip* ſole daughter of *Philip* the *Faire*, at fifteene yeeres of age began his Reigne (his father yet living) the ſix and twentieth of *Ianuary*, in the end of the yeer of Grace one thouſand three hundred and twenty ſix, and was crowned at *Weſtminſter*, upon the day of the *Purification* of our *Lady* next enſuing, at what time the earth yielded plenty, the Ayre temperate, the Sea quietneſſe, and the Church peace: hee confirmed the Liberties and Franchiſes of *London*, and gave *Southwarke* to bee under the Lord *Majors* rule and government. Of whoſe Reigne it was thus predicted.

Edward *the third made King.*

The ſpirits of many Lions ſhall conſpire,
To make one (by infuſion) ſo intire:
He by his mighty courage ſhall reſtore
What his ſire loſt, and Grandſire wonne before:
Neptune *his Navall triumphs ſhall advance.*
His Coat he quarters with th'Flower of France,
And after mauger the Canicular Tyke,
Tweed *ſhal he paſſe and win again the Wyke.*
A numerous iſſue ſhall his Lioneſſe bring,
Black ſhall the firſt be, and though never King,
Yet ſhall he Kings captive, but ere mature,
Dye muſt this brave Whelp of a Calenture,
And then behind him ſhall he leave a Kid
To undo all, both ſire and grandſire did.

The effect of all theſe will ſucceed in their order: in the firſt yeere of this Kings Reigne, the late King

The death of K. Edward.

King *Edward* was miserably slaine, and put to a most cruell death by the meanes of Sir *Roger Mortimer*, who notwithstanding in the Parliament after was made Earle of *March*: the same yeere the foure and twentieth of *Ianuary*, the young King married the Lady *Philip*, daughter to the Earle of *Henault*, in the City of *Yorke*, and soone after cald a Parliament at *Northampton*, to which by the meanes of Sir *Roger Mortimer* and the old Queene, an unprofitable and dishonorable peace was made with the *Scots*, who caused the King to release them of all fealty and homage, and delivered up to them all the old Writings sealed by their Kings and chiefe Lords of their Land, with all Charters and Patents, and many rich Jewels, which had before beene wonne from them by the Kings of *England*, amongst which the blacke Crosse of *Scotland*, is especially named, and the yeere following, *David* the son of *Robert le Bruce*, King of *Scots*, married *Iane* sister to the King of *England*, whom they after to the derision of the *English* called, *Iane make peace*, and amongst other taunting Songs made of our Nation, this was one.

A Parliament held at Northampton.

The Scots *taunt the English.*

Long beards heartlesse,
Painted bodies witlesse:
Gay coats graceless,
Maketh England *thriftlesse.*

But these merry and jigging tunes were turned to

to their moſt lamentable *Ay mee's*, within few moneths after.

During the Kings minority all the affaires of the Realme were managed by Sir *Roger Mortimer* and the Mother Queene, And the great perſons appointed to that purpoſe were vilified, and not ſet by: which Sir *Roger* in imitation of K. *Arthur*, was ſaid to keep a round Table, to which many noble Knights belonged, to his infinite coſt and expence. But howſoever in the third yeere of the King, the ſaid Sir *Roger* was ſurprized in *Nottingham* Caſtle, though the keyes were day and night in his owne keeping, and ſent to the Tower, who was accuſed of the Lords of the Parliament, of theſe particulars following, firſt of the bloudy murder of *Edward* of *Carnarvan* in *Berkley* Caſtle, ſecondly, that he had confederated with the *Scots* againſt the honour of the King; thirdly, that hee had received great ſummes of money from Sir *Iames Douglas* Captaine of the *Scots*, delivering unto him the Charter called *Ragman*, to the *Scots* great advantage, and impoveriſhing of *England*: Fourthly, that hee had ingroſt into his hands much of the Kings treaſure, which he had riotouſly waſted to his owne uſe, by which meanes the King was forc't to borrow of his friends: fiftly, that he was more private and familiar with Queene *Iſabel* the Kings Mother, then was to Gods pleaſure and the Kings honour: of which Articles being convicted, hee was by authority of the ſaid Parliament

The pride of Sir Roger Mortimer.

Articles objected by the Parliament againſt Mortimer.

judged to death; and upon Saint *Andrews* Eve following at *London*, drawne and hanged.

The death of Mortimer.

In his fourth yeere about the beginning of *Auguſt*, Sir *Edward Baliol*, the ſonne of Sir *Iohn Baliol*, ſometime King of *Scots*, obtained ſuch favour of King *Edward*, that with the aide of Sir *Henry Beaumont*, Sir *David Stocley*, Sir *Ieſſerey Mowbray*, and two thouſand *Engliſhmen*, they entred *Scotland* by Sea, whence drew to them ſuch multitude, that in ſhort time, Sir *Edward* was Lord of a great Heaſt: and kept his way till he came to a place called *Gladiſmore*, (or as ſome write) *Crakiſmore*, where hee was encountred with the power of *Scotland*, where betwixt them was fought a ſharpe and cruell battaile, in which a great multitude of the Natives was ſlaine, by reaſon whereof hee was crowned King at the Towne of *Stone* ſhortly after, and met with the King at *New-caſtle*, where *Edward* received of him fealty and homage for the Crowne of *Scotland*: but ſoone after the *Scots* laid plots againſt his life, which he narrowly eſcaped, being forc't to flie from place to place, and hide himſelfe, which King *Edward* hearing, with a ſtrong army pierced the Realme of *Scotland*, and laid ſiege to the Towne of *Barwick*.

Sr. Edward Balioll *crowned* K. *of* Scots

K. Edward *of England beſiegeth* Barwick.

Upon the nineteenth of *Iuly*, the *Scots* with a mighty power made thither, with purpoſe to remove the ſiege, whom King *Edward* met, and encountred on *Halidon* Hill, giving them battaile, over whom he had a triumphant victory, in-

inſomuch that hee ſlue of them ſeven Earles, nine hundred Knights and Bannerets, four hundred Eſquires, and of the common people, two and thirty thouſand, in which battail were ſlain of the *Engliſh*, but 15 perſons, after which glorious victory the Captaine of *Barwick* the morrow following, being Saint *Margarets* day, yielded to the King both the Town and Caſtle, which verifies that

The famous battaile at Hallidowne Hill.

——— *manger the Canicular Tyke,*
Tweed *ſhall he paſſe, and ſet his foot in Wyke.*

Tyke is that which the Northerne men call a Dogge, and by the *Canicular Tyke* is meant the Dog-ſtarre: *Tweed* is the water which parteth the two Kingdomes of *England* and *Scotland*, and by *Wyke* (as is before remembred) meant the Towne of *Barwicke*, I only capitulate this one battaile, (of many) againſt the *Scots*, purpoſing the like compendiouſneſſe in his famous victories over the *French*.

During the diſſention betwixt the two Kings of *England* and *France*, which by no mediation could be atton'd, though there were many meetings to that purpoſe, the *French* King ſent a ſtrong Navy to Sea to take our *Engliſh* Merchants, and encountred with two good ſhips of *England*, called the *Edward* and the *Chriſtopher*, and after nine houres fight, in which were ſlaine of both parties about ſixe hundred men, the two ſhips were taken, and all the wounded

Engliſh ſhips taken by the French.

Englishmen alive cast overboard into the Sea: after King *Edward* in his fifteenth yeere in the moneth of *Iune*, tooke shipping, and sayled towards *Flanders*, where met him Sir *Robert Morley*, with the North Navy of *England*, so that his Fleet consisted of three hundred sayle, and at *Midsomer* upon Saint *Iohns* Eve, hee met and fought with the *French* Navy, which were foure hundred saile, which lay in waite for him neere to the Towne cald *Sluce*; their chiefe Admirals were Sir *Hugh Querret*, Sir *Nicholas Buchet*, and *Barbe Nore*, in *English* black beard: Betwixt these two Royall Fleets was a strong and bloudy fight which continued for the space of eight houres before it could be distinguisht which way the victory was likely to incline; yet in the end, by Gods mercy, and the manhood of the King, the *French* were chaced, and many of their ships burned and taken, amongst which were the ships of the two Admirals, *Querret* and *Buchet*, who maugre the *French* were hanged up in their owne Vessels, and amongst the rest were recovered the *Edward* and the *Christopher*, manned with the *French*: in this battaile the King himselfe was sore wounded in the thigh, and of the *French* were slain thirty thousand in that one Navall conflict: soon after, (or as some write) a little time before, by the advice of his confederate Princes, hee layed claime to the Crowne of *France*, as his rightfull inheritance, and for the more authority to countenauce it, hee quartered the *English Lions* with the

The French Admirals.

A glorious Sea-victory.

King Edward *lays claime to the Crowne of France.*

the *French Flower de Lyces*, as they remaine to this day, ſo that we ſee

Neptune *his Navall Triumphs did advance,*
(and)
He his Coat quarters with the Arms of France.

I am forc't to intermit many and divers conflicts and skirmiſhes, with winning of Forts and Caſtles, Challenges, that paſt betwixt the two Kings, with the particular valours and noble Geſts of ſundry of our Nation, to relate which would aſke a voluminous Tractate, where my confinement is to a meer epitomy of Chronicle, paſſing over all accidents ſaving what are moſt remarkable, which brings me to the eighteenth yeere of his Reigne. In which at a Parliament held at *Weſtminſter*, his eldeſt ſonne *Edward* was created Prince of *Wales*, and he in the yeer following, firſt inſtituted the famous & renowmed Order of the Garter, which was ſolemnized at *Windſor*, as it is continued to this day. In his one and twentieth yeere, hee landed in *Normandy*, and burnt and ſpoyled all the Country before him, waſting the Province of *Conſtantine*. Then he laid ſiege to *Caan* the chief City, and wonne it, and amongſt other he took there priſoners the Conſtable of *France*, and the Kings Chamberlaine, and all the ſpoyle of the City which was held to be ineſtimable, and ſent to his ſhips, which was conveighed into *England*.

King Edwards *eldeſt ſon created Prince of* Wales.

The Order of the Garter firſt inſtituted.

He then entred *France*, and coaſted towards *Paris*, to *Vernon*, to *Poyſie*, to Saint *German*, ſtill waſting as hee went. Then hee tooke and made uſe of all the Kings Royall Mannors and Palaces, and drunke his Wine, and occupied all ſuch ſtuffe and neceſſaries as he there found, and after his departing ſet them on fire, as Saint *German*, *Mount-joy*, *Pezzy*, &c. In ſo much that the *French* King thinking it a great diſhonour, both to him and the whole Nation, that the *Engliſh* ſhould pierce the heart of his Kingdom unfought with, hee therefore aſſembled all his prime *Chevalry*, and met with the *Engliſh* (farre inferiour to them in weakneſſe) neere to a town called *Creſſie*, and upon the twntie ſixt of *Auguſt*, was fought betwixt them a ſharpe and bloudy battaile, in which at the end King *Edward* was the triumphant Victor, where were at that time ſlaine of the *French* party, The King of *Bohemia*, ſonne to *Henry* the Emperour the ſeventh of that name, with the Duke of *Loraine*, the Earle of *Alonſon*, brother to the King, *Charles* Earle of *Bloys*, the Earles of *Flanders*, *Sancer*, *Harcourt*, and of *Fiennes*: with divers other, to the number of eight Biſhops and Earls, with ſeventeene Lords of name: and of Bannerets, Knights and Eſquires, more then ſixteene hundred, ſo that their owne Chroniclers report that the flower of *France* periſht in that battail: beſides of the commons, above eight thouſand, and the *French* King with a ſmall company ſore wounded, fled to a Towne called *Bray*, and there

The famous field of Creſſy *wonne by the Engliſh.*

The French King wounded.

there lay the night following.

Whom King *Edward* purſued not, being advertiſed of another great hoſt comming towards him, and therefore he kept the field, and ſet watches, and made great fires thorow the hoſt, and ſo continued till the munday following, upon which day early in the morning, appeared to them a new army of French men, of which they ſlew more in number than the Saturday before, and then having given thanks unto God for his great victorie, he marches towards *Bulloine*, and thence to *Calais*, to which he laid ſiege for the ſpace of a whole yeare: then came the French King with a numerous Army to remove him, but before his comming it was yeelded to King *Edward*, ſo that hee departed thence ſad and aſhamed. But King *Edward* ſtaied in the towne a month, and removed all the old Inhabitants which were French, and ſtored it with Engliſh, but eſpecially Kentiſh men, and having ſet all things in order, hee ſailed with great ttiumph into *England*, and arrived at *London* the twentie third day of October, where he was magnificently received of the Citizens, and ſo conveyed unto *Weſtminſter*.

A ſecond battell.

K. Edward *beſiegeth* Calais.

Calais *won by the Engliſh.*

We have hitherto ſpoke only of the father: it followes that ſome thing ſhould be ſaid of the ſon, the unparallel'd *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, not for his complexion, but for his terrour in battell, ſurnamed the Black Prince, who whilſt his father reſted him in *Calais*, with a puiſſant hoſt entred *Gaſcoyne*, and made ſpoyle at his pleaſure

Why Prince Edward *was called the Black Prince.*

pleasure through the whole Country, and with great riches and many noble prisoners, hee retyred himselfe to *Burdeaux*, and though the Earls of *Armineck* and of *Foyz*, of *Poytiers* and *Cleremont*, with *James de Burbon*, and many other Knights who had double the number to the Prince, were in his way, yet passed he from *Tholous* to *Nerbon*, and from *Nerbon* to *Burdeaux* without battaile, where having reposed himselt awhile, and rested his army, he sent many of his prisoners into *England*, and there entred the province of *Berray*, and therein made sharpe warre; which King *John* of *France* hearing, he gathered a mighty number of people, and made towards the Prince, who in the mean season was passed the River of *Loyer*, and encountred by divers of the Nobility of *France*, betwixt whom was a sharp conflict, but the fortune of the day fell to the Prince, who slue many of his enemies, and took divers prisoners; as the Lord of *Craon* and others of note to the number of fifty foure, whom he had sent to safe custody in *Burdeaux*, and himselfe sped to *Towres*, whither also K. *Iohn* came against the prince, who took his way to *Poytiers:* where we for a while leave him upon his march, &c.

P. Edward *victorious against the* French.

CHAP.

CHAP. 22.

The famous Battaile of Poytiers, *fought by* Edward, *ſirnamed the* Black Prince, *in which he tooke* John *the* French *King priſoner: His other victories in* France: *His conqueſt in* Spaine: *The death of the victorious Prince* Edward: *King* Edward *the Thirds death, and Epitaph:* Richard *the ſecond made King, a prediction of his Reigne: The inſurrection of the Commons: The memorable Act of* William Walworth, *Lord* Major, *&c.*

WE left Prince *Edward* upon his march toward *Poytiers*: in keeping which way a *French* Army encountred him, but he chaced their multitude, and beſides many ſlaine took of them forty priſoners: amongſt which were the Earle of *Sancer*, the Earle of *Iurigny*, the Lord *Chaſterlin* Maſter of the Kings palace, and a Knight called Sir *Guilliam de Daneham*, whom hee alſo ſent to his rendevouz at *Burdeaux*, and ſoone after hee lodged him and his Hoaſt neer *Poytiers*: ſo that the Fronts of both Hoaſts lay within a quarter of a mile each of other, betwixt whom the Cardinall of *Pernigvort* ſent from pope *Innocent*

A ſecond battail againſt the French.

the sixt laboured to make a peace; but finding his endevour frustrate, hee retyred himselfe to *Poityers*, to attend the succesſe of the battaile, which was fought upon Monday the nineteenth of *September*, in the yeere of Grace, one thousand three hundred fifty six, and the sixt yeer of King *Iohn*: the manner followeth.

The famous battail of Poytiers.

The Duke of *Athenes*, with such of the Nobility as were in the Kings Vaward, about two a clocke in the afternoone set upon the *Englisſh* Hoast, which was strongly munified with wood and trees in the manner of a Barricadoe, so that the *French Cavalry*, could not approch them; but the shot of the *Englisſh* Archers was so violent, that it overturned horse and man: and whilest the Duke of *Athenes*, with Sir *Iohn Cleremont* Marshall of *France* and others, assaulted the prince and his people on one side, The Duke of *Normandy* King *Iohns* eldest son, and the Duke of *Orleance* the Kings brother, set upon him on another part, which two Dukes were Leaders of two strong Armies. But these three battails did little harme to the *Englisſh*, for by reason of their arrows the *French* were so gauled and wounded, that they fled, to the great disinay and discomfort of the King, and the rest of his people.

The manner of the battaile.

Who then in person came on with his mayn Hoast: but the *Englisſh* kept themselves whole without scattering, and received them on the points of their weapons with such dexterity and courage, that the *French* were forc't to give back,

back, of which the *Engliſh* taking the advantage, rowted their whole Army: in which battaile were ſlaine of men of note, the Duke of *Athenes*, the Duke of *Burbon*, Sir *Iohn Cleremont* Marſhall of *France*, Sir *Henry Camian* Banneret, who bore that day, the *Oriſlambe* (a ſpecial relick that the *French* Kings uſed in all battailes to have borne before them) the Biſhop of *Chabous*, with divers others, to the number of fifty foure Bannerets, Knights, and others.

Noble men of France *ſlaine in the battaile.*

And of priſoners taken in that battaile, were *Iohn* King of *France*, *Philip* his fourth ſonne, Sir *Iaques* of *Burbon*, Earle of *Poitou*, and brother to the Duke of *Burbon*, Sir *Iohn* of *Artoys*, Earle of *Ewe*, Sir *Charles* his brother, Earle of *Longevile*, Sir *Giffard* Couſin German to the *French* King, Sir *Iohn* his ſonne and heire, *William* Archbiſhop of *Sence*, Sir *Simon Melen* brother to the Earle *Cunlarvive*, and Earle of *Vandature*. The Earles of *Dampmartin*, of *Vendoſme*, of *Salisbruch*, of *Moyſon*, the Martiall *Denham* with others, as Bannerets, Knights, and men of name, (according to their owne Writers) fifteene hundred and above: from which battaile eſcaped *Charles* eldeſt ſon of King *Iohn*, and Duke of *Normandy*, with the Duke of *Anjoy*, and few others of name. And King *Edward* after due thanks given to Almighty God for his triumphant victory, retyred himſelfe to *Burdeaux* with his Royall priſoners, where the King and the reſt were kept till Eaſter following.

Iohn *King of* France *tooke priſoner.*

Noble men took priſoners.

Charles *Duke of* Normandy *eſcapeth from the battaile.*

In the one and thirtieth yeere of the King, the

sixteenth of *April*, Prince *Edward* being eight and twenty yeeres of age, tooke shipping with his prisoners at *Burdeaux*, and the foure and twentieth of *May*, was received with great joy by the Citizens of *London*, and thence conveyed to the Kings palace at *Westminster*, where the King sitting in his estate Royall, in *Westminster* Hall, after hee had indulgently entertained the Prince, he was conveyed to his lodging, and the *French* King royally conducted to the *Savoy*, where he lay long after, and in the Winter following were royall Justs held in *Smithfield*, at which were present, the King of *England*, the *French* King, the *Scotch* King (then prisoners) with many noble persons of all the three Kingdoms, the most part of the strangers being then prisoners.

Three Kings present at the Iusts in Smithfield.

Whilst K. *Iohn* remayned in *England*, which was for the space of 4 yeers and odde days, The king of *England* and the blacke Prince his son, with their Armies over-run the greatest part of *France*, during the time of *Charles* his Regency over the kingdome who was king *Iohns* eldest son, against whom they had many memorable victories, spoyling where they list, and sparing what they pleased: in so much that king *Edward* made his owne conditions ere any peace could be granted: at length the king was delivered, and royally conveyed into his country, who so well approved of and liked his entertainment here, that in the thirty seventh yeere of king *Edward*, he returned into *England*, and at *Eltham*

The Father and sonne victorious in France.

tham beſides *Greenwich*, dined with the king, and in the ſame afternoon, was royally received by the Citizens, and conveyed through *London* to the *Savoy*, which was upon the twenty fourth of *January*: but about the beginning of *March* following, a grievous ſickneſſe tooke him, of which he dyed the eight of *Aprill* following, whoſe body was after ſolemnly conveyed to St. *Denis* in *France*, and there royally interred.

King Iohn *dyeth at the Savoy.*

In the fortieth yeere of the king, one *Barthran de Cluicon* a *Norman*, with an Army of *Frenchmen*, entred the land of *Caſtile*, and warred upon *Peter* king of that Country, and within foure moneths chaced him out of his kingdome, and crowned *Henry* his baſtard brother in his ſtead, wherefore hee was conſtrained to flie to *Burdeaux*, and to demand aide of Prince *Edward*, who commiſerating his caſe, as being lawfull king, (howſoever of a tyrannous and bloudy diſpoſition) he granted his requeſt, ſo that hee aſſiſted *Peter* with his *Engliſh* Archers againſt the baſtard *Henry*, with his *French* Spearmen, whoſe two Armies met neere unto a town called *Doming*, where betwixt them was a long and cruell fight, but in the end the victory fell to the Prince, and *Henry* with his whole army were rowted: In which battail were taken *Barthran de Claicon*, and *Arnold Dodenham* Marſhall of *France*, with divers others as well *French* as *Britons*, and *Spaniards*, and ſlain to the number of five thouſand of the enemies, and of the

P. Edwards *victory in* Spaine.

princes Army sixteen hundred, after which hee enstated *Peter* in his kingdome, who after perfidiously denyed to pay the princes army.

For which he was after divinely punished, as also for killing his owne wife, the daughter to the Duke of *Burbon*; for his Bastard brother *Henry*, knowing how hee was justly abandoned by the *English*, having gathered new forces, gave him battaile, in which being taken, his brother commanded his head to be strooke off, which was immediately done: after which, *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, the Kings sonne, and *Edward* his brother Earle of *Cambridge*, married the two daughters of this *Peter* late King of *Castile*: *John* espoused *Constance* the elder, and *Edward Isabel* the younger, by which marriages the two brethren claimed to be inheritours to the Kingdome of *Castile* or *Spaine*.

The death of Don Peter.

John a Gaunts *title to* Spain.

In the one and fiftieth yeare of the King, upon the eighth of *June*, being *Trinity* Sonday, dyed that renowned souldier, *Edward* the black Prince in the palace of *Westminster*, whose body was after carried to *Canterbury*, and there solemnly interred, who in his life time was much beloved, both of the Commons and the whole kingdome, especially for removing from the kings person all such as had misled him in his age, by which the Common Weale was much oppressed: amongst others was the Lord *Latimer* noted for principall, and *Alice Pierce* the Kings Concubine, with Sir *Richard Skory*, all which were according to the Commons just complaint

The death of the blacke Prince.

Alice Pierce *the Kings Concubine.*

complaint, by the Prince removed: but hee was no ſooner dead, but the king contrary to his promiſe before made, called them again, admitting them to their former Offices, and Honours, and *Alice* his proſtitute to his wonted grace and favour.

In the two and fiftieth yeer, the two and twentieth day of *Iune* dyed at his Mannor of *Sheen*, now called *Richmond*, the royall and moſt victorious Prince king *Edward*, the third of that name, of whom it was truly predicted: *The death of K. Edward the third.*

The ſpirits of many Lions ſhall conſpire
To make one (by infuſion) ſo entire:
He, by his mighty courage ſhall reſtore,
What his ſire loſt and grandſire wonne before.

As alſo that of the unparalleld blacke Prince his ſonne, who died before his Father.

A numerous iſſue ſhall his Lioneſſe bring,
Black ſhall the firſt be, and though never King,
Yet ſhall he Kings captive, but ere mature,
Die ſhall this brave Whelp of a Calenture,
And then behind him ſhall he leave a Kid
To undoe all both ſire and grandſire did.

By the Kid is intended the Prince *Richard* his ſonne, who ſucceeded his grandfather in the Throne, and therefore ſo cald becauſe of his condition, ſo ſuiting with the nature of his predeceſſour *Edward* the ſecond, whom the prophet

phet for his dissoluteneſſe of life, and inability to manage a State, called a Goat, not a Lion: but to come to the ſtory, King *Edward* left behind him foure ſonnes, *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, *Iohn* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*, *Edward* of *Langley* Duke of *Yorke*, and *Thomas* of *Woodſtock* Earle of *Cambridge*, taking their ſirnames from the places where they had their birth, by whom, and the reſt of the Nobility, his body was conveyed from *Richmond* to *Weſtminſter*, and there ſolemnly and ſumptuouſly interred, over whoſe Tombe hung this inſcription.

K. Edwards *Royall Iſſue.*

His Epitaph.

Hic decus Anglorum, *flos Regum præterito-*
rum,
Forma futurorum: Rex clemens, pax populo-
rum:
Tertius Edwardus, *regni complens Iubilæum,*
Invictus pardus, pollens bellis Machabæum.

Which for the better underſtanding of the vulgar, I give you thus paraphraſed in Engliſh.

Here lyes our honour, flower of Kings forepaſt:
Pattern to future making peace to laſt,
Edward *the third, who raign'd a jubilee,*
In ſtrength a pard: valour a Machabee.

Richard the ſecond of that name, and ſonne of *Edward*, ſirnamed the *blacke prince*, eldeſt ſonne to *Edward* the third, a childe of the age of eleven yeers, began his Reign over the Realme of

Richard *the ſecond of that name made King.*

of *England*, the two and twentieth of *Iune*, in the yeere of Grace, one thouſand twenty ſeven, and upon the fifteenth of *July*, being the day of Saint *Swithen* enſuing, he was crowned at *Weſtminſter*: in the firſt yeer of whoſe Reigne about *Aprill*, landed in *Kent*, *Anne* the Daughter of *Charles* the fourth, Emperour of that name, late dead, and ſiſter to *Wenceſlaus* then Emperour, who by the *Major* and Citizens of *London* was honourably met upon *Black-heath*, and with great triumph conveyed vnto *Weſtminſter*, and the eight day of *May*, ſolemnely eſpouſed to King *Richard*, of whom it is thus predicted. 1327

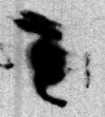
His Royall mariage.

A prediction of his Reigne.

Sport ſhall the young Kid in his youth, and play
'Gainſt whom ſhall riſe the Hedg-hog and the Gray:
And then the hobnayle and the clowted ſhoone,
Shall the Kids glory, ſtrive to eclipſe at noone:
But by a Daulphin (of the City lov'd)
That black diſaſtrous cloud ſhall be remov'd,
And Phœbus *in his wonted orbe ſhine cleare,*
Who when he ſhall in his full ſtrength appeare,
Foure princely Lions were to him allyde,
Gall ſhall be with his horns in his great pride.
At length a Fox clad in a skin of gold,
Shall ſnatch the Kid, from midſt of all his fold.

The inſurrection of the Commons.

The yeere before (which was the fourth of his Reign) was a great inſurrection of the Commons throughout the Land, eſpecially in *Kent* and *Eſſex*: the reaſon was, becauſe in the third



yeere at a parliament held at *Westminster*, there was granted to the king a Groat of every person male or female, above the age of fourteene yeeres. The chiefe Captains and Leaders of the Rebels Army were *Iack Straw*, *William Wawe*, *Wat Tyler*, *Iack Shepherd*, *Tom Miller*, and *Hob Carter*, these gathered great multitudes of the Commons, and assembled themselves upon *Blackheath*, three miles from *London*, and upon the eleventh of *Iune* entred the Tower of *London* where the King was then lodged, and took thence perforce Doctor *Sudbury*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Robert Hales* prior of Saint *Iohns*, and a white Frier Confessor to the King, whom with a mighty acclamation and voice they drew to the Tower-hill, and there cut off their heads.

The Captains of the Rebels.

They take the Tower.

Then by boats and barges they returned into *Southwarke*, and robbed all strangers of what Nation soever, thence they went to *Westminster*, and took thence all the Sanctuary men, and came unto the *Savoy*, which was the Duke of *Lancasters* house, and first pillaged it, and after set it on fire, and then to the palace of St. *Iohn* neere *Clerkenwell*, and spoyled it. After they searched the Temples and Innes of Court, making havock of all, burning their Law books, and killing as many Lawyers and Questmongers as they might find: that done, they went to St. *Martins le Grand*, releasing there all that had there took Sanctuary, with the prisoners of *Newgate*, *Ludgate*, & the two Counters, tearing their Regi-

Their robberies in Southwarke.

In Westminster.

In the Strand.

The Innes of Court.

Their mighty insolencies.

Registers and Books. The like they did to the Kings Bench and Marshalses in *Southwarke*, and moreover they did thorow the whole City of *London*, according to their own wils and pleasures.

When *Iack Straw* who was prime Commander above the rest, had executed all these insolencies, and saw no resistance against him, he was suddenly so tumoured with pride, that he thought no man worthy to be his peere, in so much that hee rode againe to the Tower, where he found the King but weakly attended, and in a manner, compeld him to ride through divers parts and streets of the City, and so conveyed him into Smithfield, where in the Kings presence, (to whom hee did small or no reverence at all) hee caused a proclamation to bee made, though using his Majesties name, yet to his owne wicked end and purpose, which *William Walworth* Fishmonger, and then Lord *Major* seeing, and not able to endure, his so great presumption and insolency, he stept towards, and first with a blow on the head stounded him with his Mace, and after with a short Dagger which he wore by his side, he wounded him to death, then with a Sword strook off his head, and lifted it upon the point of a Speare, and shewing it to the Rebels, Cryed out alowd, King *Richard*, God save King *Richard*, who when they saw their chiefe Captaine slaine, they fled in great disorder, of which many were taken and some slaine, and the remnant were

The pride of the Captain.

The death of Jack Straw.

The Rebels disperst.

chaced, so that both City and Suburbs were voided of them that night, being the fifteenth of *June*, making good what was predicted.

Sport shall the young Kid in his youth and play,
'Gainst whom shal rise the Hedghog & the gray,
And then the hobnail and the clowted shoon
Shall the suns glory strive to eclipse at noon,
But by a Daulphin (of the City lov'd)
This black disastrous cloud shall be removd, &c

By the young Kid is intended the wanton King, by the Hedghog, and the gray beasts frequent in the Country, *Iack Straw*, *VVat Tyler*, and the rest of the Captaines and Commons: by the *Daulphin*, *VVilliam VValworth*, who was free of the Fishmongers, and they give the *Daulphin* in their Escutchion, &c.

CHAP.

CHAP. 23.

The Duke of Gloceſter *by a Parliament reformeth the Common-wealth.* John *of* Gaunt *claymes his title in* Spain, *King* Richard *marrieth the* French *Kings Daughter: Difference betwixt the King and* Gloceſter. *His murder in* Calice: *The murmur of the Commons againſt the preſent government: The pride of the Dukes Court: The Dukes of* Hereford *and* Norfolke *baniſhed: King* Richard *depoſed, and* Henry *Duke of* Hereford *and* Lancaſter *made King.*

WHen the King ſaw the great manhood and courage of the Lord *Major* and his Brethren, the Aldermen his aſſiſtants, hee in his own perſon Knighted the ſaid *William Walworth*, with *Nicholas Bremble*, *John Philpot*, *Nicholas Twiford*, *Robert Laundor*, and *Robert Gayton* Alderman: and moreover, in the memory of that Noble Act, added to the Armes of the City the bloudy Dagger, as it remayneth to this day: In the eleventh yeere of this King, *Thomas* of *Woodſtocke* Duke of *Gloceſter*, and Uncle to the King; the Earle of *Arundell*, with the Earles of *Warwicke*,

The Lord Major and divers Aldermen Knighted by the King.

Darby and *Nottingham*, taking into their consideration, how much the land was misgoverned, and his Majesty mislead by some Sycophants neere about him, they met in counsell at a place called *Radecockbridg*, and having assembled a strong power came to *London*, and there caused the King to call a Parliament, whereof hearing *Alexander Nevell* Archbishop of *Yorke*, *Lionel Vere* Marquesse of *Divelin*, *Michael de la Poole* Earle of *Suffolke*, and Chancellour of *England*, fearing the censure of that high Court fled the Land, and dyed in forreigne Countries: Then the King by counsell of the fore-said Lords caused to be apprehended Sir *Robert Tresilian* chief Justice of *England*, Sir *Nicholas Brembre*, late *Major* of the City, Sir *John Salisbury*, of the Kings Houshold, Sir *John Beauchampe* Steward of the House, Sir *Simon Burleigh*, Sir *Thomas Bernes*, Sir *Robert Belknap*, with one *John Yske*, Serjeant at Arms, all which by the foresaid Parliament, were convict of Treason and put to death, some at *Tyburne*, some at *Towerhill*, and all such as fled with those that forsook the land, by the authority of that high Court, banished for ever.

A Parliament to rectifie the Commonweale.

Persons judged to death.

In the thirteenth yeare, *John a Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, with a strong army, sailed into *Spaine*, to claime the Kingdome in right of Lady *Constance* his wife, the daughter of *Don Peter*, with whom joyned the King of *Portugall* with his forces, so that of necessity the King of *Spain* was forced to treat with the Duke of peace and amity

Iohn a Gaunt clayms his title in Spain.

amity, the conditions were, that the King of *Spaine* should marry the Dukes eldest daughter, named *Constance*, and moreover should give unto the said Duke, to recompence the charges of his warre, so many wedges of gold as should load eight Chariots; and moreover during the lives of the said Duke and his wife, hee should at his proper cost and charges deliver unto the Dukes Assignes yearely ten thousand Markes of gold, within the towne of *Bayon*, which conditions being ratified, and assurance given for the performance thereof, the Duke departed with the King of *Portugall*, to whom shortly after hee married his second daughter the Lady *Anne*, so that the elder and the younger were made the two Queenes of *Spaine* and *Portugall*.

Honourable conditions of peace.

King *Richards* first wife being dead, afterhee maried *Isabel* the daughter of *Charles* the sixt K. of *France*, who was but 8. years of age, at whose espousalls in the *French* kings Court, many rich interchangable gifts passed betwixt them; as first the king of *England* gave the *French* king a Bason of gold and Ewer, who returned him three standing Cups of gold with covers, and a ship of Gold garnished with pearle and stones: at a second meeting, *Richard* gave him a curious Ouch set with rich stones, valued at five hundred Markes: then the *French* King gave him two Flagons of gold, and a Tablet of gold set with Diamonds, and in it the picture of St. *Michael*, a Tablet of gold with a Crucifixe, another with the image of the Trinity, and a fourth with

K. Richards *second marriage.*

Enterchangeable gifts betwixt the two Kings.

with the image of Saint *George*, all of them set with stones of great splendor, *Richard* then presented him with a Belt or *Bauldricke*, set with great Diamonds, Rubies, and Emeraulds, which for the riches thereof, the King wore upon him so often as they met together: many other presents past betwixt them, and a full peace was concluded betweene them for thirty yeares, and amongst other things King *Richard* delivered up *Brest*, which had beene long held by the *English*.

Peace concluded betwixt England *and* France.

The yeare after in the Moneth of *February*, the King held a magnificent Feast at *Westminster* Hall, whither pressed divers Souldiers lately discharged from *Brest*, whose mindes when the Duke of *Gloster* the Kings Vncle understood, he went to his Majesty and said, Sir doe you take notice of yon Souldiers? who asked him again what they were? The Duke replyed, these be your subjects & souldiers cashiered from *Brest*, who have done you good service, and have now no meanes to live upon, who have been ill paid, and now are worse rewarded: To whom the King answered, it was my will they should have been well paid, but if ought have failed therein, let them petition to our Treasurer: at length the Duke said, but it savoureth of small discretion to deliver up a strong Fort with ease, which was got with great difficulty by your Progenitors: at which the King changed countenance, and said, Vncle how spake you these words? which the Duke with great vehemency uttered again:

The Duke of Glosters *bold replye to the King.*

againe: whereat the King being more moved, replyed: Thinke you I bee a Merchant or foole to ſell my Land? by St. *John Baptiſt* nay, &c. For theſe words thus uttered on both ſides great rancor was kindled betwixt the King and Duke, which was never extinguiſhed, till by the conſent of the K. his uncle was baſely murdered.

For the Duke purpoſing to remove ſome who were potent about the king, called to him the Earles of *VVarwicke*, of *Arundel*, and of *Nottingham*, who was Marſhall of *England*, and of the Clergy the Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury*, with the two Abbots of St. *Albans* and *VVeſtminſter*, and theſe were ſolemnly ſworne to ſupplant from their authority the Duke of *Lancaſter*, the Duke of *Yorke*, with others prejudiciall to the good of the kingdome. But *Nottingham* contrary to his oath, revealed all to the king; who preſently, whilſt the other thought themſelves ſecure, called another Councell, in which it was decreed, that the Earles of *Arundell* and *Warwicke* ſhould bee cenſured and brought to the King, who in perſon arreſted his Vncle Sir *Thomas* of *VVoodſtock*, (ſome ſay at *Plaſhy* in *Eſſex*, others at *Greenwitch*) in the night time, and taking him in his bed, firſt ſent him to the Tower, and thence had him ſecretly conveyghed to *Callis*, where he was piteouſly murthered. After, the 2 Earles of *Arundel* & *Warwick* were judged and executed: After was called a parliament, in which divers of the Nobility had more honourable titles conferred upon them: And other

A ſecond purpoſe for reformation.

A perfidious act in the Earle of Notingham

The murder of the Duke of Gloſter.

upſtarts neither of birth nor quality, were advanced to office and honour, in which parliament alſo, many true heires were diſ-inherited, &c.

The rumour of the Commons, and the cauſes thereof.

For which the people greatly murmured againſt the King and his Councell, pretending that the revenues of the Crowne were waſted upon unworthy perſons: for which divers exactions were put upon the Commons: that the chiefe rulers about the King were of low birth, and little reputation; and men of honour kept out of office and favour; that the Duke of *Gloſter* was ſecretly murdered without proceſſe of Law; and the Earles of *Arundel* and *Warwicke* put to death contrary to the Kings owne proclamation, with divers others, to the number of eight and thirty ſeverall Articles, all which at his depoſing were publickly proteſted againſt him.

The eſtate of the Kings Court.

Harding the Chronologer reports, that King *Richard* was prodigall, ambitious, and luxurious, to whoſe Court reſorted at their pleaſures ten thouſand perſons, pretending buſineſſe there; that in his kitchin were three hundred Serviters, and in every office to the like number: of Ladies, Chamberers, and Landreſſes, three hundred, who exceeded in coſtly and ſumptuous apparell, and farre above their degrees: The very groomes and yeomen were cloathed in ſilke, ſattin, and damaske, ſcarlet, imbroydery, gold chaines and Gold-ſmiths worke were then common: ſuch was the pride then in the

The great pride of the Court.

Court:

Court: It was also commonly voyc'd that hee had let to farme the revenues of the Crowne to *Bushy*, *Baggot* and *Green*, which caused the Nobility also with the Commons to grudge against the King and his government. And this yeare being the one and twentieth of his reign, died *John a Gaunt*, the Duke of *Lancaster*, at the Bishop of *Elyes* Palace in *Holborne*, and was buried on the North side of the Quire in *Paules*, where his Tombe remaineth to this day.

The death of Iohn a Gaunt Duke of Lancaster.

This yeare also fell a great difference betwixt the two Dukes of *Hereford* (who was sonne to *Iohn a Gaunt*) and the Duke of *Norfolke*, the cause was (after some Writers) that the two Dukes riding from the Parliament, the Duke *Norfolke*, said unto the other: Sir, you see how unstedfast the King is in his word, and how shamefully hee putteth his Kinsmen to death, exiling some and imprisoning others, and no doubt, what hath hapned to them, may in time fall upon us, &c. of which words the Duke of *Hereford*, accused him unto the King, which the one affirming, the other denying, a day of battaile was appointed them at *Coventry*, upon the eleventh of *September*, where the King and the greatest part of the Nobility were present: where both appearing in the Lists, and ready for the Combat, the King threw down his warder, and staid the fight, and forthwith banished the Duke of *Hereford* for ten yeeres, and the Duke of *Norfolke* for ever: upon which sentence, *Hereford* sayled into *Britaine*, and *Norfolke*, after

Differences betwixt the two Dukes of Hereford and Norffolke.

The two Dukes banished the Realme.

passing divers Countries, lastly, came to *Venice*, and there ended his life.

In his two and twentieth yeere, the common fame ran, that he had farmed the Realm of *England* to Sir *VVilliam Scroop* Earle of *VViltshire*, and Treasurer, and to Sir *Iohn Bushy*, Sir *Iohn Bagot*, and Sir *Henry Green*, and in the moneth of *Aprill*, the King with a potent Host sayled into *Ireland*, leaving for his *Pro-rex* in *England*, his Uncle *Edmund Langley*, Duke of *Yorke*. In which Voyage he prospered well, and quieted the realme to his pleasure, and whether it were for some noble act done, or out of his grace and bounty (I cannot say) hee there Knighted *Henry* sonne to the Duke of *Hereford* (then in exile) which *Henry* after his Fathers death was crowned King of *England* by the name of *Henry* the ~~fourth~~ fourth

The Kings iourney into Ireland.

Whilst King *Richard* was thus busied in *Ireland*, the Duke of *Hereford*, late banisht with the Archbishop of *Canterbury* who had before left the Realme, and *Thomas* sonne to the Earle of *Arondell* late beheaded, these with others being a small company in number landed at *Ravenspurre*, in the North, and under pretence of laying claime to the Dukedome of *Lancaster*, due to him by *Iohn of Gaunt* his Father deceased, he raised the people as hee went, to whom multitudes assembled, being weary with the misgovernment of King *Richard*: who hearing how the estate in *England* then stood, made speedy returne from *Ireland*, and in the beginning

The Duke of Hereford *lands at* Ravenspurre.

ning of *September*, landed in *Milford* Haven, and ſped him thence to Flint-caſtle in *VVales*, intending thither to gather more ſtrength to oppoſe the Dukes proceedings.

The King lands in Wales.

Who in the interim proclayming himſelfe Duke of *Lancaſter*, in the right of his Father *Iohn a Gaunt*, came to *Briſtow*, where without reſiſtance, hee ſeiſed upon Sir *William Scroope* Earle of *Wiltſhire* and Treaſurer of *England*, Sir *John Buſhy* and Sir *Henry Green*, with Sir *John Bagot*, who eſcaped and fled into *Ireland*, but the other he there judged and put to execution, which the King (being then in Flint Caſtle) hearing, he much doubted his ſafety, and ſo did all theſe who were then about him, therefore Sir *Thomas Percy* Earle of *Worceſter*, and Steward of the Kings Houſhold contrary to his Allegiance, broke his white Staffe openly in the Hall, willing every one to ſhift for himſelfe, by reaſon of which the King was forſaken of all his people, and ſoone after ſurprized and preſented to the Duke, who put him under ſafe keeping, and himſelfe haſted towards *London*.

The Earle of Wiltſhire *with others executed.*

The King taken and preſented to the Duke.

Who comming neere to the City, ſent the King ſecretly to the Tower, of which ſome ill diſpoſed perſons ambuſht him in the way, and would have ſlain him becauſe of his former miſgovernment, but the Citizens enformed of their malicious purpoſe, reſcued him from their fury: then the Duke comming to *London*, (by conſent of the King) a Parliament was begun the thirteenth of *September*. In which many ac-

The hate of the Commons to the King.

cusations and Articles concerning his misruling the Realme, to the number of eight and thirty the King was charged with: and for which the King subscribing (willing as it was then given out to his owne depolement, hee was deprived from all Kingly Majesty: the manner of the proceedings therein were too long to relate) which sentence being publisht and openly read in Parliament, *Henry* Duke of *Hereford*, and now of *Lancaster*, rising from the place where hee before sate, and standing where all might behold him: first, making the signe of the Crosse upon his forehead, and after on his brest (silence being commanded) he spake as followeth: *In the name of the Father, the Sonne, and the holy Ghost*, I *Henry* of *Lancaster*, Clayme the Realme of *England*, with the Crowne, and all the appurtenances thereto belonging, as I am rightly discended from the right Line of the bloud comming from that good Lord K. *Henry* the third, and through the right that God of his grace hath sent me, with the help of my kinred and friends to recover the same, which was in point to be undone, for default of good governance and justice, &c.

King Richard *deposed.*

The Duke of Hereford *claymes the Crowne.*

Which having spoken, hee sate downe in his place: then every one hearing his clayme, spake what hee thought; and after some distance of time, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, knowing the minds of Lords, stood up, and asked the Commons if they would assent with the Nobility in their election, which they thought to be

need-

needfull, and for the good of the Kingdome: to which, with an unanimous voice they said, yea, yea: after which the Archbishop approching the Duke, uttered some words to him in private: which done hee arose, and taking him by the hand, led him unto the Kings Seat, and placed him therein; after made a long Oration to that noble Assembly, the effect whereof was to prove the Dukes Title to the Crowne, and to justifie the deposing of the King, verifying what was before predicted of him.

Foure Princely Lions were to him allide,
Gall shall he with his horns in his great pride.
At length a Fox clad in skin of gold,
Shall snatch the Kid, from midst of all his fold.

By the foure Lions are figured his foure Princely Uncles sonnes to *Edward* the third, whom he severally injured, preferring men raised from nothing, to be eminent above them both in honour and office: and by the Fox *Henry* of *Balwarke*, who clothed himselfe with all the golden ornament of Regall Majesty, and snatcht him from the midst of all the fold, that was from amongst his own subjects and people, and after caused him to bee put to a violent and cruell death.

CHAP.

CHAP. 24.

The Coronation of Henry *the fourth, with his great Feast held in* Westminster *Hall. A great Conspiracy intended against him, but prevented, the lamentable murder of King* Richard *the second in* Pomfret *Castle, by Sir* Pierce *of* Exton, *his valour at his death. His Epitaph. The great riches found in his treasury: A prosecution of sundry passages in the Reigne of King* Henry. *He prepares a journey for the* Holy land, *but is prevented by death.*

HEnry the fourth of that name and sonne to *Iohn a Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, tooke possession of the whole Dominion of *England*, upon the last day of *September*, in the yeere of Grace one thousand three hundred fourescore and nineteene: after which he made new Officers cleane through the Kingdome, and then gave order for his Coronation; and the Eve before hee in the Tower made 41 knights of the Bath, of which three were his owne sonnes, and three Earles, and five Lords, &c. Then the morrow after being Monday the thirteenth of *October*, he was crowned at *Westminster*, by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, after which

One and forty Knights of the Bath made.

King Henries Coronation.

which ſolemnity ended, a great and ſumptuous feaſt was held in the great Hall, where the king being ſate in the middeſt of the table, the Arch-biſhop of *Canterbury*, with three other Prelates, were placed at the right hand of the ſame table, and on the left hand the Arch-biſhop of *York*, with foure other of the Clergy: *Henry* the kings eldeſt ſonne ſtood by his Father on his right hand with a ſword poyntleſſe; and the Earle of *Northumberland* new made Lord Conſtable with a poynted ſword on his left hand, both ſwords being held upright: Before the king ſtood all dinner time, the dukes of *Anmerl*, of *Surry*, and of *Exceter*, with two other Earles, and the Earle of *Weſtmerland*, late made Marſhall, rov'd about the Hall, with many Tip Staves to make roome, that the Officers with more eaſe might ſerve the Tables.

The manner of his great feaſt in Weſtminſter *Hall.*

Of which, the chiefe upon the right ſide of the hall was begun by the Barons of the Cinque ports: and at the Table next the Cupboord upon the left hand, ſate the Lord Major, and the Aldermen of *London*, which Major being *Drewe Barendine* Goldſmith, was preſented (according to the cuſtome) with a cup of gold: after the ſecond courſe came in, Sir *Thomas Dimocke*, armed at all poynts, and ſitting upon a good Steed road to the higher part of the Hall, and before the King cauſed a Herald to make Proclamation, that whoſoever would affirme King *Henry* was not lawfull inheritour to the Crown and Kingdome of *England*, he was there

The Kings Champion.

ready to wage battaile against him, which Proclamation hee caused to bee made after in three other parts of the Hall, in French and English, with many more observances at such solemnities exercised and done, which feast being ended, the morrow after being tuesday, the parliament was againe begunne: of this King and his reigne it was thus predicted.

The propheſie of his reigne.

The Foxe being earth'd according to his mind,
In the Kids den, a Magazine ſhall finde,
Yet all that treaſure can his life not ſave,
But rather bring him to a timeleſſe grave:
Meane time ſhall ſtudy many a forreſt beaſt,
By a new way to kill the King in jeſt:
But crafty Rainold *ſhall the plot prevent,*
And turne it all to their owne detriment
Wales *and the north againſt him both ſhall riſe,*
But he, who ſtill was politicke and wiſe,
Shal quell their rage: much trouble he'll indure,
And after, when he thinks himſelfe ſecure,
Hoping to waſh the Kids blood from his hand,
Purpoſe a voyage to the Holy Land,
But faile: Yet in Hieruſalem *ſhall dye,*
Deluded by a doubtfull augury.

What was done in the Parliament.

In the former parlament were many Challenges of the peers one against the other, which came to none effect; but one thing was there confirmed, that whosoever had hand in the good Duke of *Gloſters* death should dye as traitors: For which divers found guilty after suffered, moreover

moreover, ſundry acts made in the time of *Richards* reigne, were diſannulled and made voyd, and others held more profitable for the kingdomes good and Common-weales, enacted in their ſtead.

King Richard removed to Pomphret.

Then was King *Richard* removed from the Tower, and thence conveighed to *Leedes*, and after to the Caſtle of *Pomphret*: there was proviſion made for the King to keep his Chriſtmas at *Windſor*, in which interim the Dukes of *Aumerle*, of *Surrey*, and of *Exeter*, with the Earles of *Salisbury* and of *Gloſter*, with others of their affinity, Lords, Knights, and Eſquires, made great proviſion for a Maske to be preſented before the King upon Twelfth night, which grew neere, and all things were in readineſſe for the performance thereof: But that day in the Morning, came ſecretly unto the King the Duke of *Aumerle*, and diſcovered unto him, that he with the foreſaid Lords & gentlemen had made a ſolemne conjuration to kill him in the ſaid Mask, therefore adviſed him to provide for his ſafety: upon which notice given, the King departed privately from *Windſor*, and came that night to *London*: upon which the Lords finding their plot to be diſcovered, they fled weſtward: but the King cauſed ſpeedy purſuit after them: ſo that the Duke of *Surry*, and the Earle of *Salisbury*, were taken at *Cicester*, Sir *Thomas Blunt*, Sir *Benet Saly*, and *Thomas Wintercell* at *Oxford*, Sir *Iohn Holland* Duke of *Exeter* at *Pitwell* in *Eſſex*, and divers others in ſeverall places;

A conſpiracy of the Lords againſt King Henry.

the Noble men were beheaded, the rest drawne and quartered; but all of their Heads set upon the *Bridge* gate at *London*, approving the premises.

Meane time shall study many a forrest beast,
By a new way to kill the Foxe in jest:
But crafty Rainold *shall the plot prevent,*
And turne it all to their owne detriment.

The Foxes policy.

The King having well considered of this great conspiracy, and that they intended by his death to restore the imprisoned King to his diadem, he bethought himselfe that he could live in no safety whilst the other was breathing, and therefore he determined of his death, and to that purpose called unto him one Sir *Pierce* of *Exton* to see his will executed, who presently poasted to *Pomphret*, and with eight more well armed entred the Castle, and violently assaulted him with their Polaxes and Halberds in his Chamber, who apprehending their purpose, and seeing his owne present danger, most valiantly wrested one of their weapons from him, with which he manfully acquitted himselfe, and slew foure of the eight before he himselfe fell; but at the last he was basely wounded to death by the hand of Sir *Pieree* of *Exton*, whose body was after laid in the Minster at *Pomphret* to the publicke view, that all men might be satisfied of his death, and was after brought up to *London*, and exposed to all eyes in *Pauls*, least any man

The Death of K. Richard.

should

should after pretend to lay any plots for his liberty.

And now King *Henry* being in peaceable and quiet possession of the Kingdomes, thought it time to rifle his predecessors Coffers, in whose Treasury he found in ready Coyne three hundred thousand pound sterling, besides Plate, Jewels, and rich Vessels, as much (if not more) in value: Besides in his Treasurers hands hee found so many gold Nobles, and other summes, that all of them put together amounted to seven hundred thousand pounds sterling: yet could not all this summe afford him a better funerall than in the poore Friery of *Langley*, which after by *Henry* the Kings sonne in the first yeare of his reigne was removed thence, and with great solemnity interred amongst the Kings in the Chappell of *Westminster*: All this processe verifying the former prediction.

What King Richards treasure amounted to at his death.

The Foxe being earth't according to his mind,
In the Kids den, a Magazin shall find:
Yet all that treasure can his life not save,
But rather bring him to a timelesse grave.

Over his Tombe in the Chappell the King caused these Verses following to be inscribed.

Prudens & mundus, Ricardus *jure secundus,*
Per fatum victus jacet hic sub marmore pictus,
Verus sermone fuit & plenus ratione,
Corpore procerus, animo prudens ut Homerus.

K. Richards *Epitaph.*

Ecclesiam favit, elatos suppeditavit,
Quemvis prostravit, regalia qui violavit.

Thus Englished:

Wise and cleane Richard, *second of that name,*
Conquered by fate, lyes in this Marble frame.
True in his speech: whose reason did surpasse:
Of feature tall, and wise as Homer *was:*
The Church he favoured, he the proud subdude,
Quelling all such as Majesty pursude.

Concerning which Epitaph one of our *English* Chronologers, seeing how it savoured more of flattery then truth, thus expresst himself.

But yet, alas, though this meeter or rime,
Thus death embelisht this Noble Princes fame,
And that some Clerk which favoured him sometime
List, by his comming, thus to enhance his name,
Yet by his story appeareth in him much blame.
Wherefore to Princes is surest memory,
Their lives to expresse in vertuous constancie.

The rebellion of Owen Glendour.

In the second yeere of King *Henries* Reigne, *Owen Glendour* rebelled in *Wales*, against whom the King entred the Countrey with a strong army, but at the Kings comming hee fled up to the Mountaines whom the King for the endangering his Hoast, durst not follow, but returned

turned without deeming any thing worthy note. In the yeere following Sir *Thomas Percy* Earle of *Worcester*, and Sir *Henry Piercy*, sonne and heire to the Earle of *Northumberland*, gathered a great power, and upon the one and twentieth day of *July*, met with the King and his army, neere unto *Shrewsbury*, betwixt whom was fought a cruell and bloudy battail, but at length the King was victor: in which fight *Thomas Percy* Earle of *Worcester* was taken, and his Nephew, Sir *Henry*, with many a brave Northerne man was slaine. And upon the Kings part, the Prince was wounded in the head, and the Earle of *Stafford* with many others slaine. It was observed that in this battail father fought against sonne, sonne the father, brother the brother, and uncle the nephew: the twenty fift of *July* following, was Sir *Thomas Percy* beheaded at *Shrewsbury*, and in *August* after, the Ducheſſe of *Britain* landeth at *Plimoth* in *Cornwall*, and from thence conveyed to *Winchester*, where shee was solemnely espoused to King *Henry*.

The battaile at Shrewsbury.

K. Henries second mariage with the Ducheſſe of Britain.

Soone after *Richard Scroop* Archbishop of *Yorke*, with the Lord *Mowbray* Marshall of *England*, with others to them allyed, made a new insurrection against the King, with purpose to supplant them, to whom the King gave battaile on this side *Yorke*, where after some losse on both sides, the King had the better of the day, the Archbishop and the Martiall being both taken in the field, and soone after beheaded: in that

A new insurrection.

that Kings Reigne was the Conduit builded in *Cornwall*, as it now standeth. The Market of the *Stocks* at the lower end of *Cheapside*, and the *Guild hall* of *London* new edified, and of a small cottage and ruinous and decayed house made such a goodly structure, as it appeares to this day. Moreover, the famous and stately Bridge of *Rochester*, with the Chappell at the foot of the said Bridge was fully perfited and finished, at the sole charge and cost of Sir *Robert Knolls* who in the time of *Edward* the third had atchieved many brave and memorable victories in *France* and *Britain*, who also re-edified the body of the White Friers Church in *Fleetstreet*, to which place hee left many good Legacies, and there lyes buried: the foundation of which place was first laid by the Lord *Gray Cotner:* but to carry our prediction along with the premisses, to prove that they differ not in the least circumstance;

Sumptuous buildings during this kings Reigne.

Sir Robert Knolls.

> Wales *and the North, against him both shal rise,*
> *But he who still was politick and wise,*
> *Shall quell their rage, &c.*

Divers turnaments & justs performed in Smithfield betwixt Englishmen and strangers.

Wee read also of divers justs and martiall exercises performed in *Smithfield*, in the presence of the King, the Nobility and Ladies, in his sixt yeere: the Lord *Morif* a Baron of *Scotland*, challenged *Edmund* Earle of *Kent*, in which the Earle bore himselfe so valiantly, that to him was given the honour of the Turnament, and

in

in the tenth yeere came the *Seneſchall* of *Henalt*, with a brave company of his owne Countrimen and ſtrangers to performe the like martiall exerciſes in the ſame place before the King. Againſt the *Seneſchall* himſelf ran the Earle of *Somerſet*, to whom was given the honour of the firſt day: upon the ſecond day came in a Knight *Henalder* as Challenger, againſt whom roſe as defendant Sir *Richard Arondell*, who after certain courſes run on horſback with their Lances, they combated on foot with Axes, where the *Henalder* had the better, for he brought him on his knee: the third day came a third challenger whom Sir *Iohn Cornwayle* encountred, and put to the worſt: upon the fourth day appeared an Eſquire *Henalder*, and was met by *Iohn Cheyney*, who at the ſecond courſe overthrew his adverſary horſe and man, for which the King inſtantly made him Knight: on the fift day came a fift challenger, him one *Iohn Steward* an Eſquire oppoſed, and came off with honour. Againſt the ſixt challenger, came in a Gentleman called *William Porter*, who ſo couragiouſly demeaned himſelfe, that there hee wonne his Knighthood. Againſt the ſeventh Champion appeared *Iohn Standiſh* Eſquire, whom for his valour there ſhewne, the King alſo Knighted: a *Gaſcoigne* alſo demeaned himſelfe ſo well againſt another ſtranger, that he was alſo made knight: upon the eight and laſt day, came in two *Henalders* challengers', againſt whom came two *Engliſh* Brothers who were of the Garriſon at *Calice*, be-

The honour fals to the Engliſh.

twixt whom was so long and so violent a bickering, that they were commanded by the King to cease combat, lest any of them who so well had fought, might in the end have come off with disgrace. Thus this challenge was finished to the great honour of the King, who bountifully feasted the Strangers, and with rich gifts sent them backe into their Countries.

A bill put up into the Parliament house by the commons.

In the eleventh yeere in a Parliament held at *Westminster*, the Commons put up a Bill unto the King, to take all the temporall lands out of the Clergy mens possessions, the effect whereof was, that the Temporalities disorderly wasted by the Churchmen, which might suffice to find to the King, fifteene Earles, fifteene hundred Knights, six thousand two hundred Esquires, and an 100 Almes houses to the relieſe of poore people, more then were at that time in the land, and besides all those that the King might put yearely into his coffers twenty thousand pound, and of this by particulars they made manifest proofe, to which bill no answer was made, but that the King would take thereof further deliberation.

The effect of the bill.

In his fourteenth yeer, the King cald a Counsell at White Friers, in which it was concluded that speedy provision should bee made for the Kings Voyage to visit the holy Sepulchre, but after the Feast of Christmasse, whilst hee was praying at Saint *Edwards* shrine, to take there his leave, and speed him upon his journey, so grievous a sickneſſe tooke him that they feared he

The King prepares a voyage for the Holy Land.

he would there have expired, wherefore they bare him to the Abbots Palace, and brought him into a chamber, and laid him upon a pallat by the fire, who when he came to himſelfe, aſked what place he was in? thoſe that attended him, told him that it belonged to the Abbot of *Weſtminſter*, and finding himſelfe ſo extreamly ſick, he demanded if that chamber had any particular name? they anſwered that it was called the *Hieruſalem:* who preſently replyde, then thanks be to the father of Heaven, who hath thus greatly admoniſht mee of mine end: For now I know that I ſhall die in this chamber according to a propheſie long ſince ſpoke of mee, which ſaid I ſhould die in *Hieruſalem*, which ſpoken, and having made his peace with Heaven, hee in the ſame place departed this life, the twentieth of *March*, after hee had reigned fourteene yeers five moneths, and one and twenty days, ſtill upholding the former prediction.

The King falls ſick.

The King died the twentieth of March.

——————much trouble hee'l indure,
And after when he thinks himſelfe ſecure,
Hoping to waſh the kids blood from his hand,
Purpoſe a voyage to the Holy Land*:*
But faile: yet in Hieruſalem *ſhall die,*
Deluded by a doubtfull Augury.

This King left behind him foure ſonnes, *Henry* who was King after him: *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, *Iohn* Duke of *Bedford* and *Humphrey* Duke of *Gloceſter*, and two Daughters, the one

Queen of *Denmarke*, the other Ducheſſe of *Bavaria*, or *Barr*, His body was after conveyed by water from *Weſtminſter* to *Feverſham* in *Kent*, and thence to *Canterbury*, where he was royally interred.

Chap. 25.

The Coronation of Henry *the fift: A propheſie of his Reigne: His victorious Battaile over the* French *at* Agencourt*: His ſecond Voyage into* France*: His victories by Sea and Land: He is made heire (by the mariage of his wife) to the Crowne of* France*: His third Voyage into* France*: The birth of Prince* Henry*: The death of* Henry *the fift.*

The coronation of Henrie *the fift.*

Henry the fift of that name, and ſonne to *Henry* the Fourth, began his Reigne, the one and twentieth of *March* in the yeere of Grace, one thouſand foure hundred and twelve, and in the ninth of *Aprill* following, was crowned at *Weſtminſter*: this Prince before the death of his Father applyed himſelfe, to all irregularity, aſſociating himſelfe onely with riotous and evilly diſpoſed perſons, as Gameſters, Drunkards, Robbers by the high-

way

way, and the like, but hee was no ſooner admitted to the government of the Land, but he ſuddenly became a new man, changing his diſſolute life into a diſcreet carriage, his wildneſſe to wiſdome, and his ſenſualitie into a wondrous ſobriety: who leſt he ſhould be reduced to his former riots, he ſent to all thoſe vain fellows with whom he had been before familiar, ſuch competent gifts as might maintaine them in a fair and even courſe of life, but with this proviſo, that not any of them ſhould dare to come within ten miles of his Court, after a day by him aſſigned; of whom and whoſe Reigne, it was thus predicted:

A propheſie of his Reigne.

Note a ſtrange mixture in the planets ſeed,
For now a Mercury, *a* Mars *ſhall breed,*
Who in his armes, accommodate and fit,
Shall compaſſe more by warre, then he by wit
The Caduceus *to a ſword ſhall change,*
And grim Orion *ſhal (though it ſeeme ſtrange)*
Sit in Aſtræa's *orbe, and from her teare:*
The three leav'd flower ſhe in her hand did bear,
And turn it to a lawrell to adorn
The Lions brows, whom late the Toad did ſcorn.
And after many a furious victory,
At length inveſted ſhall the Lion bee
In a new Throne, to which his clayme is faire,
As being matcht unto the Kingdomes heire:
Living, this royall beaſt ſhall loſe no time,
But be at laſt from earth ſnatcht in his prime.

Preſently after his Coronation, hee cauſed the corps of King *Richard* to be removed from the *Fryers* at *Langley*, and ſolemnly interred upon the South ſide of Saint *Edwards* Shrine in *Weſtminſter*, by the body of Queene *Anne* his wife.

A parliament held at Leiceſter.

In the ſecond yeere of his Reigne, hee held his Parliament at *Leiceſter*, where amongſt other things, the Commons put up their former Bill, againſt the Clergy, who kept ſo much of the Temporalties in their hands. In feare whereof, leſt the King ſhould give unto it any comfortable audience, certaine Biſhops and others of the Clergie put the King in minde to clayme his right in *France*, for which they offered him great and notable ſummes, by reaſon whereof, that Bill was againe put by, and the Prince liſtning to the motion of the Prelats, aymed onely to ſet forward his expedition againſt *France*, and ſent his Letters to the *French* King to that purpoſe, who returned him anſwer full of deriſion and ſcorne, wherefore hee made ſpeedy proviſion for war.

The King prepareth for France.

And in his third yeare road (honorably accompanied) through *London*, and thence to *Southampton*, where he had appoynted his army to meete him. There *Richard* Earle of *Cambridge*, Sir *Richard Scroope*, then Treaſurer of *England*, and Sir *Thomas Gray* were arreſted of Treaſon, arraigned, and the nine and twentieth day of *July* following beheaded: The morrow after the King tooke the ſea, and the ſixteenth of *Auguſt* landed in *Normandy*, and laid ſiege to

Lords arreſted of treaſon.

Harflew,

Hareſlew, and won it: then leaving Sir *Thomas Bewford* his Noble Captaine there, he ſped him from *Calice*: with the *Dolphin* who had then the ruling government of *France*, (by reaſon of the Kings great ſickneſſe) having broke the bridges to hinder the Kings paſſage over the river *Sanne*: therefore hee was conſtrained to take the way toward *Picardy*, and paſſe the River *Pericon*: whereof the *French* being aware, aſſembled their forces, and lodged neere to *Agencourt*, *Roland court*, and *Blangie*.

The King lands in Normandy.

When King *Henry* ſaw that hee was thus invironed with his enemies, he pitcht his battaile betwixt *Agincourt* and *Blangie*, having no more then ſeven thouſand able men: But in thoſe dayes the yeomen had their limbes at liberty, Their breeches faſtned with one point, and their jacks or coats of male long and eaſie to-ſhoote in, drawing bowes of great ſtrength, and ſhooting arrows of a yard long beſides the head: King *Henry* then conſidering the number of the enemy, and that the *French* ſtood much upon their horſe, charged every Archer to take a ſharpe ſtake, and pitch it aſlope before him, that when the *Cavalry* with their ſpeares aſſaulted them, they ſhould give back, and ſo the horſe ſhould foyle themſelves upon the ſtakes, and then to powre their ſhot upon them: and when the king had thus providently ordered for the battaile over night, the morrow after, being the twenty fift of *October*, and the day of *Criſpin* and *Criſpianus*, hee attended the approch of the ene-

K. Henry environed with the French.

A rare policy of K. Henry.

The number of the French army.

enemy, who were in number forty thouſand able fighting men.

Who about nine a clock in the morning with great pride and ſcorne ſet upon the *Engliſh*, thinking to have overrid them with their horſe, and trod them underfoot, but the Archers as they were before appointed, retyred themſelves within their ſtakes, upon which the *French* horſes were galled, which the *Engliſh* Archers perceiving, and that their horſes being gored with the ſtakes tumbled one upon another, ſo that they which were foremoſt were the confuſion of them which followed; the Archers after their arrows were ſpent fell upon them with ſwords and axes, ſo that the day fell with little loſſe to the *Engliſh*, of whom were ſlaine that day the Duke of *Yorke*, who had the leading of the Van, and the Duke of *Suffolke*, and not above ſix and twenty perſons more.

K. Henries victorious battaile at Agencourt.

Slain of the Engliſh.

Slain of the French.

But of the *French* were kild that day morethen 10000 common ſouldiers, & of the nobility the three Dukes of *Bar*, of *Alonſon*, and of *Braban*, eight Earles, and of Barons above foureſcore, with gentlemen in Coat Armours to the number of three thouſand: beſides in that fight were taken priſoners, the Duke of *Orleance*, the Duke of *Burbon*, the Earles of *Vendoſme*, of *Ewe*, of *Richmont* and *Burſigant*, then Marſhall of *France* with knights and Eſquires (beſides common men) ſurmounting the number of two thouſand and foure hundred: when king *Henry* had (by Gods helpe) obtained this glorious victory,

Priſoners take of the French.

ctory, and recalled his people from purſuit of the enemy: newes was brought of a new Hoaſt comming towards him, wherefore hee commanded his ſouldiers to bee imbattailed, and then made proclamation through his Army, that every man ſhould kill his priſoner, which made the Duke of *Orleance*, and the reſt of the *French* Nobility in ſuch feare, that they (by authority of the King) ſent to the Hoaſt to withdraw, ſo that the King with his priſoners the morrow following took their way towards *Calais*, where for a time he reſted himſelfe and his Army: Thus it was truely propheſied of him.

A ſuddain policy of King Henry.

Note a ſtrange mixture in the planets ſeed,
For now a Mercury *a* Mars *ſhall breed,*
Who in his armes accommodate and fit,
Shall compaſſe more by warre than he by wit.

The Expoſition is plaine; by *Mercury* is meant the father, who was politicke and ingenious: and by *Mars* the ſonne, who by his Military Proweſſe attchieved more then the other apprehended; But it followeth, the three and twentieth of *November* he was met upon Black Heath by the Lord Major, and his brethren, who conducted him through the City (where were preſented many pageants and Showes to gratulate his famous victory) to *Weſtminſter*; whither the ſame houre came *Sigiſmond* the Emperour, who lodged him in his owne palace,

The Kings comming into England.

and after was Saint *Georges* feaſt kept at *Windſor*; in the time of which ſolemnity, during the time of divine Service the King kept the eſtate, but in the ſitting at the Feaſt, he gave it to the Emperour, where he, the Duke of *Holland*, and a great *Almane* prince, called the Duke of *Briga*, were made Knights of the Garter, and after ſeven weekes aboad here left the land, whom the King in perſon conducted to *Callis*: in which time of his there being, the Duke of *Bedford*, with the Earle of *March*, and other Lords had a great Sea-fight, with divers Caricks of *Genoway*, and other ſhips, where after long and cruell fight, the honour fell to the *Engliſh*, to the great loſſe of the ſtrangers, both of their men and ſhippes, in which three of their Caricks were taken.

The Emperour Sigiſmund made Knight of the Garter.

Victory by ſea.

In his firſt yeare in a parliament called at *Weſtminſter*, wherein order was taken for proviſion for his ſecond hoſtile expedition in to *France*: *Richard*, ſonne and heire to the Earle of *Cambridge* (put to death at *Southampton*) was created Duke of *Yorke*, who after was married to *Cecile*, daughter to the Earle of *Weſtmerland*, by whom he had iſſue *Henry*, who dyed young, *Edward* who was after King; *Edmund* Earle of *Rutland*, *Anne* Dutcheſſe of *Exeter*, *Elizabeth*, Dutcheſſe of *Suffolke*, *George* Duke of *Clarence*, *Richard* Crook-backe Duke of *Gloſter*, and after King: and *Margaret* Dutcheſſe of *Burgoin*: and when all things were accommodated for the Kings voyage, he made *Iohn* Duke of *Bedford*,

The iſſue of Richard *Duke of* Yorke.

ford his brother protector of the Land, and about *Whitſunday* tooke ſhipping at *Southampton*, and ſailed towards *Normandy*, where hee laid ſiege to a place called *Toke* or *Towke*.

King Henry *lands in* Normandy.

During which, notice was given to the King, that the Vicount *Narbon*, General of the *French* Navy, intended to invade *England*: to prevent whom, he ſent the Earle of *March*, the Earle of *Huntington*, with others, to ſcoure the Seas, who meeting with their Fleete, after a long and bloody conflict conquered and overcame them upon the ninth of *Auguſt*; in which they tooke plenty of Treaſure, being the money which ſhould have payed the *French* Kings Souldiers: Then was *Tooke* with the Caſtle deliuered up to King *Henry*, which he gave to his brother the Duke of *Clarence*, with all the Signiory thereto belonging, hee after tooke the ſtrong City of *Caan* in *Normandy* with foureteene other ſtrong holds and Caſtles; and whilſt he was thus buſied, the Earle of *March*, the Earle of *Warwicke*, with others, wonne *Laveers*, *Falois*, *Newlin*, *Cherburg*, *Argentine*, and *Bayons*, *&c.* where the king kept St. *Georges* Feaſt, and made fifteene knights of the Bath.

Another Sea-victory.

His many conqueſts in Normandy.

Then king *Henry* divided his people into three parts, whereof one hee reſerved to himſelfe, the ſecond he committed to the Duke of *Clarence*, the third to the Earle of *Warwicke*, which Duke and Earle ſo well imployed their forces, that in ſhort time they wonne many ſtrong Townes and Caſtles, whilſt the King

Roan *taken by* K. Henry.

laid siege to *Roan*, of which one Sir *Guy de Bowcier* was Capraine, which was also delivered up into his hands, so that having subdued all *Normandy*, he then entered *France*, and conquered the Cities and Townes as he marcht, and upon the twentieth of *May* came to *Troies* in *Champaigne* where he was honourably received: for the Duke of *Burgoine* being slaine in the presence of the *Dolphin*, *Philip* his sonne who succeeded in the Dukedome, refused the *Dolphins* part, and leaguing himselfe with King *Henry*, delivered unto him the possession both of the *French* King, and Dame *Katherine* his sole Daughter.

King Charles *with his daughter and heire in the possession of* K. Henry.

King Henry *marrieth the Lady* Katherine.

Then was such an unity laboured by the Lords on both sides to be had betwixt the two Nations, that by the urgence of the said *Philip* Duke of *Burgoin* King *Henry* at *Troyes* in *Champaigne* was solemniy marryed to *Katherine* heire to the kingdome of *France*, upon the third day of *Iune*, being *Trinity* sunday: Before the solemnization of which marriage, certaine Articles were agreed upon by the two Kings, the effect whereof followeth, that *Charles* should remain King, during the tearme of his life, and king *Henry* should be made regent and governour of the kingdome in the right of his Queene and wife; and that after the death of *Charles*, the Crowne of *France*, with all the rights thereto belonging, to remaine unto king *Henry*, and his Heires kings, &c. And because *Charles* was then visited with sickneſſe, *King Henry* as Regent should

Articles concluded betwixt the two nations of England *and* France.

King Henry *made heire apparant to the Crowne of* France.

ſhould have the whole and entire government of the Realme; and that the Lords of *France*, as well ſpirituall as temporall, ſhould make oath to *King Henry*, to bee obedient unto him in all things, and after the Death of *Charles*, to become his trne liege-men and ſubjects,&c.

Normandy *and* France *made one* Monarchy.

Further, the Dutchy of *Normandy* and all other Lordſhips thereto belonging to bee as one Monarchy under the Crowne of *France*, and that during the life of *Charles*, *Henry* ſhould not name or write himſelfe *King* of *France*, but *Charles* in all his Writings ſhould name *King Henry* his deareſt Son, and immediate Heire to the crown: and that by the advice of both counſailes of the Realmes of *England* and *France*, ſuch ordinances ſhould be eſtabliſhed, that when the Crowne of *France* fell to King *Henry* or his Heires, that it might with ſuch unitie joyne to the Realme of *England*, that our King might rule both the Realms as one Monarchy,&c. that King *Charles* nor *Philip* Duke of *Burgoyn* ſhould make any peace with the Dolphin of *Vien*, without the conſent of King *Henry*, nor he make any accord with him without the agreement of *Charles and Philip*, &c. thus you ſee.

Vnity betwixt the two Kingdomes.

His Caducæus *to a Sword did change,*
And grim Orion, *though it might ſeem ſtrange,*
Sit in Aſtræas *Orbe, and from her teare*
The three leav'd Flower ſhee in her hand did beare.

And turne it to a Lawrell to adorne
The Lions brows, whom late the Toad did ſcorn.

The propheſie explained.

By the *Caducæus* turning into a ſword, is meant that *Mercury* was now turn'd *Mars*, and Peace into warre: The ſame is allegorically intended by *Orion*, who is called *Lucifer* for the terribleneſſe of his aſpect, ſayd by the Aſtronomicall Poets to beare a ſword; hee removeth *Aſtræa*, that is, *Iuſtice*, out of her Orbe: For in the time of warre force and might ſway all, who rends from her boſome the peaceable three leav'd Flower, which is the *Flower Delyce*, with which he Crownes the Lion *King Henry*, *whom the Toad did ſcorne*: (thus demonſtrated) Some write that the Armes of *France* were at Firſt the three Toads, which after they changed to the three Lillies, as they are now quartered, with the Engliſh Armes, &c. But to continue the Hiſtory, theſe former Articles being by the conſent of both the Princes and their peeres ratified, king *Henry* with his new Queene, were honourably received into *Paris*, where when they had reſted a ſeaſon, Hee with the Duke of *Burgoine* laid ſiege to divers Townes which held with the Dolphin of *Vien*, as the ſtrong City of *Meldane*, or *Melian*, to *Melden*, and others, and tooke them, and having done all his pleaſure in *France*, he and the Queen took leave of *Charles* the *French* king, and ſayled into *England*, and at *Weſtminſter* with great ſolemnity ſhe was Crowned.

King Henry *and his Queen feaſted in* Paris.

Q. Margaret Crowned at Weſtminſter.

In

In the beginning of his tenth yeare, was born at *Windſor* the ſixt day of *December*, *Henry* the ſixt of that name : at Eaſter after the Queene tooke ſhipping at *Southampton*, and ſayled into *France*, where ſhe was royally received of her father and mother ; and King *Henry* being ſtill buſied in his warres of *France*, and ſtill gaining from them Cities and Townes, in the ninth of *Auguſt* he fell grievouſly ſick at *Boys* in *Vincent*, and dyed the laſt day of the Month, when hee had reigned nine yeares, five months and ten dayes, leaving iſſue behind him onely *Henry*, aged eight moneths and odde dayes : then the Kings body was imbalmed, and after brought to *Weſtminſter*, and there buried, verifying,

The birth of Henry the ſixt.

The death of Henry the fift.

Thus after many a famous victory,
At length inveſted ſhall the Lion be
In a new Throne; to which his claime is faire,
As being matcht unto the kingdomes heire.
Living this royall beaſt ſhall loſe no time,
But bee at length from earth ſnatcht in his (prime.

CHAP.

Chap. 27.

The Duke of Gloſter *made Protector : The Duke of* Bedford *Regent of* France, *of* Joan de paſill *a Sorcereſſe :* Henry *the ſixt crowned in* Paris : *A propheſie of his raigne : the death of the Duke of* Gloſter : *The death of the Marqueſſe of* Suffolke : *The inſurrection of the Commons under* Jack Cade, *His proceedings and death : the Duke of* Somerſet *gives up* Normandy : *The Duke of* Yorke *taketh Armes, his perſon ſeiſed, againſt the Kings promiſe, and for feare ſet at liberty.*

Henry *the ſixt made King.*

HEnry the ſixt of that name, and the ſole ſonne of *Henry* the fift, and Queene *Katherine*, beganne his Reigne over the Realme of *England* the firſt day of September in the yeare of grace, one thouſand foure hundred twenty two, who during his Minority was committed to the guardianſhip of his two Vncles the Dukes of *Gloſter* and *Bedford*, the Duke of *Gloſter* beeing protector of *England*, and the Duke of *Bedford* regent of *France* : In the firſt yeare of this Kings reigne dyed *Charles* the ſeventh King of *France*, by whoſe death the

The Duke of Gloſter *protector, the Duke of* Bedford *regent.*

the Crowne, and the Realme, with the rights of them, fell to the young king *Henry*, the poſſeſſion of which was by the Lords of *France* in generall, (excepting ſome few who took part with the Dolphin) delivered to the duke of *Bedford* as Regent, during the nonage of the King, who in the ſecond yeare of his reigne, wonne from the Dolphin more than foure and twenty ſtrong holds and Caſtles, to the great Honour of the *Engliſh* Nation, and with whom all attempts ſucceeded proſperouſly and victoriouſly, till the fift yeare that the Earle of *Salisbury*, (who was called the good Earle) with the *Earle* of *Suffolke*, the Lord *Talbot*, and others, laying ſtrong ſiege to the City of *Orleance*, the Earle was ſlaine by a ſhot from the Towne, after whoſe death, the *Engliſh* ſtill loſt, rather than wonne, ſo that by little and little they were compelled from all their poſſeſſion in *France*, for where they prevailed in any battaile, in three they were diſcomfited.

The Regents victories in France.

The death of the good Earle of Salisbury.

In the eighth yeare of his reigne, and upon the ninth of his age, King *Henry* was Crowned in St. *Peters* Church at *Weſtminſter*, where were made ſixe and thirty knights of the Bath: His Coronation with all honour and joy being finiſhed, proviſion was made for his journey into *France*, and upon Saint *Georges* day following, being the twenty third of *April*, hee tooke ſhipping, and landed at *Callis*, with a great train of the *Engliſh* Nobility, during whoſe abode there, many battails were fought in divers parts

King Henries *Coronation.*

Ione de Pucil *a ſorcereſſe.*

of the kingdom betwixt the *Engliſh* and *French*, in which the *French* for the moſt part prevailed, ſome ſaid by the help of a woman called *Joan de Pucil*, whom they ſtiled, *The Maiden of God*, who was victorious in many conflicts, and at length came to a Town called *Compeine*, with intent to remove the ſiege layd unto it by the Duke of *Burgoine* and the *Engliſh*, but by the valour of a *Burgonian* knight, called ſir *John Luxemburgh*, her company was diſtreſſed, and ſhe took alive, and after carried to *Roan*, and there kept a ſeaſon, becauſe ſhe feigned her ſelfe with child, but the contrary being found, ſhe was adjudged to death, and her body burnt to aſhes.

Shee is burnt for a witch.

Henry *the ſixt crowned at* Paris.

In his tenth yeere, and upon the ſeventh of *December*, King *Henry* the ſixt was crowned King of *France* in *Paris*, by the Cardinal of *Wincheſter*, at whoſe Coronation were preſent the Regent, The Duke of *Burgoine* with others of the *French* Nobility; after the ſolemnity of which royall Feaſt ended, The King left *Paris*, and kept his Chriſtmaſſe in *Roan*, and thence returned into *England*, where hee was joyfully received, and of whom it was thus predicted.

The propheſie of King Henries *reigne.*

How comes the Sun to riſe where he ſhould ſet?
Or how Lambs, Lions, Lions Lambs beget?
Yet ſo't muſt be. The Lambe though doubly crown'd,
And thinking his large Empire hath no bound,
Yet ſhall a Daulphin at a low ebbe land,
And ſnatch one powerfull ſcepter from his hand.

Thus

Thus it falls out twixt father and the ſonne.
Windſore *ſhall loſe, what ever* Monmouth
A Tigreſſe then, in title onely proud, (wonne.
In the Lambs boſome ſeeks her ſelf to ſhroud,
A ſeeming Saint: at firſt meek and devout,
But in ſmall time her fierceneſſe will break out,
Nor can her ravenous fury be withſtood
Vntill, through ſated, with beſt Engliſh blood,
But a young Lion he at length ſhall tame,
And ſend her empty back from whence ſhe came.
Much trouble ſhall be made about the crown,
And Kings ſoon raiſed, and as ſoone put down,
&c.

After ſundry conflicts betwixt the *Engliſh* and the *French*, in which they diverſly ſped, at length *Charles* the *Dolphin*, who tooke upon him to be King of *France*, by the proffer of many Towns, Caſtles, Cities, Provinces, and Lordſhips ſo wrought upon the Duke of *Burgoine*, that notwithſtanding he had before ſlain his Father, adhered to his party, and proclaimed himſelf utter enemy to the *Engliſh*, which was in the thirteenth of *Henry*, in which yeere dyed the noble and valorous *Iohn* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France*, and was buried with great ſolemnity at *Roan*, in the Church of our Lady, after whoſe death notwithſtanding the incomparable valour of the Lord *Talbot*, whoſe name was ſo terrible in *France*, that (with it women frighted their children to ſtill and quiet them) the Earle of *Arundell* and others, yet fortune for the moſt

Charles the Dolphin and Philip *Duke of* Burgoin *reconciled.*

The death of the D. of Bedford, *regent.*

part was averse to the *English* &c. and though there were many Treaties of peace to bee made betwixt the two Kingdoms, yet they came to no effect, and thus for divers yeeres it continued.

During which passages divers murmurs and grudgings beganne to breake out betwixt the Duke of *Gloceſter* Lord Portectour and Uncle to the King, and divers persons neere about the Court, amongst which was chiefe the Earle of *Suffolke*, which in the end was the confusion of them both. For in the one and twentieth yeere, the said Earle of *Suffolke* who had broke off a Mariage concluded by the *English* Embassadors, betwixt King *Henry* and the daughter to Earle *Arminacke* went over into *France*, and made a match betwixt him and the Kings daughter of *Hierusalem* and *Cicily*, who had the bare titles thereof, and was indeed a king without a Country: to compasse which mariage, he delivered to the said king, the Duchie of *Anjou*, and Earldome of *Maine*, which were called the keyes of *Normandy*, to the great prejudice and dishonour of the *English* Nation: For which service done he was created Marqueſſe of *Suffolke*, and soone after with his wife and others pompously accommodated brought her into *England*, where shee was espoused to the King, at a place called *Southwick* in *Hampshire*: whence after she was convayed to *London*, and thence to *Westminster*, and thereupon the 30 of *May*, being Trinity Sunday, solemnly crowned.

Suffolk seeketh to supplant the Duke of Gloceſter.

Suffolks proceedings.

The King marrieth the Lady Margaret.

With

With which match it ſeemes God was not well pleaſed: for after that day fortune began to forſake the King, who loſt his Friends in *England*, and his revenues in *France*, for ſoone after, the whole State was ſwayed by the Queene and her Counſell, to the diſhonour of the king, the Realmes detriment, and her owne diſgrace, for thereby fell the loſſe of *Normandy*, the diviſion of the Lords, the rebellion of the Commons. The king depoſed, her ſonne ſlaine, and ſhe baniſht the Land for ever, all which miſeries fell (as ſome have conjectured) for the breach of that lawfull contract, firſt made betwixt the king and the daughter to the Earle of *Arminacke*.

Q. Margaret cauſeth many miſeries.

In his five and twentieth yeere was a Parliament called at Saint *Edmondsbury* in *Suffolke*, which was no ſooner begun, and the Lords aſſembled, but *Humphrey* Duke of *Gloceſter* was arreſted by Viſcount *Beaumond*, then high Conſtable of *England*, the Duke of *Buckingham*, and others, and the ſixt day after found dead (ſome ſay murdered) in his bed of whoſe death the Marqueſſe of *Suffolke* was moſt ſuſpected, whoſe body after it was publikely ſhowne, was conveighed to Saint *Albons*, and there honourably interred, and ſoon after five of the principall of his Houſhold hang'd and drawne, but by the kings mercy not quartered.

The Protectour arreſted and after murdered in his bed.

In his eight and twentieth yeere, was called another Parliament, in which the Marqueſſe of *Suffolke* was arreſted and ſent to the Tower,

The Marqueſſe of Suffolke arreſted.

where hee lived a moneth at his pleaſure, and was after ſet at large, to the diſcontent of ſome Lords, but all the Commons. For he was charged with the delivery of *Amiens* and *Maine*, and the murder of Duke *Humphrey*, called the good Duke of *Gloceſter*, upon which enſued a rebellion of the commons, of which one *Blew-beard* cald himſelfe Captain, but they were ſoon ſuppreſt, and the chief of them put to death, the Parliament was then adjourn'd to *Leiceſter*, whither came the King, and with him the Queens great Favourite, the Duke of *Suffolke*. Then the Commons made petition to the king, that all ſuch as had hand in the delivery of *Anjou* and *Maine*, and the death of the Protector might be ſeverely puniſhed, of which they accuſed as guilty, the Marqueſſe of *Suffolke*, the Lord *Say*, the Biſhop of *Salisbury*, one *Damiall* a Gentleman, and one *Trivillian* with others, to appeaſe whom, *Suffolke* was exiled for five yeeres, and the Lord *Say* Treaſurer of *England*, with the reſt were put a part for awhile, and promiſt that they ſhould bee impriſoned: and *Suffolke* taking ſhipping in *Norfolke*, to have ſailed into *France*, was met by a ſhip of Warre, called the *Nicholas* of the *Tower*, and being knowne by the Captain, he tooke him into his owne Veſſell and brought him backe to the port of *Dover*, where on the ſide of the Boat he cauſed his head to be ſtruck off, and caſt it with the body on the ſands, and ſo went again to ſea.

Blew-beard.

The Marqueſſe *of* Suffolk *baniſht for five yeeres.*

The death of Suffolk.

In this yeere alſo being the Jubilee, the commons

mons of *Kent* aſſembled themſelves in great multitudes, under a Captaine called *Iacke Cade*, who named himſelfe *Mortimer*, and Couſin to the Duke of *Yorke:* againſt him the King raiſed a ſtrong Hoaſt, and ſent Sir *Humphrey Stafford* and *William* his brother, with certain forces to ſubdue them, but the Rebels prevailed againſt them, and left the two Noble brothers dead in the field: after which victory the Captaine put on him Knights apparell, with Briganders ſet with gilt nayls, and Helmet, with gilt Spurs. To whom was ſent the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, and the Duke of *Buckingham*, who had conference with him, and found him very diſcreet in his anſwers, but not to bee wonne to lay by his armes; and to blinde the eyes of the people the more, hee uſed great juſtice in his Campe, at length he came to *Southwarke*, (at which time the commons of *Eſſex* lay with an army at *Mile-end*) and when hee approched the draw-bridge, he hewed the ropes and chains aſunder with his ſword, and ſo entred *London*, where hee made proclamations in the Kings name, that no man on pain of death, ſhould rob, ſpoyle, or take from any man, but to pay for whatſoever hee cald for, which drew unto him the hearts of many of the Citizens: and when he came to *London ſtone*, he ſtrook upon it with his ſword, and ſaid, Now is *Mortimer* Lord of this City: after hee cauſed the Lord *Say* to bee fetcht from the Tower, and without any juſt proceſſe, at the Standard in *Cheape*, commanded his head to be cut

The inſurrection of Iack Cade.

The Captains pride.

Iack Cade *enters* London.

His cunning to delude the people.

His Iuſtice.

cut off, and another called *Cromer*, who had bin high Sheriffe of *Kent*, he also commanded to be beheaded, then pitcht their heads upon two poles, and as they passed the streets in divers places caused the poles to joyn, so that the dead mouthes kissed each other.

Thus hee had free recourse into the Citie by day, and at night returned to lodge with his Hoast in *Southwarke*, but at length his malicious purpose broke out. For dining one day with *Philip Malpas* Draper and Alderman, hee robbed and spoyled his house, and tooke thence a great quantity of plate or money, which had hee not done, it was supposed he might have attained to his owne ends (for so hee served another in the same kind) therefore the *Major* his brethren and commons, consulted amongst themselves (having the assistance of the *Tower*) the next day to shut their gates against him, and keepe him out of the City, which they did: then the Captaine assaulted the Bridge, which was valiantly defended, and many slaine on both sides. But at the length they were enforced to keep still in *Southwarke*, whither the Archbishop of *Canterbury* sent a generall pardon from the King, so they would disband themselves, of which the multitude tooke the advantage, and every one sped himself home into his Country: Then proclamation was made, that hee who could take the Captaine alive or dead should have a thousand Marks: at length a Gentleman of *Kent*, called *Alexander Iden*, found him in a Garden in *Sussex*.

His robbery.

The Rebels shut out of the Citie.

STC. T5198.641.a

ſex, and in taking ſlue him, whoſe body was brought through the high ſtreets of the City to Newgate, there headed and quartered, his head ſet upon the bridge,& quarters ſent to 4 ſundry Towns in *Kent*, to the terrour of like offenders.

The death of Iack Cade.

In the 29 yeere, by reaſon of the Duke of *Somerſets* giving up the Dukedome of *Normandy*, diſpleaſure grew from ſome of the Lords againſt the Queen,and her counſail,ſo that the Duke of *Yorke* father to K. *Edward* the fourth,with many Lords to him allide,oppoſed themſelves againſt her,& in the 30 yeer the king with the D. of *Somerſet*,with other Nobles,journied towards the Marches of *Wales*, becauſe they were informed the Duke of *Yorke* with divers of the *Barons* both of note and name, had gathered a great ſtrength: who hearing the King made towards them, ſwarved from the Kings Hoaſt, and took their way towards *London:* but when they knew they could not be received there, they paſt over *Kingſtone* bridge, ſo into *Kent*, and pitcht their field on *Brentheath:* of which the king inform'd, followed them,& pitcht his field on *Blackheath.*

The Duke of Yorke oppoſeth the Queene and her counſell.

Both their Hoaſts being thus embattailed, mediation of peace was made betwixt the two Hoaſts, and to the Duke were ſent the Biſhops of *Wincheſter* and of *Ely*, with the Earles of *Salisbury* and *Warwicke*, who anſwered them that neither hee nor any of his company intended any hurt to the Kings perſon, or any of his own counſail: but his purpoſe was to remove ſome evill diſpoſed perſons about the Queen, by

A mediation of peace.

whom the Land was oppreſſed, and the Commons impoveriſhed, of whom it was finally agreed that hee ſhould be committed to priſon, and to anſwer what the Duke of *Yorke* ſhould object againſt him: upon which promiſe made by the King, the Duke, the firſt of *March*, being Tueſday, diſbanded his army, and came to the Kings Tent, where contrary to the promiſe made, he found the Duke of *Somerſet*, waiting next the King, and the Duke of *Yorke* was ſent (like a priſoner) to *London*, and now ſtreightly had beene kept, but that news was brought that Sir *Edward* his ſonne Earle of *March* was comming thither with a ſtrong power of *Welſhmen*, and *Marchmen*, which ſo affrighted the Queene and her counſaile, that the Duke was ſet at liberty to go whither it pleaſed him, and ſo peace for a while, with feigned love was diſſembled. Thus hitherto the prediction hath not failed in any particular, whichſaith,

The Duke of Yorke ſciſed as priſoner.

And ſet at liberty.

——*The Lambe though doubly crown'd,*
And thinking his large Empire hath no bound,
Yet ſhall a Daulphin at a low ebbe land,
And ſnatch one powerful ſcepter from his hand.
Thus it falls out twixt father and the ſonne.
Windſore *ſhall loſe, what ever* Monmouth *wonne.*

The propheſie explained.

Henry for his meekneſſe was compared to a Lambe, being doubly crowned in *London* and *Paris*: The *Dolphin* of *Vien* being at the loweſt ebbe

ebbe of State, yet in time by the perfidiouſneſſe of the Duke of *Burgoine*, after recovered the whole Realme of *France*, with the Dukedome of *Normandy*, ſo that hee ſnatcht one Scepter from his hand, ſo that *Henry* the ſixt borne in *Windſore*, no may participating the Noble and Heroick ſpirit of his father, loſt all by his puſillanimity, that *Henry* the fift borne in *Monmouth* had atchieved, by his unmatchable proweſſe.

CHAP. 28.

The ambition of Queene Margaret: *The battaile at Saint* Albons, Yorke *made Protector: The Queens practice againſt the Lords: The battail at* Northampton: Yorke *proclaimed heire to the Crowne.* Yorke *ſlaine in the battaile at* Wakefield: Henry *depoſed and* Edward *Earle of* March *made King: A propheſie of his Reigne. The battaile at* Exham: *King* Henry *taken and ſent to the Tower: The Mariage of* Edward: *Hee flies the Land:* Henry *againe made King.*

I Proceed with the Hiſtory: in his one and thirtieth yeere the King held a ſolemne Feaſt at *Weſtminſter* upon the twelfth day in *Chriſtmaſſe*,

Two Earles created by the King.

where he created two Earles, who were his brothers by the mothers side: Queene *Katherine* who after the death of *Henry* the fift, was married to a Knight of *Wales* called *Owen*, who had by her two sonnes, the eldest named *Edmond*, who was made Earle of *Richmond*, the yonger *Jasper* Earle of *Pembroke*, who was after by *Henry* the seventh made Duke of *Bedford*, and so dyed, and in the yeere thirty two, the thirteenth of *October*, Queene *Margaret* was delivered at *Westminster*, of a Princely sonne named *Edward*, who after grew to bee of faire personage and great hope, but was after slaine by *Edward* the Fourth, when hee had wonne the battaile fought at *Tewxbury*, whom the people for the great hate they bore to his mother, would not acknowledge to bee the naturall son of King *Henry*, but rather a bastard or changeling, to her great sorrow and dishonour.

The birth of Prince Edward.

During these passages great dissention grew betwixt the King and divers of his Lords, but especially betwixt the Queens Counsell and the Duke of *York*: and his bloudy, and mayne cause was because the Duke of *Somerset*, (now her prime favourite) lived at large, was made Captaine of *Calice*, and was in greater power about the Queen then before (for the Queene governed all, and the King was onely so in name, but no more then a Cypher to fill up the number, for which both the Nobles and commons much grudged: at length the Duke of *Yorke* being in the *Marches* of *Wales*, called to him the Earles

The Queene and her counsell sway all.

of

of *Warwicke* and *Salisbury*, with other Knights and Gentlemen; and in the month of *Aprill* gathered a ſtrong Hoaſt and marched towards *London*, where the King, Queen, and ſundry of the Nobility then made their reſidence, who hearing thereof, aſſembled alſo a ſufficient Army and ſped towards Saint *Albons*, of which the Duke of *Yorke* being advertiſed, hee alſo made thither, and was at one end of the Town whilſt the King and his people were at the other, and this was on the three and twentieth day of *May*, the Thurſday before *Whitſonday*. Now whilſt a Treaty of peace was communed upon the one part, the Earle of *Warwicke* with the *Marchmen* entred the Towne, upon the other end, and fought eagerly againſt the Kings people, ſo that both the battails joyn'd and continued the fight for many houres, but in the end the victory fell to the Duke of *Yorke*, and of the Kings ſide were ſlaine, the Duke of *Somerſet*, the Earle of *Northumberland*, and the Lord *Clifford* with many honourable Knights and Gentlemen.

The battail at S. Albons.

The King taken.

The morrow after, the Duke with great honour and reverence conveighed the King backe to *London*, and lodged him in the Biſhops Palace, then called a parliament at *Weſtminſter*, by authority whereof, the Duke of *Yorke* was made protector of the Realme, the Earle of *Salisbury* Chancelour, and the Earle of *Warwick* Captaine of *Callis*, and all ſuch as were in authority about the king removed, and the Queeene and her Counſaile who before ſwayed all, vili-

Yorke *made Protector.*

fied and ſet at nought: But ſhee out of her great policy inſinuated with divers Lords, who were of her faction, and diſdaining the rule the Duke bore in the Realme, by the name of protector, as if the King were inſufficient to governe the ſtate, which as ſhee thought was great diſhonour to him, and diſparagement to her, ſhe made ſuch friends of the Lords both ſpirituall and temporall, that the Duke was ſhortly diſcharged of his protectorſhip, and the Earle of *Salisbury* of his Chancellourſhip: which was the cauſe of much combuſtion after. So that it appeares.

A ſodaine change.

A Tigreſſe then, in title onely proud,
In the Lambes boſome ſeeks her ſelfe to ſhroud;
A ſeeming Saint, at firſt meeke and devout,
But in ſmall time her fierceneſſe will break out:
Nor can her rav'nous fury be withſtood,
Vntill through ſated with beſt Engliſh blood.

The Queens practiſe againſt the Lords.

Which will manifeſtly appeare in the ſequell, for ſhe cauſing the king to remove from *London* to *Coventry*, the Duke of *Yorke* was ſent for thither by a privy Seale, with the Earles of *Warwicke* and *Salisbury*, whoſe lives were ambuſht in the way, of which they having notice eſcaped the danger: After a day of meeting was appoynted at *London*, whither the Lords came with great traines at their heeles, and the Earle of *Warwicke* with a ſtrong band of men from *Callis*, in red Jackets, and white ragged ſleeves

ſleeves upon them; but by reaſon of the ſtrength the Lords had, nothing was attempted againſt them, but a diſſembled peace was made betwixt the two factions, which being tyed with a ſmall and ſlender thred, it happened that in a private quarrell a ſervant of the Earle of *Warwicks* hurt one of the kings ſervants, upon which the Earle comming from the Counſaile to take his barge, the kings family rudely ſet upon him, and the blacke guard aſſaulted him with their ſpits, where divers of his followers were ſore hurt, and hee himſelfe dangerouſly wounded, with great difficulty eſcaped, but hee got into *London*, and from thence ſailed to *Callis*: He thus ſecured, the Queen then aymed at the life of his Father, the Earle of *Salisbury*, who ſet upon him the Lord *Audley* with a ſtrong Company to way-lay him in his comming towards the City, who mending his traine, kept on his journey, and upon *Bloreheath* they met both, and after a bloody conflict the Lord *Audley* with many of his followers were ſlaine, and two of the Earles ſonnes wounded, who in their way home were ſurprized by ſome of the Queenes faction, and ſent priſoners to *Cheſter*.

Againſt the Earle of Warwicke.

Againſt the Earle of Saliſbury.

Vpon which the Duke with the Lords aſſembled themſelves for their owne ſecurity, and the Earle of *Warwick* came with a band of men from *Callis*, of which he made one *Andrew Trollop* Captaine, againſt whom the King gathered a ſtrong hoaſt, and came to *Ludlow*, where

Andrew Trollop *perfidious to the Lords.*

where the Lords were incampt; but the night before the battaile, this *Andrew* with his *Callis* souldiers, left the Lords, and joyned with the Kings Army: At which the Lords were much discouraged, because hee was privy to all their purposes, wherefore they left their Tents standing and fled: The Duke of *Yorke* tooke shipping for *Ireland*, the rest escaped into *Gernsay*, by the meanes of one *Iohn Dinham*, an Esquire, who brought them a ship; which *Dinham* was after made Treasurer of *England*, so that the King was made Master of the field, the Dutchesse of *York* with her Children taken prisoners in *Ludlow*, and sent to her sister the Dutchesse of *Buckingham*, where she remained long after, and the Lords proclaimed Traytors, and their goods and Lands forfeited, and seised into the Kings hands, but at length the tide turned.

The Lords flie and leave the King Master of the field.

For the Lords (being favoured by the Commons, who much murmured at the proceeding of the Q. & her counsaile) again entred the land, & upon the ninth of *Iuly* encountred the Kings hoast at *Northampton*, where after long fight, the victory fell to the Earle of *Salisbury*, and the Lords of his party, where the Kings Hoast was discomfitted, and hee taken in the field, after many of his Nobility were slaine, amongst whom were the Duke of *Buckingham*, the Earle of *Shrewsbury*, the Vicount *Beaumont*, the Lord *Tiremond*, *&c.* After which victory they returned to *London*, and brought with them the King

The battaile at Northampton.

King, keeping his eſtate, then ſent for the Duke of *Yorke* out of *Ireland*: In the mean time they called a parliament: during which, the Duke of *Yorke* came to *Weſtminſter*, and lodged in the Kings palace, upon which grew a rumour, that *Henry* ſhould be depoſed, and the Duke of *Yorke* made King: one day the Duke came into the parliament Chamber, and in the preſence of all the Lords ſate him downe in the kings ſeat, and claimed the Crowne as his rightfull inheritance: at which there was great murmuring amongſt the Lords: but after divers Counſailes held, it was concluded, that *Henry* ſhould continue king, during his naturall life, and after his death his ſonne Prince *Edward* to bee ſet apart, and the Duke of *Yorke* and his Heires to bee kings: and he to bee admitted protector of the king, and Regent of the Realme: and upon ſaturday following being the ninth of *November*, and thirty ninth of king *Henry*, the Duke was proclaymed through the City Heire apparant to the Crowne, and his Progeny after him.

The pride of the Duke of Yorke.

The Duke proclaimed heire apparant to the Crowne.

And becauſe Queen *Margaret* with her Son Prince *Edward*, with the Dukes of *Somerſet* and *Exeter* were in the North, and would not come up at the kings ſending: it was agreed by the Lords, that the Duke of *Yorke* and Earle of *Salisbury*, ſhould raiſe an Army and fetch them up by force, and to that purpoſe ſped them *Northward*: of which the Queene with her people having notice, with a great power of *Northern* men met with them upon the thirtieth

The battaile of Wakefield.

The Duke of Yorke *slaine.*

of *December* at a Towne called *Wake-field*, betwixt whom was fought a bloody Battaile, in which was slaine the Duke of *York* with his son the earle of *Rutland*, *Thomas Nevill* sonne to the earle of *Salisbury*, and the earle himself took prisoner, whom shee caused to be with others, soone after beheaded at *Pomphret*; then shee made haste towards *London*, and the earle of *Warwicke* with the Duke of *Norfolke*, who were appoynted by *Yorke* to attend the king, gathered an Army, and upon a Shrove-tuesday in the morning, gave her battaile at Saint *Albons*, in which *Warwicke* and *Norfolke* were chaced, and the king againe taken, and presented to the Queen: then He the same afternoone made his sonne *Edward* knight, (who was eight yeares of age) with thirty persons more.

The Queen againe victorious.

The Queene having thus gotten the upper hand of her Enemies, thought all things safe, expressing more pride than she before had done; in the height of which, newes was brought her, that *Edward* earle of *March*, eldest sonne to the Duke of *Yorke*, with the earle of *Warwicke*, and others, with a great strength of *March* men were met at *Cottiswald* in their way to *London*; wherefore the King and Queen returned with their Hoast Northward, but before her departing from Saint *Albons*, shee caused the Lord *Bonsfield* and others to bee beheaded, who had beene taken in the former field: Then came the Earles of *March* and *Warwicke* to *London*, to whom resorted all the Gentlemen of

of the Eaſt and South parts of *England*: Then was a Counſaile called of the Lords ſpirituall and temporall, by whom after much debating of the matter it was concluded, that foraſmuch as King *Henry* contrary to his honour and oath at the laſt parliament had done, and alſo that he was reputed unable and inſufficient to governe the Realme, hee was by their aſſents diſcharged of all kingly honour and Royalty, and by the authority of the ſaid Counſell, and agreement of the Commons, *Edward* eldeſt ſonne to the Duke of *Yorke*, was elected King, who preſently with his Army followed *Henry*, and met with his Hoaſt at a place called *Towton*, or *Shyrbourne*, and upon *Palm-ſunday* gave them battaile, which was ſo cruelly fought, that there were ſlaine thirty thouſand, beſides thoſe of note and quality, as the Earle of *Northumberland*, the Earle of *Weſtmerland*, the Lord *Clifford*, Sir *Andrew Trollop*, and others: In the ſame Field was taken the Earle of *Devonſhire*, and ſent to *Yorke* and there beheaded: But *Henry*, the Queene, prince *Edward*, the Duke of *Somerſet*, the Lord *Roſſe*, and others fled into *Scotland*, and King *Edward* entered *Yorke*, and there kept his *Eaſter*.

Henry *depoſed and* Edward *Earle of* March *made* King.

The battaile at Shyrbourne.

Henry and *Qu.* Margaret *flie into* Scotland.

Thus *Henry* loſt the Crowne after hee had reigned full thirty eight yeares, ſixe Moneths, and odde dayes, and the factious and ambitious Queen forfeited all herright in the kingdome; verifying what was predicted,

But a young Lion hee at length shall tame,
And send her empty back from whence she came.
Much trouble shall be made about the Crowne,
And Kings soone raised, and as soon put downe.

The Coronation of Edward *the fourth.*

This *Edward* the fourth of that name, and sonne to *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, beganne His Reigne over the Realme of *England*, the fourth of *March*, in the yeare of grace, (to reckon after the *English* computation) one thousand foure hundred and forty, and upon Sunday, being the feast day of Saint *Peters* day was solemnly crowned at *Westminster*: before which time, He made sixe and thirty Knights of the *Bathe*, and soone after hee created his brother *George* Duke of *Clarence*, and his brother *Richard* Duke of *Gloster*: Of this Kings reigne thus runs the *Propheſie*.

A propheſie of his reigne.

The fiercest Beare, who by his power alone
Had planted the young Lion in his throne,
Is sent abroad a Lioness to finde,
To be his phear: who having chang'd his mind,
Doats on a Badger, whom some terme a Gray,
And that shall cause much blood on Easter day.
The Beare, who th'exil'd Tygresse meetes in France,
Vowes the suppressed Lambe againe t'advance.
And from the Coop where he hath long bin pent,
To raise him to his former government.
The Lion the Land flying, with a small
And slender traine, the ragged staffe swayes all.

But

But the Beares fiercenesse ſhall be ſoone allaid,
As one that is halfe conquered, halfe betraid:
Then ſhall the Lambe, whom he did late reſtore,
(Againe coopt up) be ſlaughtered by the Boare.

After the King had viſited the greateſt part of the beſt Townes and Cities in the Kingdom, in the ſecond yeare of his reigne, *Margaret* late Queene of *England*, with an army of *French* and *Scotch* invaded the North part of *England*, which King *Edward* hearing, ſped him thither: at whoſe approach the Queene with the reſt affrighted ſhe disbanded her troopes, and in a Carick would have ſailed into *France*; but ſuch a Tempeſt fell that ſhe was forced to take a Fiſher-boat, and landed at *Barwicke*, and roade thence to the *Scotch* King, where newes was brought her, that the Carveil in which the greateſt of her treaſure was, was ſwallowed up in the Sea. And in his third yeare the Lord *Iohn* of *Montacute*, brother to the Earle of *Warwicke*, having chiefe command in the North, was warned of King *Henries* comming with a great power out of *Scotland*, againſt whom hee aſſembled the *Northern* men, and met with him about *Exham*, who routed the *Scotch* Army, and chaced *Henry* ſo neare, that hee tooke certaine of his Traine apparrelled in blue velvet, garniſhed with two Crownes, and fret with pearle and rich ſtones: He took alſo the Duke of *Somerſet*, the Lord *Hungerford*, the Lord *Roſſe*, and others: which Duke with the reſt were ſoon

Queen Margaret *invadeth* England.

The battaile at Exham.

King Henry *taken and ſent to the Tower.*

after beheaded, ſome at *Exham*, others at *New-Caſtle*: And the ſame yeare was King *Henry* taken in a Wood, in the *North* Countrey, by one *Cantlow*, and preſented unto King *Edward*, who forthwith ſent him to the Tower, where hee remained for a long time after.

The King married to the Lady Elizabeth Gray.

Now *Richard* of *Warwicke*, who for his many Victoryes and potency in the Realme was called *VVarwicke* the great, was imployed by the king into *France*, to treat a marriage betwixt him and the Lady *Bona*; which whilſt hee was earneſtly ſoliciting, the firſt of *May* the king eſpouſed *Elizabeth*, late wife to Sir *John Gray*, who was ſlaine at *Towton*, in the great Battaile fought againſt *Henry*: which eſpouſalls were ſolemnized early in the morning at *Graſton*, neare *Stony Stratford*, where were preſent none but the Spouſe, the Spouſeſſe, the Dutcheſſe of *Bedford* Her Mother, the Prieſt, two Gentlewomen, and a young man who helped the Prieſt at Maſſe. which marriage was for a time kept ſecret, but after ſhee was with great ſolemnity Crowned Queene at *VVeſtminſter*; which the earle of *VVarwicke* taking as a great affront, as being fooled in his *Embaſſie*; and Queene *Margaret* being then with her ſonne *Edward* in the Court of *France*, hee with the earle of *Oxford*, who had ſtood alwayes againſt the *Yorkiſts*, ſecretly made promiſe to the Queene to waite their time to remove king *Edward*, and

Elizabeth *Crowned Queene.*

Warwicke *vowes to remove* King Edward.

place

place the Diadem upon the Head of King *Henry* : which makes good:

The Foreſt Beare, who by his power alone,
Had planted the young Lion in his Throne,
Is ſent abroad a Lioneſſe to finde,
To be his phere, who having chang'd his mind,
Doats on a Badger, whom ſome doe terme a
Gray, &c.

By the Beare is figured *Warwick*, who gave the Beare and the ragged ſtaffe, who ſupported the cauſe of *Edward* Earle of *March*, till hee had Crowned him King, who being ſent into *France* to negotiate a Match betwixt him and the Lady *Bona*, whom hee calls the Lioneſſe: In the interim hee married with a Badger, or Gray, by which is intimated *Elizabeth*, the Lady *Gray*, *&c.*

And now about the eighth yeare broke out the long diſſembled hate betwixt the King, and the Earle of *VVarwicke*, who confedered unto him the Duke of *Clarence*, who had before married his Daughter: In which ſeaſon, by their inſtigations were divers Rebellions, in *Lincolnſhire*; likewiſe in the North, by a Captaine, who called himſelfe, *Robin* of *Ridiſdale*; in *Lincolnſhire* by the Lord *VVels*, *&c.* Meane time the Duke of *Clarence*, with the Earle of *VVarwick* and other, ſolicited *Lewis* the eleventh king of *France*, to aſſiſt them, in the reſtoring of king *Henry* to his rightfull inheritance,

Robin *of* Ridiſdale.

inheritance; who gladly granted their requeſt: which Lords after their departure from *England*, were proclaimed Rebells and Traytors, who in *September* the tenth yeare of the king, landed at *Dertmouth*, making their proclamations in the name of *Henry* the ſixt, to whom multitudes from all parts reſorted, ſo that the king being in the North, with great danger paſſed the Waſhes in *Lincolneſhire*, and fled into *Flanders*: and *Warwicke* brought the king from the Tower, and conducted him in all ſtate through *London* to *Weſtminſter*, and once more ſet the Crowne upon his head.

Edward flies the land.

Henry *again made King.*

CHAP. 29.

King Edward *proclaimed uſurper of the Crowne, and* Gloſter *Traytor: his landing at* Ravenſport: *the Battaile at* Barnet: *the battaile at* Teuxbury: *King* Henry *murdered in the Tower, and after him the Duke of* Clarence: *the death of* Edward *the fourth:* Gloſter *takes upon him to bee Protector of the young King: his tyranny being Protector: hee is proclaimed King: the murder of the two Princes in the Tower: A propheſie of them before their deaths.*

KIng *Henry* being thus re-inſtated, there was dayly waiting on the Sea-coaſt for the landing of Queen *Margaret*, and her ſonne Prince *Edward*, and

and proviſion made againſt the re-entring of the kingdome by King *Edward* and his company: then was called a Parliament, in which King *Edward* was proclaymed uſurper of the Crowne, and his brother Duke of *Gloſter* Traytor, and both attainted by vertue of the ſaid parliament: then the Earle of *Warwicke* road into *Kent*, thinking to have met the Queene at *Dover*; but the winds were ſo averſe to her, that ſhe lay from *November* to *Aprill*, and all that while could not put to ſea, by reaſon of which, the Earle of *Warwicks* journey was diſappoynted.

King Edward *proclaimed Vſurper, and his brother* Gloſt. *traitor.*

In the beginning of *Aprill*, *Edward* landed at *Ravenſpurne*, with a ſmall company of *Flemmings*, who in all could not make up the number of a thouſand: and ſo drew towards *Yorke*, making proclamation in the name of King *Henry*, that his comming was to no other intent, than to claime the inheritance of the Dukedome of *Yorke*, where the Citizens kept him out till he had taken a ſolemne oath, that he purpoſed no more then he ſpake, where having refreſht him and his followers, he departed thence, and held his way toward *London*; and having paked by favour and fair words, the lord Marqueſſe *Montacute* who lay with an army to ſtop his way, and finding his ſtrength hourely to increaſe, hee then made proclamation in his owne name as king of *England:* and ſo held on his journey till he came to *London:* where hee was gladly received into the City, and ſo made

King Edward *landeth at* Ravenſport.

King Henries *oath to* York.

The cõnivence of the Marqueſſe after his ruine.

to *Pauls*, and offered at the Altar, and thence to the Biſhops palace where hee found the King almoſt alone, for all his ſervants and others had left him: and having put him under ſafe cuſtody, he there reſted him till Eaſter Eve.

King Henry againe made priſoner.

When hearing of his brother *Clarence*, with the other Lords comming with a ſtrong hoſt to Saint *Albons*, he haſted thitherward, and lay that night in *Barnet*, in which ſeaſon the Duke of *Clarence*, contrary to his oath made to the *French* King, renounced the title of King *Henry*, and came that night with his whole ſtrength to his brother, at whoſe revolt the Lords were ſomewhat abaſhed, but by the Earle of *Oxford* they were againe comforted: by whoſe perſwaſion, they marched forward to *Barnet*, whither hee came leading the Vaward, and on a plaine neere unto the Town pitched his field: upon the morrow being *Eaſter* day both Hoaſts met: upon the one party were two Kings preſent, *Edward* and *Henry*; upon the other the Duke of *Exeter*, the Lord Marqueſſe *Montacute*, the Earles of *Warwicke* and of *Oxford*, with other men of name.

Clarence *revolteth from the Lords.*

Edward *brought* Henry *to the field.*

In their firſt encounter the Earle of *Oxford* ſo manfully demeaned himſelf, that hee bore over that part of the field, which he ſet upon, in ſo much that news came to *London*, that *Edwards* Hoaſt was diſcomfited, and it might have hapned, if his men had kept their army, and not preſently diſordered themſelves by falling to rifle and pillage, but after long and cruel fight king

The valour of the Earle of Oxford.

King *Edward* obtained the victory, in which battaile of the Lords party were ſlain Marqueſſe *Mountacute*, & his brother the Earl of *Warwick*: on the Kings party the Lord Barons, and of the Commons on both ſides one thouſand five hundred: the ſame day in the afternoon came King *Edward* to *London*, and firſt offered at *Pauls*, and road thence to his lodging at *Weſtminſter*, and ſoon after was King *Henry* brought riding in a long gown of Blue Velvet, and conveyed through *Cheape* unto *Weſtminſter*, and thence to the *Tower*, where he remayned all his life time after: thus we find by the premiſſes,

King Edward obtains the victory.

The death of the Earle of Warwicke and Marqueſſe Montacute.

King Henry *again committed to the tower.*

The Beare, who th'exil'd Tigreſſe meets in
France,
Vowes the ſuppreſſed Lambe againe to advance:
And from the Coop where he hath long bin pent
To raiſe him to his former government.

All which hapned according to the former prediction, as alſo the ſequell.

The Lion the land flying with a ſmall
And ſlender train, the ragged Staffe ſways all:
But the Bears fiereneſſe ſhall be ſoon all aid,
As one that is halfe conquered, halfe betraid.

That is, half conquered, by the proweſſe of King *Edward*, and betraid by his perfidious brother the D. of *Clarence*: *Edward* thus having repoſſeſt the Kingdome, provided againſt the land-

ing of Queen *Margaret* and her ſonne, who notwithſtanding with an army of *Frenchmen* entred the Land as farre as *Teuxbury*; where the King met her, and chaced her houſe, and ſlue many of them, in which battaile was taken her ſonne *Edward*, and brought to the King, who demanding ſome queſtions, and he nor anſwering him to his minde, the King ſtrook him over the face with his Gauntlet, upon which hee was drag'd into a withdrawing room, and there ſlaine by the Duke of *Gloceſter*. In the ſame yeere upon *Aſcenſion* eve was the corps of *Henry* the ſixt late King, brought unreverently from the Tower through the high ſtreets of the City unto *Pauls*, and there left for that night: and on the morrow, conveyed with bils and ſtaves, and the like weapons unto *Chelſey*, and there without any ſolemne ceremony enterred, who was ſtabd with a Dagger in the Tower, by the hands of the foreſaid *Richard* Duke of *Gloceſter*.

The battaile at Teuxbury.

The murder of P. Edward.

King Henry ſtabd to death in the tower.

So that, the Lambe, the Beare did late reſtore,
(Again coopt up) was murdred by a Bore.

For the Bore was the Cognizance belonging to the ſaid Duke: when King *Edward* had thus ſubdued his enemies, He ſent over the miſerable and diſtreſſed Queene *Margaret* into her owne Countrey whence ſhee never returned into this Kingdome after. In the ſeventeenth yeere of the King, the Duke of *Clarence* his ſecond brother, was for ſome diſpleaſure taken againſt him, com-

The murder of the Duke of Clarence.

committed to the Tower where hee not remayned long, but hee was ſecretly drowned in a But of *Malmſey*, as it was commonly voic'd by the inſtigation of the Duke of *Gloceſter*: I let paſſe the reſt of this Kings Reigne, in which hapned no great matter of remarke or conſequence, ſo that after his many victories (for hee was never conquered in any battaile) hee governed the Realme in great tranquillity and quietneſſe, and expired the eleventh of *Aprill* in the yeere of the Incarnation of our Lord, one thouſand foure hundred fourſcore and three, after he had raigned full two and twenty yeeres, and as much as from the fourth of *March* to the eleventh of *Aprill*, whoſe corps was conveyed to *VVindſor*, and there with all due and ſolemne Ceremony interred, leaving two ſonnes, Prince *Edward* the eldeſt, and *Richard* Duke of *Yorke* the younger, with three Daughters, *Elizabeth* after Queene, *Sicily* and *Katharine*:

The death of K. Edward the Fourth.

Edward the fift of that name, and ſonne to *Edward* the Fourth at eleven yeeres of age began his Reigne, the eleventh of *Aprill*, in the beginning of the yeer of our Lord God, one thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and [illegible] of whom and his Uncle *Richard* Duke of *Gloceſter*, the prediction followeth.

The Propheſie.

From the Herculean *Lion lately ſphear'd,*
And in his Orbe, to Jove *himſelf indear'd,*
Shall ſhine two ſtars, without eclipſe or cloud,
But they, as to ſome ſacred offering vow'd

Shall perish on the Altar, ere they grow,
To that full splendor, which the world they owe
A bunch-back'd monster, who with teeth is born,
The mockery of art, and natures scorn:
Who from the wombe, preposterously is hurld,
And with feet forward, thrust into the world,
Shall from the lower earth on which he stood,
Wade every step he mounts here deep in blood,
He shall to th' height of all his hopes aspire,
And cloth'd in state his ugly shape admire:
But when he thinks himself most safe to stand,
From forreigne parts, a native Whelp shal land,
Who shall the long divided blood unite,
By joyning of the Red Rose with the white.

Hatred betwixt the King and Queenes kindred.

Edward the Fourth yielding his due to nature, the long concealed grudge betwixt the King and the Queenes Allies began to vent it self, for the Marquesse *Dorset* brother to the widowed Queene, with others of her proximity had then the Guardianship of the young King, who being in the *Marches* of *VVales*, conveyed him towards *London*, to make provision for his Coronation, but the Duke of *Gloucester* who intended otherwise, attended with a company of Northern Gentlemen all in mourning, met with the King at *Stony-stratford*, and after a dissembled greeting betwixt him and the Marquesse, dischardged him of his Office, and tooke upon himselfe the government of the king, and thence accompanied with the Duke of *Buckingham* who was in great favour with the

Marquesse Dorset discharged of his Guardianship.

the people, brought him with all honour toward *London*; whereof hearing Queene *Elizabeth* mother to the King, and fearing the ſequel, ſhe with her younger ſonne the Duke of *Yorke*, and her daughter *Eliſabeth* tooke Sanctuary at *VVeſtminſter*: meane time the king was royally met by the Citizens of *London*, and through the City brought to the Biſhop of *Londons* palace and there lodged.

The Queene taketh Sanctuary.

Then the Duke of *Gloceſter* ſo wrought with *Bouchier* Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, that hee went with him to the Queene, who upon the Archbiſhops faith, and promiſe of his ſafety delivered to them the D. of *Yorke*: then the Duke cauſed the king and his brother to be removed to the Tower, and the Duke lodged himſelfe in *Crosby* Houſe in Biſhopſgate ſtreet, and great preparation was made for the yong kings Coronation: in which time the Duke of *Gloceſter*, being made Protector, cauſed Sir *Anthony VVoodvile*, Lord *Scales* the Queenes brother, the Lord *Richard* the Queenes ſon, Sir *Richard Hawt*, and Sir *Thomas* to be beheaded at *Pomfret*, more out of his owne tyranny, then any treſpaſſe by them committed: next to further his aſpiring purpoſe, Hee covertly ſounded the hearts of the Nobility how they ſtood affected, and to that end cald many counſailes, and amongſt others he found the Lord *Haſtings* then Lord Chamberlaine conſtant to the ſupporture of king *Edward* the Fourths Iſſue.

The young Duke of York delivered to the Archbiſhop and Duke of Gloceſter.

The protectors tyranny.

Upon the thirteenth of *Iune*, being in the Coun-

A counſell held at the Tower.

Counſel Chamber at the Tower with the Duke of *Buckingham*, the Earle of *Derby*, the Lord *Haſtings* and others. Hee cauſed an out-cry of Treaſon to be made in the next roome, at which the Lords were amerc'd: and he himſelfe went to the doore, and received ſuch perſons in, as he had before appointed, who laid hand upon the Lord *Haſtings*, in which ſtirring the Earle of *Derby* was hurt in the face, and for a while committed to ſafe cuſtody, but the Lord Chamberlaine in all haſte was led to the Hill within the Tower, and without judgement or long confeſſion his head laid upon a log, and cut off by the Executioner: after which cruelty thus done, all ſuch as he ſuſpected would oppoſe him in his claime to the Crowne hee put in hold, whereof the Archbiſhop of *Yorke*, and the Biſhop of *Ely* were two, but the Earle of *Derby* for feare his ſonne Lord *Strange* ſhould have raiſed the *Cheſhire* and *Lancaſhire men*, hee ſet at liberty to goe where he pleaſed.

The death of the Lord Haſtings.

Upon the ſunday following himſelfe and the Duke of *Buckingham* being preſent with others of the Nobility, Doctor *Ralph Shaa*, in the time of his Sermon, laboured to prove the children of *Edward* the Fourth illegitimate, and not right heires to the Crowne, preferring the title of the Protector, at whom was flung a dagger which ſtucke in the poſt cloſe by his face, but none knew or at the leaſt would acknowledge from whence it came, which Doctor who before had a great opinion of learning, having by this Sermon

The effect of D. Shaa's Sermon at Pauls Croſſe.

Sermon loſt all his reputation dyed, (as ſome ſay diſtracted) not many days after.

Upon the Tueſday following, the Commons of the City were aſſembled at *Guild-hall*, whither was ſent by the Protectour, the Duke of *Buckingham*, with other Lords, by whom was rehearſed to the *Major* & the reſt, what title the Lord Protectour had to the Crowne before his Nephews, which in an excellent Oration was delivered by the Duke of *Buckingham*, whom they applauded for the manner, but no way approved the matter of his ſpeech, for it took no effect amongſt them, all departing ſilent and keeping their thoughts to themſelves: then the Tueſday ſucceeding, being the twentieth day of *Iune*, the Protector of himſelfe took upon him as King and Governour of the Realme, and rode in great ſtate to *Weſtminſter*, and in the great Hall placing himſelfe in the ſeat Royall, with the Duke of *Norfolke*, who was before Lord *Howard*, on the right hand, and the Duke of *Suffolke* on the left, after the royall Oath taken, hee called before him the Judges, and giving them a long exhortation for the executing of his Lawes, adminiſtring juſtice, with other Ceremonies being done, hee was conveyed to the kings palace and there lodged, and upon Friday being the two and twentieth of *Iune*, throughout the City of *London*, hee was proclaimed king of *England*, by the name of *Richard* the Third.

The Duke of Buckinghams *oration in the Guild hall.*

The Protectour takes upon him to be King.

The protector proclaimed King *by the name of* Richard *the third.*

Yet thought he himſelfe in no ſecurity, whilſt

his two Nephewes in the Tower were living, concerning whose death (as some have reported) hee tasted the Duke of *Buckingham*, but finding him averse to his purpose (as in his noble spirit abhorring an act so unnaturall and execrable) he after sought all advantages how to insidiate his life, though hee had been the onely means to raise him to that height of Sovereignty, and knowing that it was in vaine to worke any noble or generous mindes to such a bloudy and inhumane purpose, hee at lenght had observed a melancholy and discontented Gentleman called *Iames Tirrell*, to whom some have given the title of a knight; and him hee moulded to his owne ends, who having the keyes of the Princes lodgings delivered unto him, hee hired two bloudy Ruffians, who when they were fast asleepe, fell upon them and smothered them in their beds. But in what place their bodies were buried it is uncertain, and thus

Buckingham not accessary to the Princes deaths.

The murder of the two princes in the tower.

From the Herculean *Lion lately spheard,*
And in his Orbe, to Jove *himself indeard,*
Two luminous stars without eclipse or cloud,
As had they been unto some offering vow'd
Are perisht on the Altar, ere they grow,
To that full splendor, which the world they owe.

By the *Herculean* or *Cleomæan Lion* is figured the victorious and invincible King *Edward* the Fourth lately spheared, that is, by death lately translated above the Spheares, to the Celestiall Orbe

Orbe Heaven, and by two ſhining ſtars, *Edward* the fift and *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, &c. the reſt needeth no comment.

CHAP. 30.

Diſſention betwixt the King and the Duke of Buckingham: Richard *inſidiateth the life of* Richmond: Buckingham *takes armes againſt the King, and is beheaded.* Baniſter *perfidious to his Lord: Queen* Annes *policy and tyranny: His Laws:* Richmond *landeth at* Milford *Haven: The battaile at* Boſworth: *The death of* Richard: Richmond *made King: A propheſie of his Reigne, &c.*

Richard the Third of that name, ſon to *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, and youngeſt brother to *Edward* the Fourth late King, began his Dominion over the Realme of *England*, the twentieth day of *June*, in the yeere of the Incarnation of our Lord, one thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and three, with whoſe Reigne I proceed: Some ſay the Noble Duke of *Buckingham* came to demand of him the Earle of *Hereſords* Land promiſed him before he was King, which hee not onely denied him, but gave him rough and harſh language which the Duke in

Difference betwixt the King and the Duke of Buckingham.

regard of his former courtesies done unto him: and not only knowing his ingratitude, but with all his malicious spleene against any that should in the least oppose him in his bloudy and most cruell designes, he therefore retyred himselfe from Court, and after some discourse held with Bishop *Morton* who was the Kings prisoner, and in his custody, he was brought to have intelligence from the Queen and the Countesse of *Derby*, by whose instigation hee after laboured to bring in *Henry Richmond* then a banisht man in the Court of the Duke of *Britaine*, but from the house of *Lancaster*, the next heire to the Crown.

Buckinghams *plots against the King.*

Whilst these things were in secret agitation, the King laboured by all meanes possible, of friends, gifts, promises, and the like, to take away the life of the Earle, whose projects and pursuits (too long here to rehearse) he miraculously escaped, only comforted by some Noble *Englishmen*, some compulsively banisht, others voluntarily exiling themselves, all partners in one and the same calamity: in which interim the Duke of *Buckinghams* intent of innovation (some think by his perfidious servant *Banister*) was discovered to the King, therefore for his owne security he was forced to take armes: but many of his friends failing, and the indisposition of the weather warring against him (for by reason of the Land flouds hee could not joyne his forces together) hee therefore was compeld to dissolve his Army, and suffer every man to

Richard *labors to supplant* Richmon.

Buckingham *taketh arms.*

shift

ſhift for his beſt ſafety: himſelfe retyring to the houſe of his Secretary and ſervant *Baniſter*, who in hope of a thouſand pounds reward to him that could bring forth the Duke (promiſt only, but never paid) betrayde him to the King, who cauſed him to bee had to *Saltsbury*, and on a ſcaffold in the Marker place to have his head cut off, and ſuch was the tragicall end of that honourable perſon.

The death of the Duke of Buckingham.

Of this *Baniſter*, and how his falſneſſe to his Lord was puniſht in him and his poſterity, much hath been ſpoken, as that his wife died diſtracted, his ſonne was found ſtrangled with a cord, his daughter found drowned in a ſhallow puddle of water, and hee ſuffered on the gallows for a robbery, and that ſince that day even to this age, none of that Houſe and Family, but have ſome orother of the name beene troubled with the falling ſickneſſe: a good caveat for all corrupt and perfidious ſervants.

Baniſters *perfidiouſneſſe puniſhed.*

King *Richard* though hee had removed all or moſt of his potent enemies, *Buckingham*, the Queenes Kindred and others: yet knowing hee was hated for his many murders, eſpecially for the two Princes in the Tower, and that hee was moreover ſuſpected for cauſing Queen *Anne* his wife to bee poyſoned (who dyed ſuddenly) in hope to have married the Lady *Elizabeth*, daughter to the Queen Dowager, who after the death of her two brothers was immediate heire to the Crowne; hee to ſtop the mouthes of the multitude, and as farre as might be to inſinuate

Q. Anne *poyſoned.*

King Richards policy.

himselfe into the hearts of the Commons: made many good and profitable Lawes to the benefit of the Common-wealth, which are yet called the wholsome Laws of the Kingdome: but this he did, not that hee so much loved their good, but that he so well affected his owne safety, and because he was loth to leave the World without some worthy character behind him: hee strived to bee reputed the best of Kings, though hee knew himselfe to be the worst of men.

Amongst other pieces of his justice, it was laid to the charge of one *William Collingborne* a Gentleman, that hee was authour of a libell, the effect whereof was this.

Collingborns *Libell.*

The Cat, the Rat, and Lovell *the Dog,*
Rule all England *under an Hog.*

By the *Cat*, meaning *Catesby*; by the *Rat*, *Ratcliffe*; and by *Lovell* the *Dog*, the Lord *Lovell*, all which were Court Favourites, and ruled the Land under the King, who bore the white Bore for his Cognisance: for which Rime and other matters pretended against him, he was arraigned, convicted and condemned, and after suffered on a new paire of Gallows on the *Tower-hill*, where he was no sooner cast off the ladder, but cut down, and his bowels ript out of his belly, and thrown into the fire, and lived till the bloudy Hangman thrust his hand into the bulk of his body to grope for his heart, and even then hee was heard to say aloud, *O Lord Iesus*, yet more

The tyrannous death of M. Collingborne.

trouble,

trouble, and ſo died, to the great compaſſion of much people.

During which paſſages, *Henry* Earle of *Richmond*, the Lord Marqueſſe *Dorſet* brother to the Queene, and Sir *Iames Blont* then Keeper of the Caſtle of *Guines*, who brought with him *Iohn* the brave and valiant Earle of *Oxford*, who had been kept priſoner in that Caſtle ever ſince the field fought at *Barnet*: Theſe with other of their noble friends, with a ſmall company of *Engliſh*, *French*, and *Britains*, landed in *Milford* Haven, in the month of *Auguſt*: which Earle no ſooner ſat his feet on ſhore, but he incontinently kneeling upon the earth, with a ſober and devout countenance, began the Pſalme, *Iudica me Domine, & diſcerne cauſam meam, &c* which when hee had finiſhed and kiſſed the ground, he roſe up and commanded ſuch as were about him, boldly and in the name of God to ſet forward: of whoſe landing the King hearing, he ſet it light, making no haſte to oppoſe them, as deſpiſing them in regard of their ſmall number.

Henry *Earle of Richmond.*

His landing in Milford *Haven.*

But when the arrivall and returne of this Prince was rumoured abroad through the land, many drew unto him, aſwell Sanctuary men as others, ſo that his Army greatly increaſed, which the King hearing, hee then gathered a ſtrong Hoaſt, and ſo ſped him, that upon the two and twentieth day of the ſame moneth *Auguſt*, and the beginning of the third yeere of his Reigne, He met with Prince *Henry* neere unto a Village called

The Kings Hoaſt.

The battaile at Boſworth.

called *Boſworth*, beſides *Leiceſter*, where betwixt them was fought a ſharpe and cruell battaile for the time, which more bloudy had beene, if the Kings party had beene faſt and conſtant to him: for ſome left him, and fled to his enemy; and others ſtood hovering as Neuters, to ſee unto whom the victory would fal, of which the Lord *Stanley* Father in law to the Earle of *Richmond*, with a ſtrong band of *Cheſhire* and *Lancaſhiremen* was chief.

The Kings raſhneſſe in the field.

Some were of opinion, that the King loſt the battaile by his owne foole-hardineſſe, and head-ſtrong ſpleene: for when the fight was begunne, and he mounted on a white Steed, was in the center of his Army to give directions for the field upon any occaſion; upon the ſuddaine hee cal'd to know what part of the adverſe ground *Richmond* then maintained? who being poynted to the place, ſuddenly without any directions left, or any ſubſtitute to command in his place, ſprung out of his hoaſt, and made thither, and calling aloud for *Richmond*, was knowne by his Guard: who ſeeking to preſſe through them, wounding ſome, and killing others, was himſelfe, with his horſe, broached upon their Halberds. The newes of the Kings death being blowne abroad, his army ſtood at a ſtand, onely defending themſelves, but not offending any: inſomuch, that the glory of the day fell to the Earle of *Richmond*, and his partiſans: upon the Kings party were ſlaine *Iohn* Duke of *Norfolke* (before his late creation Lord

The death of King Richard.

Howard

Howard) with *Brakenbury*, Lievtenant of the Tower, but no other of name or quality; where was taken the Earle of *Surrey*, ſonne to the Duke of *Norfolke* who was ſent to the Tower, and there remained priſoner a long time after.

The Earle of Surrey taken.

Then was the body of King *Richard* deſpoyled of his Armes, and ſtript naked, and then diſgracefully caſt behind a man riding upon a leane Iade (the body being almoſt wholly covered with mire and dirt) and ſo unreverently carryed to the Friers at *Leiceſter*, where after a ſeaſon he had laine openly that all men might behold him, with little reverence, and leſſe mourning, he was caſt aſide in an obſcure grave, and there buried; when he had reigned, or rather uſurped the Kingdome by the ſpace of two yeares, two months, and two daies.

The manner of King Richards buriall.

It is ſaid of this Prince that he came into the world with his feet forward, which being taunted with (being a youth) by a yong Noble man, and one of his Peeres, hee made anſwer, 'tis true, and was it not time for mee to make haſte into the world, there being ſuch a buſtling and trouble in the Land? which hee ſeemed to allude unto thoſe times, when his Father laid claime to the Crowne: Hee was borne alſo with teeth in his Head, which was ſomewhat prodigious too, and crooke backt he was, but whether ſo borne, or that it came to him by any ſiniſter accident I am altogether ignorant: onely of this I am ſure, that all theſe with the proceſſe of his bloudy practiſes, punctually

King Richards character.

comply with the propheſie, which ſaith:

A bunch-back'd monſter, who with teeth is borne,
The mockery of art, and natures ſcorn:
Who from the wombe, prepoſterouſly is hurld,
And with feet forward, thruſt into the world,
Shall from the lower earth on which he ſtood,
Wade every ſtep he mounts knee deep in blood,
He ſhall to th' height of all his hopes aſpire,
And cloath'd in ſtate his ugly ſhape admire:
But when he thinks himſelf moſt ſafe to ſtand,
From forreigne parts, a native Whelp ſhal land,
&c.

Prince Henry victor.

After the Battaile thus wonne, prince *Henry* was received as King, and there inſtantly ſo proclaimed, who thence haſted to *London*, ſo that upon the twenty eighth day of *Auguſt*, he was by the Major and Citizens met in good array, at *Harnſie* park, and thence conveighed through the City, and lodged in the Biſhop of *Londons* palace for a time, and then he removed to *Weſtminſter*.

Prince Henries *Coronation.*

This *Henry* the ſeventh of that name, ſonne to the Earle of *Richmond*, began his dominion over the Realme of *England* the two and twentieth of *Auguſt*; in the yeare of grace one thouſand foure hundred foureſcore and five; and the thirtieth day of October following at *Weſtminſter* was crowned; and in the ſecond yeare of his reigne he eſpouſed *Elizabeth*, the eldeſt daughter to King *Edward* the fourth, who the yeare after upon St. *Katherines* day was crowned

The Coronation of the Queene.

an

at *Weſtminſter*: And this *Henry* is that native Lions whelpe before ſpoken of:

Who ſhall the long divided blood unite,
By joyning of the Red Roſe with the white.

For by this marriage the long divided houſes of *Yorke* who gave the white, and *Lancaſter* who gave the red Roſe were happily combin'd, and from that, even to this preſent day never diſparted, or ſundred: of him it was alſo thus predicted.

The ſpirit that was meerely Saturnine, — *The propheſie of his reigne.*
Being ſuppreſt upon the land ſhall ſhine.
Planets of a more glad aſpect, and make
Peace from their Orbs, fixt in the Zodiacke:
Yet from the cold Septentrion Mars *ſhall threat*
And warme their frigid pulſes with his heat.
And Mercury *ſhall (though it may ſeem rare)*
Conſult with Caſſiopeia *in her Chaire,*
To faſhion ſtrange impoſtures: but warres god
By ſword, nor Hermes *with his charming rod*
Shall ought prevaile: where power with Princes meete,
And when Religion ſhall Devotion greet.
Where all theſe foure at once predominant are,
Vaine are the attempts of ſtratagem or warre;
But he who of the former is poſſeſt,
Shall be abroad renown'd, and at home bleſt.
Fame afarre off his glorious name ſhall tell,
And Plutus *(neare hand) make his Coffers ſwell.*

By the *Saturnine* Spirit is intended the bloody and malitious condition of *Richard* the third, which was now ſuppreſt by death: for as *Saturne* was ſaid to devoure his owne Children, ſo he hungred and thirſted after the bloud of his owne brother and Nephewes, and therefore not altogether unproperly alluded, the reſt you ſhall find made apparent in the ſequell.

The Dutcheſſe of Burgundy *an enemy to the King.*

This religious and wiſe King being thus peaceably inſtated in the Throne: his old inveterate enemy the Dutcheſſe of *Burgundy* raiſed a new Impoſtor, whom ſhe called *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, the younger brother to *Edward* the fift: but hearing the King intended to make away young *Warwicke*, who was ſonne to the Duke of *Clarence*, and then priſoner in the Tower, they changed his name from *Yorke* to *Warwicke* (who was no other than the ſonne of a Baker: this youth ſhee put to the tutoring of a Prieſt, who ſo well improved him, that hee could now to the life perſonate a Prince; and for no leſſe he was received firſt into *Ireland*, to whom the Earle of *Lincoln* came, who alſo made a pretended right to the Crowne: To whoſe aide the Dutcheſſe ſent two thouſand *Almaines*, under the command of one *Martin Swart*, an old Souldier, and of approved Diſcipline; theſe, with the Lord *Lovel* and *Kildare*, landed in *Lancaſhire*, and made towards *York*, with whom the King met at a place called *Stoak*: in which fight the army of the Rebels was routed, *Swart* and *Lincoln* ſlaine, and the

A new Conſpiracy.

Stoak field.

Lord

Lord *Lovell* thinking to ſwim the *Trent*, was drowned, and *Simnel* the mocke King taken, whom the King would not put to death, but made him a Turn-broach in his Kitchen, where hee continued long after.

CAP. 31.

The Earle of Northumberland *ſlaine by the Commons: The Matchevilian plots of the Dutcheſſe of* Burgundy, *to diſturbe the peace of King* Henry: Perkin Warbeck *her Creature: He is nobly married in* Scotland, *and taken for the Duke of* Yorke: *the death of the Lord* Standley, *and others: Divers inſurrections about* Perkin: *his death, with the young Earle of* Warwicke: *The death of the King: A propheſie of the reigne of* Henry *the eighth:*

IN the fourth yeare of this Kings Reigne, the Earle of *Northumberland* ſent to gather ſome Taxes, which were to bee levied in the North, was ſlain by the commons, who ſtill favoured the party of the *Yorkiſts*: And further, to countenance the act, they made an inſurrection, and chuſed for the Captaines one *Chambers*, and another *Egremond*; to ſuppreſſe

The Earle of Northumberland *ſlaine by the Commons.*

preſſe whom, was ſent the Noble and valiant Earle of *Surrey*, who having diſcomfited their Army, and tooke *Chambers*, with divers others of the chiefe Rebells, who were led to *Yorke* and there executed as Traytors: But *Egremond* fled the field, and eſcaped to the Dutcheſſe of *Burgundy*, whoſe Court was a Sanctuary for all Male-con tents and Fugitives.

The Rebells ſlaine and taken.

Thus from the cold Septentrion Mars *did (threat,*
And warme their frigid pulſes with his heat.

This ſubtile Mercurialiſt knowing how wiſely and politickly the King had borne him betwixt the Emperour and the King of *France* (who had beene at mortall enmity about the marriage of the young Dutcheſſe of *Britaine*, ſhe being firſt contracted by a *Proxie* to the old Emperor, but from him divorced before enjoy'd, and married to the youthfull *French* King) ſhee I ſay, obſerving his provident and cautelous proceeding in all things, for the ſecurity of his State, and Kingdome, with a falſe ſtampe coyned a new Duke of *Yorke*, a ſtripling called *Perkin Warbeck*, who being Chriſtned by *Edward* the 4th, it might be ſuſpected that (being as hee was warlike, ſo alſo much addicted to the love of women) by too much familiarity with the mother, the child might have ſome of the *Yorkiſts* blood in him, *Edward* being both Father and Godfather: But ſo or no, moſt ſure it was, that the Dutcheſſe expoſed him to the world for

Perkin Warbeck *a new impoſtor.*

Edward *the fourth Godfather to* Perkin.

for the young Duke of *Yorke*, who was ſpared from death, which his brother ſuffered in the Tower, (for ſo it was given out.)

But after ſhee had fully tutor'd and inſtructed him to take upon him the Majeſty and deportment of a Prince, leaſt he ſhould be found to be her creature, ſhee cunningly ſent him from her Court over into *Ireland*, where hee was received for no leſſe then he nam'd himſelfe. Thence King *Charles* ſent for him into *France*, where he had Princely entertainment, and ſervice, ſuiting with his ſtile; but a peace being concluded betwixt *England* and *France*, finding no ſafety there, hee came as a diſtreſſed ſtranger to ſhelter himſelfe under the wings of the Dutcheſſe of *Burgundy*, whom ſhe (cunningly) at firſt lookt upon as ſtrangely, till ſhe had queſtioned him about all things, in which ſhee had before inſtructed him: and then, as a Prince whoſe injuries were much to bee pittied, ſhee received him to her protection.

The ſubtilty of the Dutcheſſe of Burgundy.

The newes of a ſurviving Duke of *Yorke* was greedily ſwallowed by the diſcontented Commons of *England*: The chiefe of note who were drawne to this beliefe, were the Lord *Fitzwater*, *Mountfort*, and *Thwaytes*, with the Lord *Standley*, who was Father in law to the King, and then Lord Chamberlaine, *Ratcliffe*, and others: But *Henry* then underſtanding the danger likely to enſue, firſt made it manifeſt to the world, how both the Princes were together murdered, with the manner of their deaths, by which

A new conſpiracy againſt the King.

which he did infallibly evince that hee could not be *Yorke*: then the politicke King thought there was no ſurer way to diſable the Impoſtors claime, then by taking away his abettours; and whilſt theſe things were thus in agitation, Sir *Robert Clifford*, who had undermined all the Dutcheſſe proceedings, came over to the King and diſcloſed them unto him; who challenged the Lord *Standley* of Treaſon, as to bee a prime incourager of *Perkins* Faction: for which the King notwithſtanding the neere affinity, as the name of Father and Sonne interchanged betwixt them; and forgetting alſo that hee was the prime man who ſet the Crowne upon his head, hee cauſed him the fifteenth of *February* following to bee beheaded on a Scaffold upon the Tower-hill, not without a great aſperſion of ingratitude; which ſeverity of Juſtice, was alſo executed upon *Mountford* and *Stafford*.

Sir Robert Clifford *challengeth the L.* Standly *of treaſon.*

The L. Standly *beheaded.*

Then *Perkin* who had wintered with the Dutcheſſe, in the ſpring made an attempt for *England*, his forces ſubſiſting meerely of male-contents, banquerupts, and fugitives, and hearing the King was in the North, landed to the number of ſixeſcore and odde in *Kent*, thinking they would have adhered to his Faction, but he himſelf kept a ſhip-boord: But the *Kentiſh* apprehending the danger of a Rebellion, ſeeing no more would come a ſhore, ſet upon them whom they found, ſlew ſome, and took the reſt priſoners; all which were put to death, and not one amongſt them ſpared: Thence he ſailed to *Flanders*,

Perkin *landeth in* Kent.

Flanders to fetch more ayd, and from thence to *Ireland*, where he found ſmall comfort, after to *Scotland*, (whoſe arrivall there being by commendatory Letters, prepared by *Charles* the *French* King) he was royally entertained: and to the *Scotch* King and his Nobility hee delivered ſo ſmooth and paſſionate a Tale (before dictated by the Dutcheſſe) that they tooke not onely great commiſeration of his former diſaſters, but promiſed withall not onely to raiſe him, but to eſtabliſh him in the height at which hee aimed: cauſing him to bee eſpouſed to a beautifull Virgin the Lady *Gordon*, and after with a potent Army entred *Northumberland*, making Proclamation in the name of *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, with ſugered promiſes of ſeverall enfranchiſements, and immunities to the Commons, if they would acknowledge him their King and Soveraigne; all which nothing prevailed with the people; ſo that King *James* hearing of *Henries* marching towards him with a puiſſant Hoaſt, he retreated his Army into his owne Countrey.

The French K. *an abetter of* Perkin.

Perkin *married to the Lady* Gordon.

After which, there was a marriage concluded betwixt King *James* and the Lady *Margaret*, the eldeſt daughter to King *Henry*, from whom our King *James* of bleſſed memory deſcended, as immediate and undoubted Heire to the Crown of *England*: which match, was conſummate in the ſeventh yeare of King *Henry*, and in the ſame year landed at *Plimmouth*, *Katherine* daughter to the King of *Spaine*, who upon St.

A match concluded betwixt James *of* Scotland, *and the Lady* Margaret

Prince Arthur *married to* Katherine *of* Spaine.

Erkenwalds day was espoused to Prince *Arthur*, eldest sonne to the King, who in *Aprill* following expired in the Towne of *Ludlow*: The yeare after began the famous and most glorious worke of the Kings Chappell at *Westminster*: and upon the eleventh of *February* dyed Queen *Elizabeth*, wife to King *Henry*, in the Tower, lying then in Child-bed,&c.

The death of Prince Arthur.

The death of Queen Elizab.

There was also a commotion in *Devonshire*, and *Cornwall*, about the collection of sixescore thousand pound, which the King had demanded in parliament: the first raisers thereof were a Lawyer and a Blacke-smith, who comming as farre as *Wells*, the Lord *Audley* tooke upon him to be their Generall; who passing through *Kent*, came as farre as Black-Heath, in the sight of *London*, but were then encountred by the Kings forces; the Lord *Audley* was taken and beheaded, the Lawyer & Smith drawn, hanged, and quartered, the rest by the King pardoned.

A commotion in Devonshire *and* Cornwall

The chiefe of the Rebells executed.

But after that fortunate match betwixt the *Scotch* King and the Lady *Margaret*, there was no longer residence there for *Perkin*, who exposed him to his further fortune; yet would not his faire Bride *Katherine Gordon* leave him, though he were forced to forsake the Land, but associated him into *Ireland*; from whence hee was presently sent for by a new company of *Cornish* and *Devonshire* Rebells, who began first to assemble themselves at a Towne called *Bodwin* in *Cornwall*: To whom *Perkin* was no sooner come, but they made him their Captain and

prince,

Prince, who called himſelfe no more *Richard* Duke of *Yorke*, but *Richard* King of *England*, under which title they marched as farre as *Exeter*, and laid ſiege to the City, making againſt it many violent aſſaults: to reſcue which, and to remove the ſiege, the King came with a ſtrong Army, at whoſe approach the multitude ſubmitted themſelves, for their Captaine *Perkin* had forſooke them and tooke Sanctuary at *Bewdley*, and of the Kings free grace were pardoned. King *Henry* loath to violate the priviledge of Sanctuary, would not take him thence perforce, but upon promiſe of life he yeelded himſelfe to the king, who after he had confeſſed unto him all the manner of his jugling, and from whence it came, he brought him up with him towards *London*, where by the way hee was made a ſcorne and mockery of the people: upon the eight and twentieth of *November* he was committed to the Tower, and after ſet at large, and was at free liberty in the Court: From whence he made a ſecond eſcape, and being againe taken, his life was againe pardoned, and he ſent to the Tower.

Perkin *proclaims himſelfe* K. *of* England.

Perkin *taken by the* K.

Again ſent to the Tower.

But for that delicate Lady *Katherine Gordon*, the wife of this counterfeit, his Majeſty much commiſerating that the nobleneſſe of her blood ſhould be ſo much abuſed, heegave unto her the meanes of a Marchioneſſe, a yearely revenue anſwerable to ſo noble a birth and rare a beauty.

The Kings bounty to the Lady.

Whileſt the Dutcheſſe of *Burgundies* creature

was thus in the Tower, hee plotted with the young Earle of *Warwicke*, who had beene there a prisoner from his infancy, who had so farre prevailed with the Lievtenants servants, that upon promise of reward, they had plotted by killing of their Master, to make themselves keepers of the keyes, and set the two prisoners at liberty: which plot being discovered before it came to proofe, upon the sixteenth of *November*, in *White-hall* at *Westminster* for the former predictory practice were arraigned *Perkin Warbeck*, and three others; and being convicted of capitall Treason, *Perkin* and one *Iohn Awater* were soone after hanged at *Tyburne*; and soone after the young Earle of *Warwick*, sonne to the Duke of *Clarence* was beheaded at Tower Hill; and the same day one *Blewet*, and another *Astwood* executed at *Tyburne*.

Perkin *hanged at Tyburne.*

The young Earle *of* Warwick *beheaded on* Tower-hil.

Thus you see how the Dutchesse of *Burgundies* plots were confounded in the death of this *Perkin*: Concerning whom it was thus long before predicted,

(*rare*)
That Mercury *should (though it might seeme*
Consult with Cassiopeia *in her Chaire,*
To fashion new impostures, &c.

And (then the former discourſed of) never were any that carryed such countenance to the deluding of so many forraigne Princes: the Prophet in *Cassiopeia* (with whom *Mercury* consulted) meaning the factious Dutchesse, who by all her

her endevours, ſtudied to diſturbe the peace of that prudent prince King *Henry*, who was able to over-match her in policy, and therefore *Merlin* foreſeeing her future jugling by impoſtures and adulteration (yet ſeeming) Heires to the Crowne, as alſo his ſundry Troubles in the North raiſed by *Scots*, and qualified againe by the valour of the noble Earle of *Surrey*, the Kings Lievtenant and others: the ſequell is verified.

——— But warres god,
By ſword: nor Hermes *by his charming rod*
Shall ought prevail, where power and prudence meet,
And when Religion ſhall devotion greet.
Where all theſe foure at once predominant are
Vain are th'attempts of ſtratagem or warre,
But he who of the former is poſſeſt,
Shall be abroad renown'd, and at home bleſt.

This *Caſſiopeia* was the daughter of *Æolus*, the wife of *Cepheus*, and mother of *Andromeda*, who in her pride of beauty, comparing with the *Nereides*, was after tranſlated amongſt the Stars, in whom the prophet allegorically compreheuds the *Burgundian* Dutcheſſe, I am loth to enter into a further diſcourſe of the paſſages in this Kings Reigne, being excellently and judicially expreſt by Sir *Francis Bacon*, Lord Chancellor in proſe, and in an accurate and ingenious poeme, by Maſter *Charles Allein*. Briefly this worthy and wiſe Prince expired the Saturday before

Caſſiopeia, *and where the alluſion grew.*

The death of Henry the seventh.

before Saint *Georges* day, being the one and twentieth of *Aprill*, at his Mannour of *Richmond*, when hee had raigned three and twenty yeeres, and eight moneths wanting but one day, in whose prayse no pen can bee too prodigall, who studied rather to end his warres by policy, then the profuse effusion of Christian bloud. In so much that all his Neighbour Princes laboured to have with him peace and alliance, and because in all Temporall policies, he farre exceeded all the Christian Princes in his time, reigning: Three sundry Popes, *Alexander* the sixt, *Pius* the Third, and *Iulius* the second, every of them during the time, they held their Ecclesiasticall Soveraignty, by the unanimous consent of their spirituall Counsels, admitted him for a chiefe Defender of the Church above all others: and for a confirmation of the same, sent unto him by three severall famous Embassadours, three rich Swords, and three Caps of Maintenance, who notwithstanding his many costly buildings, and infinite expences as well in forreigne parts, as to pacifie the domestick Tumults and Seditions in his owne Kingdome, left behind him a mighty magazin of Treasure, with riches innumerable, complying with the propheſie:

K. Henry much favoured by the Bishops of Rome.

His great riches at his death.

Fame afar off his glorious acts shall tell,
And Plutus *(neere hand) make his coffers swell.*

Him succeeded his sole son (after the decease of Prince *Arthur*) *Henry* the Eighth of that name, the true and rightfull inheritour to the two Crownes of *England* and *France*. Who began his

his Soveraignty of this Realme, the two and twentieth day of *Aprill*, in the yeere of the Incarnation of our bleſſed Lord and Saviour, one thouſand five hundred and nine: and was crowned at *Weſtminſter*, on the day of the Feaſt of Saint *Iohn Baptiſt*, or Decollations: This Royall Prince, was joyfully received as the ſucceſſour to ſo worthy a Prince as his Father; who was both famous and fortunate, from the beginning to the end of his Reigne, of whom it was thus predicted:

The Coronation of K. Henry the eighth.

The propheſie of Henry the Eighth.

Rouze him ſhall this fierce Lion in his den,
Be favoured of the gods, and fear'd of men.
Gallia *ſhall quake*, Albania *ſtand in aw,*
And Cæſars *ſtoop, when he but ſhews his paw.*
To league with him, Heſperia *ſhall take pride,*
Thoſe, whom the Africke Moores *halfe blacke had dyde,*
He, by his art, ſhall faſhion Muſicall grounds
From th'untun'd Harp, that diſcords only ſoũds
And further, from the ſceptarchy of Hils,
That Europe *aws, and triple-crown, that fils*
The Chriſtian world with terror: take the power
And bring it home unto his Britiſh *bower:*
Blunting the horns of all the Baſhan *Buls,*
And rooting from the Land the razord skuls:
O're Glaſtenbury, *for the eye thats dim,*
May at that day behold a Whiting ſwim.
But none without their faults, ſince Adams *fal:*
He ſhall have many vertues, but not all.
Who never ſpares, (for who can frailty truſt?)
Man in his rage, or woman in his luſt.

CHAP.

Chap. 32.

Prince Henry *married to his brothers wife: Hee winneth* Turwin *and* Turney *in* France: Floden-Field, *with the famous victory against the* Scots. Charles Brandon *Duke of* Suffolke, *marrieth the* French *Queene the Kings sister. The Emperour* Charles *the fift made Knight of the Garter: Peace with* France: *Both Kings defie the Emperour: The death of Cardinall* Wolsey: Henry *divorced from his first wife, Marrieth the Lady* Anne Bulloigne: *Her death: He marrieth the Lady* Jane Seimour: *He revolteth from* Rome. *The Earle of* Hartfords *victories in* Scotland: Bulloigne *besieged and wonne.*

Henry the Seventh who was loth to part with the Dower of the *Spanish* princesse, wrought so by a Dispensation from the pope, that his sonne prince *Henry* was married to the late Widdow of his own brother prince *Arthur* deceased, who comming to the Crown (some say by the counsell of his Father on his death-bed) put to death *Empson* and *Dudley*, who had gathered a great masse of money into the Kings treasury, by exacting, and ex-

MC.15198.64.1

extorting from the Commons, of whom they were extreamly hated, for which piece of juſtice he wonne the hearts of the people, and ſoone after was borne at *Richmond*, upon *New yeares day* prince *Henry* the Kings ſonne, who died upon S. *Matthews* day the yeere following: and ſoon after was the Lord *Dacres* ſent into *Spaine* to aide the King againſt the *Moores*, and Sir *Edward Poynings* into *Gelderland*, to aide the prince of *Caſtile*: And in his fourth yeere the King in perſon invaded *France*, and tooke *Turwin* and *Turney*, having diſcomfited the *French* Hoaſt at a place called *Blewny*, during which time the *Scotch* King raiſed againſt *England*, an hundred thouſand men, whom the Earle of *Surry*, the Kings Lievtenant encountred at a place called *Flodden*, in which battraile the King himſelfe was ſlaine with eight Biſhops, and eleven Earles, beſides of the common ſouldiers innumerable: for which ſervice by him done, King *Henry* created him Duke of *Norfolke*, and his ſonne Earle of *Surrey*.

The birth and death of prince Henry.

King Henry *aydeth* Spaine, *invadeth* France.

Floden Field in which the K. *of* Scots *was ſlain.*

In his ſixt yeere, a peace was concluded betwixt *England* and *France*, and in the ſeventh yeere, the *French* King eſpouſed the Lady *Mary*, the Kings ſiſter in the moneth of *June*, and died upon *New yeares day* next enſuing, wherefore the King ſent for her againe by *Charles Brandon* Duke of *Suffolke*: In *February* was borne the Lady *Mary* the Kings Daughter at *Greenwich*, and in *Aprill* the *French* Queene came over into *England*, and was married to the foreſaid Duke

Peace betwixt England and France.

The birth of the Lady Mary.

Charles Brandon *married to the French Queen* Mary *the kings ſiſter*

of *Suffolke*, in which yeere also *Margaret* Queene of *Scots* the Kings sister fled into *England*, and lay at a place called *Hare-bottle*, where she was delivered of a daughter called *Margaret*, and came to *London* in *May*, and tarried here a whole yeer, and upon the eighth of *May* following, returned again into her Country.

An enterview betwixt the Kings of England and France.

In *October*, the tenth yeer of the King, the Admirall of *France* came into *England*, and *Tournay* was delivered againe to the *French* King, whom after *Henry* met between *Arde* and *Guines*, where were great Triumphs: after there was a solemne meeting betwixt the Emperour and *Charles* the fift and the King of *England*, who went with him to *Graveling*, and after hee went to *Calice* with the King, where hee was royally entertained and feasted; who in the thirteenth of the King, the sixt of *Iune* was honourably received into the City of *London*, by the Lord *Major*, the Aldermen, and the Communalty, who from *London* went to meet the King at *Windsore*, where he was made Knight of the Garter, which was done with great solemnity, and then from *Southampton* hee sailed into *Spain*: soone after *Christian* King of *Denmarke*, came into *England*, and had Royall entertainment from the King.

Charles the fift Emperor made Knight of the Garter.

During these passages, the Earle of *Surrey* Lord Admirall, who before had appeased the tumults and manifold combustions stirred up in *Ireland*, burnt divers Townes in *Britaine* and *Picardy*, and the Duke of *Suffolke* invaded

Britain, Picardy, & France invaded by the English.

France

France with 10000 men, and paſſing the River of *Some*, ſpoyled many Towns and Villages, and returned without oppoſition, and the Duke of *Albany* in *Scotland*, who before had made a vaine attempt againſt *England*, beſieged the Caſtle of *Wark*, but hearing of the Earle of *Surreys* marching towards him, he fled into his Countrey.

Cardinall Wolſey *Embaſſadour into* France.

In the eighteenth yeere of the King, Cardinall *Wolſey* went over into *France* pompouſly attended, where he concluded a league betwixt the King of *England* and the *French* King, who both defied the Emperour, and ſent an Army into *Italy* to make war againſt him, and upon the nineteenth of *October*, the great Maſter of *France* came over to *England*, to ratifie the League made betwixt the two Kings, all which verifie that part of the prediction.

England *and* France *defie the Emperour.*

Rouze him ſhall this fierce Lion in his den,
Be favoured of the gods, and fear'd of men.
Gallia *ſhall quake*, Albania *ſtand in awe,*
And Cæſars *ſtoop, when he but ſhews his paw.*
To league with him, Heſperia *ſhall take pride,*
Thoſe, whom the Africke Moores *halfe blacke have dyde.*

By *Albania* is meant *Scotland*, ſo called from *Albanactus*, the ſecond ſonne of *Brute*, the firſt King thereof, and by *Heſperia Spaine*, who after the *African Moores* had long poſſeſſed the greateſt part of the Land by enterchangable marri-

age betwixt them and the Natives, the *Spaniards* are black and tawny even to this day.

A divorce sought by the King betwixt him and Queen Katherine.

In the one and twentieth yeare, the King having cast his eye upon a new Mistris, pretending a matter of conscience, hee began to consider with himselfe, that hee had long incestuously lived with his brothers wife, for which cause the Legats of *Rome* met with the King at *Black Fryers*, about the lawfulnesse or unlawfulnesse of that marriage. Amongst the rest Cardinall *Wolsey* standing stiffe against a Divorce, in *October* following was discharged of his Chancellourship, and presently after was a peace concluded betwixt the Emperour and the King, and in the yeere after the great Cardinall, who had been arrested of high Treason, and by that meanes forfeited his infinite estate to the King, died on Saint *Andrews* in a poore Fryery, not without suspition of poyson.

The death of Card. Wolsey.

After by a legall course, and due processe of Law, the king was divorced from the Lady *Katherine* his brothers wife, and soone after married to the Lady *Anne Bulloigne*, who upon *Whitsunday*, was crowned Queene, and on *Midsommer* day following dyed the *French* Queene *Mary* the kings sister and wife to *Charles Brandon* Duke of *Suffolke*. And on the Eve of the Nativity of the blessed Virgin, following, was born the Lady *Elizabeth* at *Greenwich*, in which yeere, (as an happy presage of her future love unto the Gospell) it was enacted that no man should sue any appeale to *Rome*.

The King married to the Lady Anne Bolloigne.

The birth of the Lady Elizabeth.

In

In *January*, the ſeven and twentieth of the King, died the Lady *Katherine* princeſſe Dowager, late wife to the King, and in the 28 of his Reigne, Queene *Anne Bolloigne*, with her brother the Lord *Rochford*, *Noris*, *Weſton*, *Breerton*, and *Marks* were attainted of high Treaſon, and beheaded, and ſoone after the King married the Lady *Iane Seymour*, in the yeere one thouſand five hundred thirty ſeven: on Saint *Edwards* eve in *Iune*, Prince *Edward* was borne at *Hampton* Court, and the three and twentieth of *October* following died Queene *Iane*, and lyeth buried at *Windſore:* then was the Biſhop of *Rome* with all his uſurped power quite aboliſhed out of the Realme, and the King aſſumed to himſelfe the ſupremacy over the Church in *England* and *Ireland*, to whom were granted the firſt-fruits, (before paid to the pope) with the Tenths of all ſpirituall poſſeſſions.

The death of Q. Katherine.

The King married to the Lady Jane Seymour.

The birth of Pr. Edward.

The death of Sir Thomas Moore, *&c.*

For denying of whoſe Supremacy, that famous and learned Gentleman Sir *Thomas Moore* Lord Chancellour of *England*, with the Biſhop of *Rocheſter*, were beheaded, and preſently after, three Monks of the *Charterhouſe* for the ſome offence. Then followed the diſſolution of all the Abbeys, Fryeries and, Nunneries through the whole Realme, when the Maſſe and all *Romiſh* Superſtitions were forbidden, and divers Images that had Engines to make their eyes open and ſhut, and their other limbes to move and ſtirre, were broken to pieces and defaced, and all Fryers, Monks, Canons, and Nuns were for-

forced to change their Habits, and forsake their Cloysters. A proclamation also was made, which hath beene since established as a Law, that the *English* Bible should bee read in every *Church* throughout the Realme, and that no *Holydayes* should be solemnized and observed, except our *Ladydayes*, the *Apostles*, the *Evangelists*, *Saint George*, and *Saint Mary Magdalen*, and that *Saint Marks* Eve, and Saint *Lawrence* Eve should not be kept as fasting days. And that children should not goe decked and garnished (as they doe on Feasting dayes) upon Saint *Nicholas*, Saint *Katherine*, Saint *Clements*, and the holy *Innocents*, and the like, all which comply with the propheſie.

The English Bible commanded to bee read in Churches.

——— *He from the ſceptarchy of Hils,*
That Europe *awes, and triple-crown, that fils*
The Christiã world with terror, takes the power
And brings it home unto his British *bower:*
Blunting the horns of all the Bashan *Buls,*
And rooting from the Land the razord skuls:

The propheſie explained.

By the Sceptarchy of Hils, meaning the seven Hils on which the City *Rome* standeth, and further taking on himselfe to be the supreme Head of the Church within his own Dominions, he takes away that power from the Popes Triple-crowne, to which all the Christian Kingdomes else were in vassallage: By blunting the hornes of the *Bashan* Buls meaning the Popes Writs of Excommunications, Interdictions, Anathemaes, or Cursings, which are called his Buls, the terrour whereof hee now vilifies and sets at nought:

nought: by rooting the razord ſculs from the Land, is meant the ſuppreſſion of Fryers and Monks, who had the upper part of their heads alwayes ſhaven, &c. Many were thoſe who ſuffered for denying the Supremacie, as Fryer *Forreſt*, who was hanged and burnt in *Smith-field*, with the Image of *Darvell Gathren* in *Wales*: and for the ſame offence ſuffered the Abbots of *Reading*, of *Colcheſter*, and the great rich Abbot of *Glaſtenbury*, whoſe name was *Whiting*, whom the King commanded to be hanged upon the top of the Tower, an eminent place, and viſibly afarre, for which way ſoever a man travels towards that Towne, it may be ſeene twenty miles diſtant, now it ſeem'd a thing impoſſible, that the Sea with his greateſt inundation ſhould ſwell ſo high, that any Fiſh ſhould float over or upon it, yet ſo ſaith the propheſie, and all ſuch are myſtically delivered, parabolically, or in allegoricall figures.

Divers who ſuffered for denying the Kings Supremacie.

O're Glaſtenbury, *for the eye thats dim,*
May at that day behold a Whiting ſwim.

The place being ſo conſpicuous and apparant, that one with halfe an eye, might ſee his body waving betwixt the two Elements of Earth and Aire.

After diverſe rebellions in *Ireland*, for which the Earle of *Kildare* was committed, and died a naturall death during his impriſonment in the Tower

Rebellions in Ireland.

Tower, and that his ſonne made a new inſurrection, and ſlew the Biſhop of *Develin*, and that for another Rebellion, *Thomas Fitzgarret* with five of his Vncles were drawne, hanged, and quartered, and that the Lord *Leonard Gray* was beheaded on the Tower-hill, for divers Treaſons done in *Ireland*, during the time hee was there Deputy for the King: yet the King ſo wiſely and diſcreetly demeaned himſelfe towards that Nation, that in the thirtieth third yeare of his reigne the Earle of *Deſmond*, and the great *Oneile* ſubmitted themſelves to his mercy and grace: after which the great *Oneile* was created Earle of *Tyron*, and his ſon Baron of *Doucannon*. Thus you ſee

The great Oneile *made Earle of* Tyron.

He by his Art could faſhion Muſicall grounds
From th'untun'd harp, that diſcords only ſounds

By the Harpe, which is the Armes of the kingdome, meaning *Ireland* it ſelfe, &c. For Treaſon alſo were beheaded at the Tower-Hill *Thomas Cromwell* Earle of *Eſſex*, and Vicar generall of *England*, (who had beene once a faithfull ſervant to Cardinall *Woolſey*, and after entertained, and raiſed by the King: who (as it is commonly voyc't) put it firſt into the kings head to pull downe the Abbyes, and make a diſſolution of the Monaſteries:) and with him dyed the Lord *Hungerford*.

The death of Cromwel *Earle of* Eſſex

In the thirty fift yeare of the king, the Earle of *Hartford* being made Liverenant Generall for

for his warres in *Scotland*, in regard of divers affronts given him: the fourth of *May* he landed at *Leith*, burning and deſtroying the Countrey, ſparing neither Caſtle, Towne, Pile, nor village, for hee ranſacked and laid waſte the Borrough and towne of *Edenborrow*, with the Abbey called *Holy roodhouſe*, and the Kings Palace neare adjoyning, the Towne of *Leith* alſo with the Haven and Pire: the Caſtle and Village of *Cragmiller*, the Abbey of *New Bottell*, with part of *Muſkelborrough* Towne, the *Chappell* of the Lady of *Lauret*, *Preſton* Town, & the Caſtle of *Harinton* Towne, with the Friers and Nunnery: a Caſtle of *Oliver Sanckers*, the Towne of *Dundbarre*, *Laureſton*, with the *Grange*, *Vrilaw*, *Weſtcrag*, *Enderlaw*, the Pile and the Towne *Broughton*, *Cheſter Fell's*, *Crawned*, *Dudiſtone*, *Stanhouſe*, the *Fiker*, *Beverton*, *Franent*, *Shenſtone*, *Marcle*, *Farpren*, *Kirklandhill*, *Katherwyke*, *Belton*, *Eaſtbarnes*, *Howland*, *Butterden*, *Quickwoe*, *Blackbourne*, *Raunton*, *Bildi*, and the Tower, with many other Townes and Villages by the Fleet on the Sea-ſide, as *Kincorne*, Saint *Miners*, the Queens Ferry, part of *Petinwaines*, *&c.* Which done, for their brave and notable ſervice there done, hee made at *Leith* forty five knights. And thus was the king victorious over *Scotland*.

The Earle of Hartfords *voyage into* Scotland.

Forty five Knights made at Leith.

In this interim Warres were proclaimed againſt *France*, ſo that the king gave free liberty and licence to all his ſubjects, to uſe the *French* king, and all that depend upon him to

King Henry *in person invadeth* France.

The siege of Bulloine.

Bulloine *taken by the* K.

their best advantage and commodity: and the same yeare hee prepared an Army to invade *France*, and himselfe in person the fourteenth of *July* departed from *Dover* towards *Callais*, and the next day removed to *Morgisen*: upon the twenty sixt of the same month the Campe removed to high *Bulloine*, and there camped on the north-east part of the Towne: two dayes after the Watch Tower, call'd the old man, was taken, and the day after base *Bulloine* was won: and upon the thirteenth of *Septemb.* the Town was victoriously conquered by *Henry* the eight king of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*, defendor of the faith, who upon humble petition made by the *French*, suffered them to depart the Towne with bagge and baggage: and this year were taken by the English fleet 300 and odde ships of the *French*, to the great enriching of this nation, and the great impoverishing of theirs.

CAP.

*C.15196.64

CAP. 33.

The death of Henry *the eighth:* Edward *the ſixt crowned: a calculation of his reigne:* Muſſelborow *field wonne by the Lord Protector: The death of the two brothers, the Lord High Admirall, and Lord protector: a Character of the Duke of* Somerſet: *the death of King* Edward, *not without ſuſpition of poyſon: His Character, &c.*

THe yeare following being the thirty ſeventh of the kings reigne, upon the thirteenth of *June*, being Whitſunday, in *London* was proclaimed a generall peace betwixt the two kingdomes of *England* and *France*, with a ſolemne proceſſion at the time of the proclamation, and that night were great Bone-fires made in the City and Suburbs for the celebration of the ſaid union: and upon the one and twentieth of *Auguſt* came over from the *French* king *Monſieur Denebalt*, high Admirall of *France*, and brought with him the Sacre of *Deepe*, with twelve Gallyes bravely accommodated, who landed at the Tower, where all the great Ordinance were ſhot off, and he received by many peeres of the

Peace concluded betwixt England *and* France.

Monſieur Denebalt *Embaſſador fom the* French *King.*

Realme, conveighed to the Biſhop of *Londons* palace, where hee reſted two nights; and on Monday, the twenty third of the ſame month, he rode towards *Hampton* Court, where the king then lay: whom the young prince *Edward* met with a royall traine, to the number of five hundred and fourty in velvet Coats, and the princes Livery were with ſleeves of cloath of gold, and halfe the Coats embroydered, where were eight hundred Horſes richly capariſon'd, and riders ſuiting to the ſtate, who brought him to the Mannor of *Hampton* Court: The next morning the KING and hee received the Sacrament together in confirmation of the late concluded peace. After that were many Maſques and Showes, in which the very Torch bearers were apparrelled in gold, with coſtly feaſts and banquets, during the ſpace of ſixe dayes: after, with many great gifts given to him, and his chiefe followers, hee returned to his countrey.

His entertainment by Prince Edward.

Magnificent Showes.

The next yeare, being the thirty eighth of the King, upon the ninth of *January*; by the Kings expreſſe command was beheaded on the Tower-hill that noble and valorous gentleman the Earle of *Surrey*, who had ingaged his perſon in *Picardy*, *Normandy*, *Ireland*, *Scotland*, *&c.* from whence he never came, but crowned with victory: and the twenty eighth of the ſame Month, the King himſelfe departed the world, in the yeare one thouſand five hundred forty ſeven, whoſe body was moſt Royally intombed

The death of the noble Earle of Surrey.

The death of Henry *the eighth.*

tombed at *Windſor* the ſixteenth of *February* following.

King *Edward* the ſixt began his dominion over the Realme of *England*, the one and thirtieth of *Ianuary*, in the yeare of grace one thouſand five hundreth forty ſeven; and upon the nineteenth of *February* enſuing hee rode with his Vncle Sir *Edward Seymour*, Lord gouernour and Protector, and Duke of *Somerſet*, with the Nobility of the Land, from the Tower through the City of *London*, and ſo to *Weſtminſter*, and was annoynted and Crowned by Doctour *Thomas Cranmer*, Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, who after miniſtred unto him the Sacraments, with other divine Ceremonies, according to the Proteſtant reformed Church. Of this Kings Birth and Reigne it was thus calculated.

The inauguration of Edward the ſixt.

By birth a Cæſar, *and in hopes as great,*
Shall next aſcend unto th' Imperiall ſeat.
Who, 'ere mature, (cropt in his tender bloome)
Shal more againſt, then Cæſar *could for* Rome.
He, th' Ariſtocracy Monarchall makes:
This from the triple Crowne the Scepter takes.
Vpright he ſhall betweene two Baſes ſtand,
One in the ſea fixt, the other on the land.
Theſe ſhall his pupillage ſtrongly maintaine,
Secure the continent and ſcoure the maine.
But theſe ſupporters will be tane away
By a Northumbers *Wolfe, and* Suffolks *Gray.*
Then fall muſt this faire ſtructure built on high,
And th' Engliſh, like the Roman Cæſar *dye.*

In his firſt yeare, Sir *Thomas Seimour*, the Kings unkle, brother to the Duke of *Somerſet*, being Lord high Admirall, by the Viz-Admirall, called Sir *Andrew Dudley*, having no other Veſſells but the Paunce and the Hart; and theſe ſingly manned, there was a great conflict at Sea with three tall *Scottiſh* ſhips (in the narrow Seas) doubly manned and trimmed with great Ordinance: notwithſtanding which, hee tooke them, and brought them into *Orwell* Haven, where he had good booty, and ſtore of priſoners.

Victory by ſea.

And the ſame yeare in *Auguſt*, the Lord Protector, the Duke of *Somerſet*, with the Earle of *Warwicke*, and others, marcht with a noble Army into *Scotland*, and not farre from *Edenborrough*, at a place called *Moſſelborrough*, the *Engliſh* and *Scotch* Hoaſts met, where betweene them was fought a ſharpe and cruell battaile: in which in the end the *Engliſh* were victors, and in which were ſlaine of the *Scots* foureteene thouſand, and priſoners taken of Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen, to the number of fifteene hundred: This yeare alſo was ordained that the Communion ſhould be received in both kinds; and at that time *Stephen Gardner*, Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, for oppoſing the ſame, was commanded to the Tower: Commandement alſo was given, to all the Curats of every pariſh Church throughout *England*, that no Coarſe ſhould be buryed before ſixe a Clocke in the morning, nor after ſixe at night: and that when

Muſſelborough *field.*

Gardner *committed to the Tower.*

when any dyed the Bell ſhould ring three quarter of an houre at leaſt.

In this Interim, the two great Dukes of *Northumberland* and *Suffolke*, *Dudly* and *Gray*, privately murmuring, and openly maligning, that the Kings two Uncles ſhould beare ſuch great authority in the Kingdome: by which, their glories ſeemed not onely eclipſed, but quite darkned, the elder brother commanding the Land, the younger the Sea; the one Lord Protector, the other Lord High Admirall; ſo that the whole Dominion and Soveraignty of the kingdome (the kings name excepted) was divided betwixt them: And further conſidering, that it was in vaine for them to attaine to their owne ambitious ends, but by ſundring this fraternall tye, and unlooſing this Gordian knot of Conſanguinity, which had beene ſo long inſeparably continued betwixt them: they therefore projected betwixt themſelves, how this (almoſt impoſſible thing) might be brought to paſſe, and doubting the event, if they ſhould attempt to worke by their ſervants, as to corrupt them with Bribes, or the like: they therefore tooke a nearer and more ſafe courſe to practiſe it by their Wives, and to draw their balas from out of their owne boſomes: and moſt ſucceſſively to their purpoſe, thus it happened.

The two Dukes of Northumberland *and* Suffolk.

Their plots gainſt the Protector, and Admirall.

The Wives made themeans to betray the Husbands.

Sir *Thomas Seimer* Lord High Admirall, having married the Queene Dowager, (whoſe good Fortune it was of all the reſt of the kings wives

wives to ſurvive her Husband) conteſted with her ſiſter in law for precedence and priority of place: to which the Protectors wife ſtanding upon her prerogative, could by no meanes bee wonne to give way: This emulation betwixt the two ſiſters, fitly ſorting to the Dukes purpoſes, (for the one challenged the right hand, as once being Queene, and the other claimed it, as wife to the preſent Protector:) To this new kindled fire, the two Dukes bring fuell, *Dudly* incourageth the one ſecretly, *Gray* the other privately, ſo that the Wives ſet the Husbands at oddes by taking their parts; ſo that by the inſtigation of thoſe emulous and incenſed Ladies, a mortall hatred grew betwixt the two brothers: inſomuch, that in the third year of the King, the Admirall was queſtioned for the ill managing his Office, and ſundry Articles preferred in Court againſt him: ſo that he was condemn'd in Parliament, and his head ſtrooke off, the Protector his brother ſigning the Warrant for his death.

The death of the Lord high Admirall.

The one being thus removed, there was the leſſe difficulty to ſupplant the other; for in the ſame Month of *February*, in which the Admirall loſt his head, was the Protector committed to the Tower, by the Lords of the Counſaile, of which the two Dukes were chief, and many Articles of Treaſon and ill government of the ſtate commenced againſt him: but about a yeare after his confinement, by his ſubmiſſion to the Lords, and interceſſion made for him

him by the K. upon the ſixt of *February* hee was releaſed, & injoy'd his former offices & honors: but all this was but a lightning before death, for his two great & potent adverſaries ſtil proſecute their malice againſt him: inſomuch that not long after, calling him to a ſecond account, when he had nobly acquit himſelf at the Barre of all treaſon objected againſt him, he was in the *Guild Hall* of *London* (not by a Jury of his peeres) by twelve men convicted and condemned of Felony: for which, on a Scaffold on Tower-Hill, hee ſuffered death: verifying what was before ſpoken of the young King.

The Lord Protector put to death for felony.

Vpright he ſhall betweene two Baſes ſtand,
One in the ſea fixt, th' other on the land.
Theſe ſhall his pupillage ſtrongly maintaine,
Secure the continent, and ſcoure the maine.
But theſe ſupporters will be tane away
By a Northumbers *Wolfe, and* Suffolks *Gray.*

It is ſo manifeſt it needs no Comment.

This *Edward Seimour* was (the ſonne of Sir *Edward Seimour*) knighted by *Henry the eight*, who had married the Lady *Iane*, his naturall ſiſter: He after created him Viſcount *Beauchamp*, in the yeare one thouſand five hundred thirty ſixe, and the yeare following Earle of *Hereford*: after that he was inſtalled Knight of the Garter, made Lord great Chamberlain of *England*, & one of the honourable privy Counſail, much favoured of the eighth *Henry*, who in his laſt

A Character of the L. Protector

His honours and offices.

Testament, instituted him one of the chiefe of his sixteene Executors: after this King *Edward* created him Baron *de sancto Mauro*, then Duke of *Somerset*: He was next by a generall voyce of parliament, made *Protector* over the Kings person, and of all his Kingdomes and Dominions Governour, and Lord Generall of all the Kings forces by Land and Sea: He was moreover Lord high Treasurer, and Earle Martiall of *England*, Captaine of the two Islands of *Gernsie* and *Iersie*, and Chancellour of the University of *Cambridge*: In all which Offices and Dignities he demeaned himselfe with such Honourable bounty, and singular piety, that some have not doubted to Catalogue him amongst our English Martyrs.

The Duke of Somerset *catalogu'd amongst the English Martyrs.*

But to returne to the History; by this protectors meanes who was a constant *Protestant*, Images were puld downe through all Churches of *England*: Marriage of priests made lawfull by parliament, and Doctor *Bonner* with other *Romish Prelates*, deposed from their Bishopricks, and other of the Reformed Church supplyed their places; making good what was before calculated of the young King.

The suppressing of the Romish Religion.

By birth a Cæsar, *and in hopes as great,*
Shall next ascend unto th' Imperiall seat.
Who, ere mature, (cropt in his tender bloome)
Shal more against, then Cæsar *could for* Rome.
He, th' Aristocracy Monarchall makes:
This from the triple Crowne the Scepter takes.

This

This needs ſome explication: Hee is called young *Cæſar*, as being produced into the world, by the cutting or ripping up of his mothers wombe, from which the great *Roman Iulius*, (borne after the ſame manner) had added to him, the name of *Cæſar*, which Title hee left as Hereditary to all the ſucceeding Emperours after him: who as hee reduced the *Ariſtocracie*, which was the government of the Senate and Optimates into one entire monarchall Diadem placing the Empire in *Rome*, ſo of the contrary this young King, from the great Pontifex of *Rome*, who in time wearing a Triple Diademe, and thereby challenging power in Heaven potently upon earth, regency and predominance over Hell, and moreover, making earthly Kings and Emperours to acknowledge unto him a preheminence and ſupremacie, making them to kiſſe his feet, with other ſervil offices; he by oppoſing this Soveraignty, and ſhrinking his head out of ſo extreame a ſervitude, may bee truly ſaid to have done more againſt *Rome* in his pious devotion, then *Roman Iulius* did for *Rome* in his great magnanimity and proweſſe.

The propheſie explained.

Now to prove that King *Edward* was a *Cæſar*: the young Lady *Jane Seymour*, being at *Hampton* Court, when the time of her teeming came, and there was ſmall hope of her delivery, news was brought to the King that her throes were violent upon her, and that the Infant could not be brought into the world, but by the death of the mother: For by preſerving the

To prove King Edward *a* Cæſar.

one, the other must needs perish. When that his pleasure was demanded what was to be done in so strict an exigent, Hee commanded that the child should be cut from the wombe, saying, *Sure I am that I can have more wives, but uncertaine I am whether I can have more children, &c.*

The death of Edward *the sixt.*

Upon the sixt day of *July*, in the yeere one thousand five hundred fifty three, *Iohn Barnes* Mercer, being Lord *Major*, and *William Garret*, and *Iohn Mainard* Sheriffs, at *Greenwich* departed out of this world King *Edward* of that name the sixth, in the sixteenth of his age, and the seventh of his Reigne, whom some say, that hee died of a pleurisie, others that hee was poysoned by a Nosegay: For it was generally murmured by the people, that the Uncles being removed, the Nephew could not long remaine after, which best complyes with the former calculation, which saith,

Then fall must this faire structure built on hie,
And th' English like the Roman Cæsar *die.*

The first made away in the Court, the other murdered in the Capitoll: of which hopefull and toward Prince, this character is left to future memory.

His Character. His zeale to the propagation of true Religion.

Hee was carefull for the establishing of the *Protestant Religion*, to have it flourish through all his Dominions. The Masse hee abolished, and Images demolished, the learned men of his time he greatly incouraged, moving them to in-

interpret the Scriptures to the capacities of the vulgar, and commanded the Liturgie and Common Prayers to bee read in the *Engliſh* tongue.

In his minority, hee had maturity of judgement, and was literated in all the Arts liberall: of a retentive memory: He knew all the Ports and Havens in *England*, *France*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: being as well acquainted with their ſcites as their names. In the *Greeke*, *Latin*, *French*, *Italian*, and *Spaniſh* Tongues extraordinarily verſt, in *Logicke*, *Morall Philoſophy* and the *Mathematicks* converſant; in *Cicero*, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, and *Saluſt*, frequent, *Heſiod* and *Sophocles*, he underſtood, and was able to interpret *Iſocrates* from the originall. He was wiſely witty, even to wonder, his body featured, and his minde modelled almoſt to miracles: religiouſly he lived, devoutly he dyde: that he breath'd his laſt, it is certaine, but where his body lyes buried, to us moſt uncertain.

His knowledge in all kindes of literature.

CHAP.

Chap. 34.

The Lady Jane *proclaimed Queene.* Northumberlands *Commission to suppresse the Lady* Mary: *Hee is arrested of high Treason: The Coronation of Queen* Mary: *A prediction of her Reigne: The* Romish *Religion restored: The death of* Northumberland: *of* Suffolke: *Of* Guilford Dudley: *Of the Lady* Jane Gray: *Her character: The death of* Cranmer, Ridley, *and* Latimer: *The life of Cardinall* Poole, *twice elected Pope: His comming into* England, *and made Archbishop of* Canterbury: *His death.*

The ambition of the two Dukes.

THe two ambitious Dukes of *Northumberland* and *Suffolke*, thinking to disable, the two sisters *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, the daughters of King *Henry* the Eighth, from any lawfull claime to the Crowne, as reputing them no better then bastards, had made a marcht betwixt *Guilford Dudley*, the fourth sonne to *Northumberland*, and the Lady *Jane Gray* sole daughter to the Duke of *Suffolke*, and pretending that King *Edward* in his last will nominated her Heire apparant to the Crowne after his death, they caused the said Lady *Jane* presently upon the Kings death,

death, *June* the tenth, to be proclaimed Queene, and true and immediate Heire to the Kingdome, in ſundry places of the City of *London*, which proved to her utter ruine.

The Lady Jane Gray *proclaimed Queen.*

The Lady *Mary* being at that time at *Framingham* in *Suffolke*, was much troubled at the report of ſuch diſaſtrous news, which the more perplexed her, becauſe ſhe had intelligence, that it was done by the Nobility, and the whole body of the Councell, to whom the *Suffolke* men aſſembling (as not liking ſuch ſhuffling in ſtate) proffered her their voluntary aſſiſtance, to poſſeſſe her in her lawfull and indubitate inheritance: Before which time, The great Duke of *Northumberland*, having a large Commiſſion granted him by the Lords of the Councell, and ſigned with the great Seale of *England*, had raiſed an army with intent both to ſuppreſſe and ſurprize the Lady *Mary*, which was no ſooner advanced, and the riſing of the *Suffolke* men bruited at Court, but the Lords in generall, either for feare of the Commons, or repenting them of the injury done unto the rightfull Inheritrix, they ſent a countermand after the Duke to lay by his Armes, who when he thought himſelfe in his greateſt power, being abandoned by the Nobility, he was alſo forſaken of the Commons, ſo that at *Cambridge*, hee with his ſonnes and ſome few ſervants were left alone: who thinking thereby to make his peace in the open market place, proclaimed the Lady *Mary* Queen of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*, *Defender of the*

The Suffolke *men adhere to the Lady* Mary.

Northumberlands *Commiſſion to fetch in the Lady* Mary.

Northumberland *arrested of high treason*

the Faith, &c. notwithstanding which, in *Kings Colledge* hee was arrested of high Treason, and from thence brought up to *London*, and committed to the Tower.

The Lady Mary *received for Queen.*

Then was the Lady *Mary* generally received as Queen,& so proclaimed through the Kingdom, the twentieth of *July*, and the third of *August* following, shee tooke possession of the Tower, and during her abode there, released all the *Romish* Bishops there imprisoned. From thence she road in great state through *London* towards her palace of *Westminster*, where shee was solemnely crowned by *Stephen Gardiner*, Bishop of *Winchester*, her sister the Lady *Elizabeth* being present at her Coronation: Of this Queene and her Reign, it is thus predicted.

A prediction of her and her Reigne.

Then shall the masculine Scepter cease to sway,
And to a Spinster, *the whole Land obey,*
Who to the Papall Monarchy shall restore
All that the Phœnix had fetcht thence before,
Then shall come in the faggot and the stake,
And they, of Convert bodies bonefires make:
Match shall this Lioness with Cæsars *sonne*
From the Pontifick sea a pool shall runne
That wide shal spread it's waters, and to a flood
In time shal grow: made red with martyrs blood.
Men shall her short unprosperous Reigne deplore
By losse at sea, and damage on the shore:
Whose heart being dissected, you in it
May in large characters find Calice *writ.*

Now

Now ceaſed the Heire Male to Reign, and the Scepter was diſpoſed to the Female, which was not ſeen nor known, ſince long before the Conqueſt: when *Bonduca*, or as ſome call her *Boadicia* ſoveraignized. In the time of *Nero Cæſar*: and *Spiuſter* was an ancient *Britiſh* Title given to the Feminine ſex before King *Edgars* Reign, by which name, even princeſſes being convented, or ſummoned into any Court are called unto this day: but to proceed with the Hiſtory, in the tenth day of the moneth after her Coronation, began a Parlament, in which beſides the ſupplanting of the proteſtant Religion, which began to be eſtabliſht in the dayes of King *Edward*; were convicted and attainted of high Treaſon, *Iohn* Duke of *Northumberland*, *Thomas Cranmer* late Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, Sir *Ambroſe Dudley* Knight, *Guilford Dudley* Eſquire, and Husband to the Lady *Gray*, Sir *Andrew Dudley* Knight with others: as *William* Marqueſſe of *Northampton*, *Iohn* Earle of *Warwicke*, &c. and the twelfth of *Auguſt*, was beheaded on the Tower Hill *Iohn Dudley*, Duke of *Northumberland*, Sir *Iohn Gates*, and Sir *Thomas Palmer*.

A Parlament in which Romiſh *Religion is reſtored.*

The death of the Duke of Northumberland.

Thus you ſee the end of *Northumberland*: if any bee deſirous to know alſo what became of *Suffolke*, I can parallell him to none more genuinely than to the Duke of *Buckingham*: Hee had a *Baniſter*, this an *Vnderwood*, a ſervant raiſed by him, to a faire revenue, and to whoſe ſafeguard he had committed his perſon, who in

Underwood *a ſecond* Baniſter.

a ſpacious hollow Tree, for ſome few moneths concealed him, whether hee brought him meat and drinke with millions of oaths ingag'd, for his truth and fidelity, but being eaſily corrupted with ſome ſmall quantity of gold, and many large and liberall promiſes, hee *Judas*-like betrayde his Maſter, and delivered him up to the Noble Earle of *Huntington*, who with a ſtrong guard brought him through *London*, to the Tower: He was after arraigned in the great Hall at *Weſtminſter*, and ſoone after on the Tower Hill loſt his head.

The death of the Duke of Suffolke.

Yet probable it was, that the Queene had pardoned that offence, had he not ſeconded it with another, by confedering with Sir *Thomas Wiat* of *Kent*, to interpoſe her marriage with *Philip* of *Spain*, ſonne to the Emperour, and to that purpoſe departed ſecretly into *Warwicke* and *Leiceſterſhire*, where hee knew himſelfe beſt affected, and made their open Proclamation to keep all ſtrangers from the Land, for which hee fell into the Queens irreconciliable diſpleaſure, which not only haſted his owne end, but the deaths of *Guilford* and the Lady *Iane*, for the Statiſts at that time, eſpecially thoſe that were devoted to the *Romiſh* faction, held it no policie to ſuffer any of the contrary Religion to live, eſpecially if they could intrap them in any quiddits of Law which might be ſtretcht to be made Capitall, therefore upon the twelfth of *February*, in the yeere one thouſand five hundred fifty foure, it being the firſt day of the

weeke

week *Guildford Dudley* was brought to the Scaffold upon the Tower hill, where when hee had with all Chriſtian devotion made his peace with Heaven: hee with a ſetled and unmoved conſtancy ſubmitted himſelfe to the ſtroake of death, which was given in the ſight of his excellent Spouſe, who to that purpoſe was placed in a window within the Tower, the object ſtrikeing more cold to her heart, then the ſight of that fatall axe, by which ſhee was preſently to ſuffer, which ſhe moſt patiently endured.

The death of Guilford Dudley.

The death of the Lady Jane Gray.

Never was ſweet Ladies death more paſſionately bewayled, being remarkable in Judge *Morgan*, who pronounced the ſentence againſt her, who preſently after fell mad, and in all his diſtracted ravings, *Cryed, Take away the Lady* Jane, *take her from mee; and in that extream diſtemperature with theſe words in his mouth ended his life*: ſome report that ſhee was young with childe at the time of her ſuffering, but though her *Romiſh* oppoſites were many, and the times bloudy, Chriſtian charity may perſwade they would not uſe ſuch inhumanity, eſpecially againſt a perſon of her Royall bloud and Linage: ſhe was an excellent Lady, endued with more vertues and extraordinary endowments then is frequently found in that ſex: being a patterne to others for true Religion and Piety, of which her godly Oration to the people, and holy prayer at her death, extant in Mr. *Fox* his *Martyrologie* abundantly witneſſe: ſhee exceeded not ſixteen yeeres of age, of an excel-

The death of Iudge Morgan.

The Lady Janes *character Her age at her death.*

lent feature, and amiable aspect, of Learning incredible, in wit incomparable, of inforced Honours so unambitious, that she never attyred her selfe in any Regall ornaments, but constrainedly and with teares. Divers of her Latin Verses have beene spread to posterity, and of her Works in the *English* Tongue, an Epistle to a learned man falne off from the Truth, and turnd *Apostate*, another Epistle to her sister, with a Colloquy or reasoning with one *Freckman* a *Romist* about Faith and the Sacraments, &c.

The deaths of Cranmer, Latimer and Ridley.

Soon after followed the deaths of Doctour *Cranmer*, Archbishop of *Canterbury*, (acquit of Treason, and condemed of Heresie) *Nicholas Ridley* late Bishop of *London*, and *Hugh Latimer*: with infinite others, insomuch that scarce any City or Market Towne thorow the whole Kingdome in which some pious professor or other, had not felt the scorching of the fire and faggot, I should fill whole pages to reckon up particulars: only thus in briefe, it is observed, that Queene *Maries* Reigne was the shortest of any Prince since the Conquest, that wore the Crown (*Richard* the Thirds only excepted) and that more Christian bloud was spilt in her few yeeres (concerning Religion and matter of conscience) then had been shed in any one Kings Reigne, since the time of King *Lucius*, the first establisher of Christianity in this his Realme of *England*, which recollects the memory of the former prophesie, where he speaks of the *Spinster*.

The great tyranny used in her time.

Who

*EC.E5198.641fa

Who to the Papall Monarch ſhall reſtore
All that the Phœnix had fetcht thence before.
Then ſhall come in the Faggot and the Stake,
And they of convert bodies bonefires make, &c.

By the Phœnix meaning King *Edward*, ſo tearmed by *Hieronymus Cardanus*, becauſe hee was unparalleld in his time: and by the Convert bodies, thoſe who where converted to the reformed and proteſtant Religion: for which cauſe thouſands in ſundry places of the Kingdome ſuffered. Now why Queene *Mary* was ſo zealous to propagate the popiſh faith, it followeth next to enquire, ſhe was brought up under her Mothers wing; a Spaniard, who being of the Spaniſh blood, perſiſted in the Spaniſh beliefe: but when her mother, after three yeares divorce from the King expired, ſhe was committed to the guardianſhip of *Margaret*, Counteſſe of *Salisbury*, and daughter to *George* Duke of *Clarence*, brother to *Edward* the fourth, who dyed in the Tower. This Counteſſe had one onely ſonne, called *Reignold Pool*, who was of great familiarity with the Lady *Mary* in their minority, and devoting himſelf wholly to the ſtudy of the Arts, was initiated in *Maudline* Colledge in *Oxford*: but being a very young man left the Univerſity, and having a great deſire to travaile croſt the ſeas, and went into *Italy*: ſeven years he ſpent in the Academy of *Padua*, where entring into great familiarity with

Why Queen Mary was ſo forward to preferre the Romiſh Religion.

Of Cardinal Pool from his minority.

with *Peter Bent*, (chiefe Secretary to the pope, then raigning) hee brought him into ſuch reputation with his holineſſe, that in the yeare one thouſand five hundred thirty eight, he was made Cardinall, and imployed in Embaſſie both to the Emperor and *French* King: in which negotiations hee is ſaid to have dealt perfidiouſly with his owne Liege Lord and Soveraigne King *Henry* the eighth: (*For dangerous is an Engliſh man being once Italionated.*)

His imploiment to the Emperor and French K.

The incenſed King not able to reach the Son, who was the Actor, yet uſed his power againſt the mother as an acceſſary; who being queſtioned for ſending her ſonne dayly ſupplies of money from *England* into *Italy*, was for that convicted of Treaſon, and being foureſcore yeares of age, was beheaded: This Cardinall *Poole* was of the Royall blood, as lineally deſcended from *George* Duke of *Clarence*, of ſingular learning, and approved modeſty: inſomuch, that in the twice vacancy of the See of *Rome*, he was in either ſelected and nominated as pope: but refuſing it as too great a charge (for ſuch was his apology) hee rather chuſed a ſolitary and ſequeſtred life, and ſo retired himſelfe into a Monaſtery neere *Verona*, of which (according to rumour) hee was firſt Founder and Patron: in which, hee ſpent a great part of his age; as a man extermin'd from his native Country, ſo continuing the later part of *Henry* the eight, and the entire Soveraignty of *Edward* the ſixt: But Queene *Mary*, his firſt acquaintance

The Counteſſe of Salisbury his Mother beheaded.

Cardinal Pool twice elected Pope.

*C.15198.64

rance, being inveſted into the *Engliſh* Throne, having the ſoveraigne power in her owne diſpoſe, ſhe ſent to call him home, with purpoſe (as it was then rumourd, having the p pes authority to diſpence with all his Eccleſiaſticall dignities) to have made him her husband.

Queen Mary *is purpoſed to marry with Cardinal* Poole.

Of which *Charles* the Emperour having notice, partly by his power, and partly by his policy, wrought ſo by his Engineeres, that hee was detained in *Italy*, till a match was fully concluded betwixt his ſonne Prince *Philip*, and the Queene: which being perfected, and then paſt prevention; the Cardinall was at liberty to diſpoſe of himſelfe; and for his greater Honour was ſent over by the pope with the title of *Legatus alatere*: at which time, as *Doctor Thomas Cranmer* was not onely ſuſpended, but diſpoſſeſſed of the Archbiſhoprick of *Canterbury*, in ſtead of whom Cardinal *Poole* was inſtalled into that See: where having beene three yeares Archbiſhop, when newes was brought him of the death of his Couſen Queene, hee the ſame houre expired, the fifty eight of his age, and lyeth buryed within Saint *Thomas* Chappell in *Canterbury* Church: with this ſhort Inſcription onely,

Spaniſh policy.

Cardinal Pool *made Archbiſhop of* Canterbury.

His death.

Depoſitum Cardinalis Poli.

The propheſie ayming at him, where it ſaith,

From the Pontificke Sea a Poole ſhall runne,
That wide ſhall ſpread its waters, and to a flood
In time ſhal grow, made red with Martyrs blood

The

The next Chapter leads mee to the entrance of prince *Philip*, sonne to the Emperour *Charles*, into the Land, and his marriage with Queene *Mary*, *&c.*

CAP. 36.

King Philips *entertainment into the Land, presented with the Garter: Hee is made King of* Naples, *and* Hierusalem: *the great solemnity of the King and Queenes marriage at* Winchester: *Their Titles, their riding through* London: *The Queene rumourd to bee with Child, King* Philips *cautelous proceedings: he favoureth the Lady* Elizabeth: *He leaveth the Land: Queene* Maries *discontent at his departure: The losse of* Callis: *The death of Queene* Mary: *The Inauguration of the Lady* Elizabeth: *A propheſie of her birth and reigne.*

TO omit all the Insurrections (in Her time) of the discontented Commons, as that of Sir *Thomas Wiat* in *Kent*, to keepe King *Philip* out of the Land; in which the Duke of *Suffolke* was a partisan; with another commotion in *Devonshire*, by *Gowen*, and *Peter Carow*, *Giles Champernham*, and others: with a third about *Woodhurst*

Insurrections in the time of Queen Mary.

hurſt in *Suſſex*, wch was ſoon appeaſed: a fourth by *Vdall*, *Throgmorton*, *Daniel*, *Pecham*, *Stanton*, &c. A fift, by *Henry Stafford*, who tooke *Scarborough* Caſtle in the *North*. I come now to Prince *Philip*, who after all thoſe that interpoſed his landing were cut off: in the yeare of grace one thouſand five hundred fifty foure, the twentieth of *Iuly* made his ſafe arrivall at *Southhampton*, where he was honourably received by the greateſt part of the Nobility, and was preſented with the Order of Saint *George*, and the Garter ſet with rich ſtones, faſtned about his Legge: who before he would enter any houſe, went firſt into *Holy Rood Church*, which ſtandeth juſt oppoſite to the Towne-Hall, where he gave thanks to God for his ſafe and proſperous arriuall: and having ſpent ſome halfe an houre in his devotion, hee mounted upon a goodly *Iennet*, richly capariſoned (which was that morning ſent him by the Queene) and ſo rode back towards his lodging, which was neare unto the Water-gate.

Prince Philip *landeth at* Southampton.

Prince Philip preſented with the George *and Garter.*

The monday following he left *Southampton*, and attended by the Lords and Gentlemen of *England*, rode towards *Winchester*; but by the reaſon of great ſtore of Raine that fell the ſame day, the journey ſeemed ſomething unpleaſant, but there about ſeven of Clocke towards night hee was magnificently received, and rode to the Church before he would ſee his lodging; loud Muſicke entertained him at his alighting, and the biſhop of that Sea, with

Stephen Gardiner.

foure other met him at the Church doore, attended with Prieſts, Singing men and Quiriſters, all in rich Coaps, who had three faire Croſſes or Crucifixes born before them: In the firſt entrance of the *Church*, the Prieſt kneeled downe to pray: which done, he aroſe, and went under an Imbroydered Canopy, from the weſt doore up to the Quire, who when he ſaw the *Hoaſt*, put off his Hat to doe it reverence, and then entred into a goodly *Traverſe*, hung with coſtly *Arras*, and there kneeled againe, till *Winchester* the *Chancellor* began *Te Deum*, whom all the whole Quire ſeconded: that done, hee was brought thence by Torch-light, and went on foot through the Cloiſters to his lodging, whither the Queenes Guard attended him, to a faire Houſe belonging to the Dean.

Prince Philips *demeanour to the people.*

Hee was at that time apparrelled in a *Coat*, or *Mantle* curiouſly imbroydered with gold, his *Hat* ſutable, and a white Feather in it, with a rich Orient Jewell: all the way as he paſſed, he turned himſelfe to the people on both ſides, with a pleaſant Countenance; and after ſupper, which was about ten of Clocke, certaine of the Counſaile by a private way brought him to the Queene, who entertained him graciouſly and lovingly: they had conference together a-bouthalfean houre in the Spaniſh tongue, wch ended, he tooke his leave, and was conducted backe to his lodging: Upon the Tueſday following, about three of clocke in the afternoon he came from his lodging on foote, attended by

His firſt meeting with the Queene.

by the Lord *Steward*, the Earle of *Darby*, the Earle of *Pembrook*, and other Lords and Gentlemen, as well ſtrangers as *Engliſh*: and that day he was attired in a cloake of blacke Spaniſh cloth, imbroydered about with Silver, a paire of white ſilke ſtockings, and the Garter of the Order about his legge, where he ſhewed himſelfe freely and openly to all men: at his entrance into the *Court* loud Muſicke was heard, and in the great Hall the Queen met and kiſſed him before all the people: then (ſhe taking the right hand) they went together in the preſence Chamber, and talked under the cloth of ſtate about a quarter of an houre: He then took leave of her Majeſty, and comming into the open Court, the Penſioners, and Yeomen of the Guard ſtood on both ſides as farre as the Gate: from whence the Lords conducted him to the *Cathedrall*, where hee heard Evenſong, which ended, they brought Him backe to His lodging with *Torch-light*, and ſo left him.

His apparrell.

The ſame night the Emperor ſent a Meſſage to the Queene, to give her to underſtand, that his ſonne was not a Prince onely, but a King, of *Hieruſalem* and *Naples*, with other dominions, after mentioned in his ſtyle. Upon Saint *James* his day, being the five and twentieth of *July*, about eleven of clocke in the morning, the King and Queene came from their lodgings, towards the *Church* on foot, both richly attyred in Gownes of cloath of Gold, ſet with pearle, ſtones and jemmes: he with his Guard,

P. Philip *made* K. *of* Naples *and* Hieruſalem.

The Ceremonies before the marriage.

and ſhe with hers, either having a Sword born before them: before her by the Earle of *Darby*, before him by the Earle of *Pembrooke*: being come unto the Church, he went to one Altar, and ſhe to another, hanged with Curtaines of Cloth of gold, which being after drawne, it was imagined, that they were there ſhriven; after they came from their places, and meeting, they very lovingly ſaluted each other, hee alſo being at that time bareheaded.

The ſolemnization of the marriage betwixt King Philip, and Queen Mary.

Then ſixe Biſhops went to the place prepared for the Nuptiall Ceremony, the King ſtanding on the left hand, and ſhe on the right. Then the Lord *Chancellour* aſked the Banes betwixt them, firſt in Latin, and then in Engliſh. The Ring was a plaine hoope of gold, without any ſtone: For ſhe deſired to be marryed as Maids uſed to bee of old: the Nuptialls being ended, the King and Queene went hand in hand under a ſumptuous *Canopy*, by ſixe Knights borne over them, and two ſwords carryed before them: comming before the Altar, they kneeled down, with either of them a lighted Tapor in their hands, then they aroſe and withdrew, ſhe into a *Traverſe* on the right ſide, He into another on the left: After the Goſpell read, they again appeared, and kneeled before the Altar, all the time of Maſſe; which being ended, the King of Heraulds openly proclaimed their Majeſties King and Queene, with theſe Titles following.

Philip

Philip *and* Mary, *by the Grace of God, King and Queene of* England, France, Naples, Hieruſalem, *and* Ireland, *defenders of the Faith, King and Queene of* Spaine, Sicilia, Leon, *and* Arragon, *Arch-Dukes of* Auſtria, *Dukes of* Millaine, Burgundy, *and* Brabant, *Counties of* Huſburgh, Flanders, *and* Tyroll, *Lords of the Iſlands of* Sardinia, Majorcha, Minorcha, *of the Firme land, and the great Ocean Sea, Palatines of* Henault, *and the holy Empire. Lords of* Freezeland, *and of the Iſles, and governours of all* Aſia *and* Affrica. *Their Royall titles.*

The Trumpets ceaſing, the King and Queen came forth hand in hand, royally attended, and ſo went on foote to the Court, and dyned together openly in the *Hall* at one Table. Thus you ſee,

The Lioneſſe hath matcht with Cæſars *ſonne.*

I have beene the longer in this Relation, to ſhew the magnificent ſolemnities of Princely Nuptialls in thoſe times uſed. The eighteenth of *Auguſt*, the King and Queene went to *Suffolke* place in *Southwarke*, and there dyned: after Dinner they rode together over *London Bridge*, and ſo paſt through the City, the ſtreets being hanged ſumptuouſly; and divers pageants and Showes preſented unto them, having relation to their perſons, and the great joy of the people conceived at their Royall Marriage, and unity of the Nations, being after received by the Biſhop of *London* into the *Cathedrall Church* of *Their entertainment into the City of London.*

of St. *Paul*, with *Processsion*; where having done their devotion, they rode on in great state towards their palace at *Westminster*. Then came divers Embassadours from severall Countries, from *Russia*, *Poland*, *Denmarke*, *Hungary*, *Naples*, *&c.* to gratulate the Nuptialls of these two potent princes.

The Queen rumoured to be with child.

After it was bruited that the Queene was with Child, for which there was great thanksgiving, and prayers through all the Churches of *London* for her safe delivery to come, and King *Philip* chosen to bee protector of the Infant, Male or female, (by a decree in parliament) in case the Queene should miscarry in Childebirth: But some having whispered in his head, that hee should be deluded by a supposititious infant, prepared for that purpose, and loath that a conterfeit should bee heire to all his Realmes and dominions, hee would not depart the Chamber at the time of her delivery; by which the plot tooke no effect, and bred some distaste betwixt the King and the Queene: Againe, to second this, the King greatly favoured the Lady *Elizabeth*; and observing what Tyranny was used against the dejected princesse, hee began to be somewhat jealous of the *English Nation*, and their proceeding in state, apprehending, that if they insidiated the life of a *Native*, being their Queene and Soveraignes sister, with what small scruple of Conscience, might they ayme to supplant him, or any of his followers, who were aliens and strangers: which made

King Philip *favoured the Lady* Elizab.

him

him ſo ſuddainly to forſake the Queene and the Land; his excuſe being, to viſit his *Father* the Emperour, and to take poſſeſſion of the *Low Countries*, to the great ſorrow of her Majeſty, of whom hee tooke his leave the fourth day of *September*.

King Philip *leaveth the Land.*

In her dayes *Calais* was loſt by the *Engliſh*, and taken by the *French*, by the ill management of the *State*, eſpecially the Clergy, who in her dayes ſwayd all, and were ſo buſied in the butchery, and burning of *Martyrs* at home, that the honour and ſtate of the Kingdome was much neglected abroad, which Town had two hundred and odde yeares belonged to the Crowne of *England. It was firſt won by* Edward *the third, the eleventh King from* William *the Conquerour, after the ſiege of eight Months, and was loſt by* Mary, *the eleventh from the ſaid* Edward, *in eight dayes.* Who when ſhee heard the Towne was taken, in a great paſſion uttered theſe words: *The loſſe of* Callais *is written in my heart, and may bee there read when my body is diſſected.* Beſides *Martyrdome*, in her time was great *Mortality* of people, much harme done by lightning and Thunder, a great part of her Fleet ſuddenly fired, King *Philips* ſecond returning into the Land, and his ſhort ſojourne here ere hee left it againe. Theſe with other diſcontents ſo wrought upon her princely Nature: that verifying the former prediction, which ſaith,

Callis *loſt by the* Engliſh.

Queen Maries *ſorrow for the loſſe of* Callis.

Men

Men ſhall her ſhort unproſperous raign deplore,
By loſſe at Sea, and damage on the ſhore:
Her heart when 'tis diſſected, you in it
May in large Characters read Callis *writ.*

Some ſay of a Dropſie or impoſtume.

Theſe cogitable remembrances brought her into a Conſumption, or (as ſome ſay) into a burning Fever, ſo that in the forty ſecond yeare and ſixt day of her age, ſhe departed the world at the Mannor of St. *Iames*, neere *Weſtminſter*, the ſeventeenth of *November*, in the yeare of our bleſſed Saviours *Incarnation*, one thouſand five hundred fifty eight, after ſhee had reigned five yeares, foure months, and eleven dayes: whoſe body lyeth buried in a Chappell in the Cathedrall of Saint *Peters Church* in *Weſtminſter*, in a bare grave without either Tombe or any Inſcription: either of which might have beene ſome memorable decorement to adorne her Hearſe.

The death of Queen Mary.

She lyeth buried without a Monument.

The Lady Elizabeth *proclamed Queene.*

The ſame day of her death was proclamed Queene the Lady *Elizabeth*, ſiſter to Queene *Mary*, and daughter to *Henry* the eight, and the Lady *Anne Bulloine*, who was appoynted by parliament to ſucceed her ſiſter, dying without Iſſue, who ſhortly came to *London*, where ſhe was joyfully received by all ages, ſexes, and degrees, (the Romiſts onely excepted) and paſſing through the City to the Tower, ſhee ſhewed to all her people and ſubjects the deportment of ſo ſweet and a gracious Lady, and they

they ſo mutual and alternate a joy for her happy and proſperous Inauguration, that it almoſt wanted preſident, and of whom it was thus predicted.

From th'others aſhes ſhall a Phœnix riſe,
Whoſe birth is thus predicted by the wiſe,
Her chief predominant ſtar is Mercury,
Jove *ſhall with* Venus *in conjunction be.*
And Sol *with them, ſhine in his beſt aſpect:*
With Ariadnes *Crown,* Aſtræa *deckt,*
Shall then deſcend upon this terrene ſtage:
(Not ſeen before, ſince the firſt golden age)
Againſt whom all the Latian Buls ſhall rore,
But at Joves *awfull ſummons ſhall give ore.*
Through many forges ſhall this metall glide
Like gold, by fire repur'd, and ſeven times tryde
Her bright and glorious Sun-beams ſhall expell
The vain clouds of the Candle, Booke, and Bell.
Domeſtick plots, and ſtratagems abroad,
French *machins, and the* Italianated *god,*
The Spaniſh *Engine, Porteguized* Jew:
The Jeſuitick mine, and politick crew
Of home-bred Vipers, let their menaces come
By private piſtoll, or by hoſtile Drum,
Though all theſe Dogs chace her with open cry,
Live ſhall ſhe lov'd, and fear'd, then Sainted die.

The propheſie of her birth & reigne.

Concerning the Aſtrologicall calculation of her birth, in her it prov'd moſt infallibly true, for where *Mercuries* Star is predominant, it portends a rare acuteneſſe and ſharpneſſe of wit, a

A calculation at her birth.

volubility in speech, and retentivenes of memory, with a naturall inclination to acquire Learning and knowledg. *Jupiters* star infuseth honor, state, power, and Majesty: and *Venus*, feature, beauty, affability, and clemency: both which being at that time in conjunction, conferd their general gifts upon her in particular, and *Sol* shining at the same houre with a favourable aspect ratified the former, of which part of the propheſie there needs no further explanation.

An apologie of the Author.

To write largely of her troubles being, a princeſſe, or of her rare and remarkable Reigne after she was Queen, I should but feast you with dyet twice dreſt: Having my selfe publiſhed a diſcourſe of the first: from her cradle to her crowne: and in another bearing Title of the nine worthy Women: she being the laſt of the reſt in time and place, though equall to any of the former both in religious vertue, and all masculine magnanimity: and yet becauſe the present occaſion enforceth it, I will give you only a capitulation in briefe, of thoſe paſſages which were at large related in the former, which I refer to the following Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. 37.

A brieſe nomination of her troubles, wrought by the Popiſh Clergie: Her paſſage through London, *to her Coronation with the Speeches ſpoke in the pageants: A ſhort remembrance of the prime paſſages in her Reigne: The former prediction fulfild, her death: other predictions fathered upon* Merlin *explained, &c.*

SHee was borne the ſeventh of *September*, and baptized the third day following, in the Fryers Church in *Greenwich*, her Godfather was *Thomas Cranmer* Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, her Godmothers, the Ducheſſe of *Norfolke*, and Marchioneſſe of *Pembroke*, both widows. At her birth, *Mary* the elder Daughter to the King, by Queen *Katherine*, was diſabled of any claime to the Crown, and his Heires by Queene *Anne* of *Bulloigne* admitted, during her childhood, ſhe came not neere her ſiſter, but was brought up in the Proteſtant Faith, and to her brother *Edward* much endeared. Her Uncle the Protectour brought her Suitors of Honourable quality in her minority, whom ſhee refuſed with

A brieſe catalogue of her troubles.

great modesty. At Queene *Maries* Coronation, she graced her with her company, but soone after confin'd her at the instigation of the Clergie, no insurrection in her sisters time, to which they would not have made her accessary, as that of *Wiats* in *Kent*, the *Carowes* in *Devonshire*, *Throgmortons*, &c. for which she was by them maliciously questioned, but by the power of Heaven miraculously acquitted: from *Ashredge* sent for to *London*, from thence committed to the Tower, her barge grating on the arches by the way, her landing at the Traitours staires, her close imprisonment there: her dangers in being conveyed thence: Her train untutored Souldiers, Her bondage under *Benningfield*, His fury at *Woodstocke*, and the firing of her Lodgings, a private Warrant for her death accidentally discovered, and by King *Philip* prevented. By these with infinite others appeares,

Who were her greatest adversaries.

That against her the Latian *Buls did rore,*
But by Joves *awfull power at length give o're.*

By Latium is meant Italy, &c.

This hath not only reference to her pupillage, but the time of her principality, in which the *Latian* Buls, meaning the Buls of Pope *Pius Quintus*, so raged in the Land, that they deposed her from the Crowne as an Heretick, and released her Subjects from their allegeance: all which by the power of God, her chiefe and only supporter, prov'd no other then flashing false fires, and words vainly uttered against the wind.

But

But now *Aſtrea* deckt in *Ariadnes* crowne,

Diſcends again upon this terrene ſtage,
Not ſeen before ſince the firſt golden age.

Aſtræa in whom is figured Juſtice (and here Queen *Elizabeth* perſonated) borrowing *Ariadnes* Crowne, which is one of the Celeſtiall Conſtellations, who left the world in *Saturnus* Reigne, called the *Golden Age*, when the ſeven deadly ſins began firſt to peep into the world, and clayme chiefe predominance on earth: who now at this reſtauration of true Religion, is ſaid to diſcend from her place in the Zodiack, where ſhe ſate conſteli'd by the name of *Virgo*, and be tarraſſed over this bleſſed Queens Tribunall, in which all juſtice (with mercy mixed) was continually exerciſed.

Aſtræa otherwiſe called Virgo, *Iuſtice, &c.*

I come now to her paſſing through the City, at her firſt comming forth from her lodgings in the Tower, before ſhee would ſuffer her ſelfe to be mounted in her chariot, ſhee devoutly lifted up her eys and hands towards Heaven, ſpeaking theſe words: My God I thanke thee, who haſt been ſo mercifull, as to ſpare me to ſee this joyfull and bleſſed day; and I confeſſe, that thou haſt dealt as mercifully and miraculouſly with me, as thou didſt with thy faithfull ſervant *Daniel*, whom thou ſavedſt from the Lions den. For ſo was I diſtreſſed, and by thee ſo delivered to thee therefore, and thee only be thanks, honour and prayſe for evermore, *Amen.*

Her paſſage through the City to her Coronation.

The firſt pageant at Fanchurch.

The firſt pageant to entertain her was at *Fanchurch*, neere unto which was placed a ſtately ſcaffold, with a curious conſort of ſweet ſounding Inſtruments, upon which ſtood a yong man of good aſpect, and gorgeouſly apparelled, ready with a ſpeech in *Latin*, in the Cities behalfe, to give her welcome, who ſeeing him preparing for that purpoſe, commanded her Chariot to ſtay, and beckning with her hand to the people for ſilence, he ſpake to her in *Latin* as followeth.

Vrbs tua, quæ ingreſſu dederit tibi munera prima.
O Regina, &c.

All theſe ſpeeches made in Latine, I have given the Engliſh.

Which for the more generall underſtanding, I deliver you thus interpreted into our vulgar Tongue.

Behold, ô Queen, what to thy great renowme,
Thy City doth preſent thee, two things are
Inſtead of gifts, to guide thee to thy Crown:
Lowd tongues, and loyall hearts without compare.
Their tongues thy welcome in lowd Tones proclaime,
Their hearts rejoyce when they but heare thy name.

Then welcome gracious Sovereigne: happy wee,
And above hope bleſt to behold this day,
As our tongues ſpeake, our hearts with them agree,
And what ſave welcom, can we think or ſay?

Rich

Rich, poore, young, old, who all theſe places fill,
Have both in tongue and heart, your welcom ſtill.

At the concluſion of this Speech the people made a lowd acclamation, Every one crying, *God ſave Queene Elizabeth*, with other zealous wiſhes as their fancies led them. Heere was obſerved her conſtant attention to what was delivered, with a change of countenance, when any phraſe reflected upon her private perſon, and thereby her great courteſie and clemencie, in giving the people publike thanks for their ſo hearty votes and wiſhes.

Her deportmẽt at the ſpeech.

Thence ſhee moved forward to *Gracious* ſtreet, where was erected a very ſumptuous ſtructure, extended from the on ſide of the ſtreet to the other, curiouſly vaulted below, and decored with battlements above, it had 3 ports, over the middlemoſt were advanced 3 ſeverall ſtages, one degree above another: on the loweſt was a Seat Royall, in which wereplaced two perſons in rich Robes of State. The one repreſenting *Henry* the Seventh, the other the Lady *Elizabeth* his wife: He (being of the Houſe of *Lancaſter*) invironed with a branch of red Roſes, & ſhe of the houſe of *York*, incloſed with a branch of white Roſes: out of theſe two being of divers colours, ſprung two branches of Damaſke or White intermingled with Red, which were directed upward to the ſecond ſtage, where ſate environed one with a Diadem upon his head, pre-

The pageant in Gracious ſtreet.

The uniting of the white Roſe and the Red.

preſenting King *Henry* the Eighth (her Father) and a ſecond perſonating Queene *Anne* of *Bolloigne* (her mother) in a third degree ſurmounting their heads, to which the former branch reached, ſate one reſembling Her Majeſties perſon. The Motto inſcribed was: *The uniting of the two Houſes of* Lancaſter *and* Yorke. The Speech directed to her, being to this purpoſe,

Hii quos jungit idem ſolium, quos annulus idem
Hæc albente nitens, ille rubente roſa, &c.

Thoſe Princes that upon this State are ſeene
One with the red Roſe, th'other with the white,
Are the ſeventh Henry *and his royall Queene,*
One mariage Ring, one throne doth them unite.

Heire to the Houſe of Lancaſter, *the King:*
The Queene to Yorke: *both in one bloud combind.*
From theſe King Henry (*ſtil'd the Eighth*) *did ſpring,*
The Seate aloft is to your place aſſign'd,

(*O royall Queene*) *and as all civill wars*
Long reigning, did in their uniting ceaſe,
So may you live free from domeſtick jars,
Amongſt us ſtil'd the Queen of proſperous peace.

There were moreover divers *Latin* ſentences inſcribed upon ſeverall labels, perſwading to unity and concord, which for brevities ſake I here omit.

Thence

*mc.R5198.64ma

Thence ſhee paſt to *Cornhill*, where ſtood another pageant compoſed with three open gates, over the middle part thereof ſate one magnificently inthroned, figuring her Royall perſon. In the frontiſpice was written in a large character, *The ſeat of worthy Government:* which ſeat was ſo artificially framed, that it ſeemed to have no prop or ſtay on which to ſubſiſt: In foure ſeverall comportments, ſtood four reverent perſons, one, figuring true Religion, treading upon ignorance and ſuperſtition, the ſecond ſtood for the love of ſubjects to their Prince, ſpurning at inſolence and rebellion: the third wiſdome, tyrannizing over folly and vain-glory: the fourth Juſtice, having dominion over flattery and bribery: Divers other ingenious fancies there were, of vertues and vices, with morall ſentences inſerted and interlaced to adorne the Fabricke. Her Royall Arms being richly garniſhed, and ſet in the *Apex* or top thereof, ſupported by a Lion and a Dragon: the ſpeech being to this effect,

The pageant in Cornhill.

The ſeat of worthy government.

Quæ ſubnixa alti ſolio regina ſuperbâ eſt,
Effigiem ſanctæ principis Alma refert.

Behold, O Queen, thy picture in this frame,
Richly inthron'd to celebrate thy Name.
Whilſt true Religion in thy Reigne, ſhall tread
On ignorance and ſuperſtition's head,
Whilſt ſubjects love, rebellion ſhall diſtreſſe,
And overtumour inſolence make leſſe,

Whilst Iustice keeps an incorrupted place.
To have all flattery and bribes in chace.
Whilst wisdome, arm'd with vowes devout and (holy
Shall have a power above ostent and folly,
Whilst these continue (which we much desire)
So long thy people shall thy Reigne admire.

The Queens gracious construction.

To this she answered, that she had took notice of their good meaning towards her, and most graciously promised her best endevour, for the continuance and incouragement of those vertues, and suppressing of the said vices. Passing from thence to *Soper lane* end, where stood another sumptuous and goodly pageant, spreading from one side of the streete to the other, being raised three degrees or stories high, in the upper sate one Child, in the second three, in the third and lowest foure, representing the eight Beatitudes. The Speech followeth, delivered to her in Latin.

The pageant at Soperlane end.

We that thy great afflictions late have seen,
Acknowledge thou art blest 8 times (o Queen)
Blest hast thou beene, because so poore in spirit,
And therefore thou a kingdome dost inherit.
Blest, for thou mourned hast, and therefore see
Great comforts are prepared now for thee.
Blest, for thy meeknesse next, with thoughts (thine.
divine.
Therefore this earth from henceforth shall bee
Hunger and thirst, for godlinesse, thou hast
Suffered, now all good things shal please thy taste.

Blest,

Bleſt, ſince to all th'art merciſull and kind,
Therefore thou mercy ſhalt hereafter find.
Bleſt, becauſe pure in heart, therefore thy grace
Shall be to looke thy Maker in the face,
Bleſt, as contentions having reconcil'd.
All peace-makers, Gods children ſhall be ſtil'd.
Bleſt art thou, ſince for righteouſneſſes ſake
Thou perſecution ſuffered haſt: to make
Thy patience greater, thy reward more ſtrong,
For to all ſuch ſalvation doth belong.

The votes of the people.

At the concluſion of this ſpeech, the people wiſhed all together with one generall vote theſe bleſſings abundantly to fall upon her, whom ſhee much thanked, and paſt on to the Standard in *Cheape*, which was garniſhed with divers Banners, penons and Streamers, and upon it placed a noyſe of Trumpets, the Croſſe being very beautifully trimmed, upon the porch of Saint *Peters* Church doore, ſtood the Wayts of the City, with Cornets and Hoboyes, and play'd lowd Muſique, moving onward ſhee eſpide another pageant erected at the little Conduit, in the upper end of *Cheap*, and demanded what it might ſignifie? One told her Majeſty that there was placed Time: Time replyed ſhe? and Time I thanke my God hath brought mee hither, and being further informed that the Engliſh Bible was there to bee delivered unto her by Truth the daughter of Time, ſhe anſwered, ſhee was beholding to the City, for that preſent above all other, which ſhe would mayn-

The Standard in Cheap.

The pageant at the little Conduit.

Her love to the Engliſh Bible.

taine with the beſt blood that ran in her Royall veins, and commanded Sir *Iohn Parrot*, one of the Knights that held the Canopy to fetcht it from the child. But underſtanding that it was to be let down by a ſilken ſtring, ſhe cauſed him to ſtay: and proceed no further, then met her the Lord *Major*, and the Aldermen.

Shee is met by the L. Major and Aldermen.

There the Recorder made a learned ſpeech, and delivered unto her withall a purſe of Crimſon Sattin richly embroydered, and in it a thouſand Marks in gold: which ſhee received with her own hand, and to his ſpeech ſhe made preſent anſwer as followeth.

I thanke my Lord *Major*, his brethren, and you all: where your requeſt is that I ſhould continue your good Lady and Queene, be aſſured I will be as good and gracious unto you as ever Princeſſe was to her people, no will in mee can want, and I perſwade my ſelf, no power ſhall be deficient to provide for the ſafety and ſecurity of you all, for which I ſhall not ſpare my beſt bloud: God thanke you all. The Bible being preſented unto her, and all the pertinences of that Show being paſt, comming over againſt *Pauls* Schoole, one of the Scholers delivered her a Latin Oration, with divers Latin Verſes: The Oration began, *Philoſophus ille divinus Plato, &c.* and the Verſes,

Her comming to Ludgate,

Anglia nunc tandem plaudas, lætare, reſulta, &c.

It would aſk too long time to interpret them: ſhe

ſhee paſt thence through *Ludgate*, which was gorgeouſly beautified and adorned, where were Trumpets, Cornets, Shalmes and Hoboyes, and thence into *Fleetſtreet*, where at the Conduit ſhe was received by the fift and laſt pageant, in which was expreſſed *Debora* the Judgeſſe, and Reſtorer of the Houſe of *Iſrael*. At Saint *Dunſtans* Church ſtood the *Children of the Hoſpitall*, and by one of them a ſpeech delivered unto her, to which ſhee attentively liſtned, and promiſed to be their future *Benefactour*: upon *Temple Barre* were placed, the two Giantlike figures of *Corinæus* and *Gogmagog*, holding a Table wherein the effects of all the former pageants were in Latin inſcribed. Thence ſhee departed toward *Weſtminſter*, where ſhee was the next day being the fifteenth of *Ianuary*, with all Royall ſolemnity crowned.

The pageant in Fleetſtreet.

The ſhow at Templebarre.

Her coronation

Thus Sol *ſhines on her with his beſt aſpect,*
With Ariadnes Crown, Aſtræa deckt,
Doth now diſcend upon this terrene ſtage,
Not ſeen before, ſince the firſt golden age.
Through many forges did this metall glide,
Like gold by fire repur'd, and ſeven times tryde.

In regard that her inimitable Reigne and Government hath ſo oft, and amply, ſo largely and learnedly both in the *Latin* and *Engliſh* tongue, been voluminouſly diſcourſed, I will onely preſent you with a Table of their Tractates and Treatiſes, as a briefe Regiſter, to prompt the

Forreigne and domestick attempts against her Majesty after she was Queen.

Readers remembrance: As first by refusing a Mariage with her brother in law *Philip* King of *Spaine*, shee made him her publike and profest enemy: that the *French* animated by the *Guisians*, in the right of *Mary* Queene of *France* and *Scotland* would have invaded her Kingdome, that *Spain*, *France*, and *Scotland*, all, and at once combined against her: the thundring Bull of *Pius Quintus*, which quitted all her subjects from their allegiance: Rebellions in the North, Duke *Dalva's* attempts in the *Low countries*, *Pools* and *Dacres* Conspiracies: *Iohn* of *Austria* from *Spaine*, *Stukeley* in *Ireland*, *Saunders* and *Sam. Iosephus*: *Desmond*, and *Fitzmorris*: *Paget*, *Throgmorton*, and *Arondel Bernardine*, *Mendoza*, and Cardinall *Allan*, the *Spanish Armado* stiled *Invincible*. The fourteene Traytors, *Englefield* and *Rosse Hispanified*, *Parry* with his pistoll *Italianated*, *Aubespinæus* and *Trappius* his Secretary *Frenchified*, *Walpoole* the Jesuite, *Lopez* the *Iew*, and *Squire*, who would have poysoned her Saddles pummell, &c. these prove what was before by the Prophet predicted.

These are so plain they need no exposition.

Her bright and glorious Sunbeams shall expell
The vain clouds of the candle, booke and bell,
Domestick plots and stratagems abroad,
French machins and the Italianated god,
The Spanish Engins, Porteguized Iew.
The Iesuitick mines, and politick crew

Of

*EC.E5198.641ra

Of home-bred Traytors, let their menaces come
By private pistoll, or by hostile Drum, &c.

Yet notwithstanding over these and many others (strengthened and protected by the hand of the Almighty) shee was miraculously victorious, whose fame can never faile, or Her memory perish, and therefore I draw my present conclusion from the premisses.

Though all these Dogs chace her with open cry;
Live shall she fear'd and lov'd, then Sainted die.

Many other propheſies have beene diſperſt abroad under the name of *Merlin:* of which I will give you the taſt of one onely, and that's this:

A propheſie conſtrued on Merlin.

When Hemp is ripe and ready to pull,
Then Engliſhman beware thy ſcull.

In this word *Hemp* be five Letters *H.E.M.P.E.* now by reckoning the ſucceſſive Princes from *Henry* the Eighth, this Propheſie is eaſilie explaned, *H.* ſignifieth *Henry* before named, *E. Edward* his ſonne, the ſixth of that name, *M. Mary* who ſucceeded him, *P Philip* of *Spain* who by marrying Queene *Mary* during the time of her life participated with her in the Engliſh Diadem: laſtly by *E.* Qu. *Elizabeth*, after whoſe death there was great feare that ſome troubles might have roſe about the Crowne, or that

King

King *James* her successour of like blessed memory might have come in after an hostile manner, and so to have made that good.

Then Englishman beware thy scull.

Yet proved this augury true, though not according to the former expectation or imagination: for after his happy and peaceable proclamation and Inauguration, there was great mortality, not in *London* only, but through the whole Kingdome, from which the Nation was not quite clean in seven yeeres after.

CHAP.

Chap. 38.

The title of K. James *to the Crown. His comming into* England: *A propheſie of his Reigne: The firſt treaſon attempted againſt him: The gun-powder treaſon, and what the conſpirators were: The* K. *of* Denmark *twice commeth into* England: *An Epitaph upon Prince* Henry: *One of the Duke of* Richmond *and* Lenox: *Another of* Q. Anne: *An Epitaph upon* K. James: K. Charles *proclamed King: his Fathers Funerall's, &c.*

UPon Thurſday, being the twenty fourth of *March*, about two of the clock in the morning, deceaſed Queen *Elizabeth* of bleſſed memory, at her palace of *Richmond*, being aged three ſcore and ten yeares, and having reigned forty foure yeares, five moneths and odde dayes, and the ſame day about eleven of clock in the forenoone was proclaimed *James* the ſixth King of *Scotland*, King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, at the high Croſſe in *Cheapſide*, with the Title of *Defender of the Faith*, being lineally deſcended from *Margaret* eldeſt daughter to King *Henry* the ſeventh, by

King James *his lineall title to the Crown of* England, *&c.*

Elizabeth his wife, who was the eldest daughter to King *Henry* the fourth: the same *Margaret* was married to King *James*, the fourth of that name King of *Scotland*, in the yeare of Grace, one thousand five hundred and three, who had issue *Iames* the fifth, who was Father to *Mary* Queene of *Scotland*, Mother to *Iames* the sixth, Monarch of great *Britain*, and King of *France* and *Ireland*: of whom ere I further proceed to speake any more, let me acquaint you with one thing most remarkable, namely how ominous the Thursday hath beene to King *Henry* the Eighth, and to all his posterity, for hee himselfe died upon Thursday the eight and twentieth of *Ianuary*, his sonne King *Edward* the sixth, on Thursday the sixth of *Iuly*, Queen *Mary*, on Thursday the seventeenth of *November*, and Queene *Elizabeth* on Thursday, the twenty fourth of *March*: but I returne to King *Iames*, and the prediction made of him and his prosperous Reigne.

A thing worthy to be observed.

The propheſie of K. Iames.

On Boreas *wings then hither shall be borne,*
Through Week, *o're* Tweed *a Princely Vnicorn*
Who brought into the world, his own fair crest,
A rampant Lion figured on his brest,
And to his Armes six Lions more shall quarter
With six French *Flowers inviron'd with the*
Ioyning (by fates unchangable dispose) (Garter,
The Northern Thistle to the Southerne Rose,
He shall the true Apostolike Faith mayntain,
With pious zeale: During the blessed Reigne

Of

Of this faire ſprig deriv'd from Richmonds ſtock,
No Noble head ſhall ſtoop unto the block.
Yet ſhall from th' old Lupanar Wolves be ſent
To undermine both Crown and Government,
Striving in Hell to regiſter their names,
By blowing up the State in powder flames,
Ah (wo the while, Rebellion, and preſtigion,
Should maſque themſelves in viſors of religion.
All which the holy book meerly gain-ſays,
But man's corrupt, God, Iuſt in all his wayes.
Witneſſe their wretched ends, but happy they
Who keep for that, an annuall holiday
That King ſhall be a ſecond Salomon,
Whom all Kings elſe with wonder gaze upon:
Who, as to an Oracle to him ſhall come,
And when he ſpeaks, be ſilent all and dumbe,
Peace ſhall he keep within him and without him,
Whilſt all lands elſe combuſtions are about him.
Him ſhall a ſecond iſſue male ſucceed,
Gracious in word, victorious in his deed.

Though divers adulterate copies ſomething alluding to this purpoſe, have been frequent in the mouths of many, yet this beſt agreeing with the Authors meaning, ought to be firſt received, which though it need no explanation at all, yet thus much briefly, for the ſatisfaction of the vulgar. By *Boreas* is meant the North-wind, *upon whoſe wings the Vnicorne is borne*, is implide King *James*, who gives the Unicorne in Heraldry. *Through Week over Tweed*, that is, he came

The Vnicorne part of the Scottiſh Arms.

King Iames *born with a Lion on his breſt.*

came through *Barwick*, over the River *Tweed*, which parteth *England* and *Scotland*: Hee was alſo borne with the exact portraiture of a Lion upon his breſt, preſaging, that the white Lion of *Scotland* ſhould have a proximity and alliance, with the three red Lions of *England* quartered, with the three Flower delyces of *France*, (the noble remembrance of *Edward*, ſirnamed the Black Prince, ſonne to *Edward* the Third, who by taking the King priſoner in battaile, added them to the Arms of *England*,) which are incompaſt by the Garter, an Order firſt made, by the aforeſaid *Edward* the Third. Thele came into the peaceable poſſeſſion of King *Iames*, who alſo brought the Thiſtle (part of the Arms of *Scotland*,) to joyne with the two united Roſes, (the White and Red, figuring of the two divided Houſes *York* and *Lancaſter*, to make one perfect Damaſke.

The Thiſtle joyned with the Roſe.

I omit the manner of his Majeſties comming out of *Scotland*, and his Royall entertainment into this Kingdome with joyfull acclamations of the people, and the unanimous ſuffrage of the whole Nation, with his Inauguration, Coronation, and ſolemne and pompous paſſing from the Tower through the City of *London* to *Weſtminſter*, with the ſeverall pageants and ſhowes, his Creating of Barons Viſcounts and Earles, and making of Knights and Knight Baronets in great number, &c. The ſeverall Embaſſadours that came from all parts of Chriſtendome, to congratulate his comming to the Crown,

Crown, His peace established with all Christian Princes, especially with *Spain*, consisting of seven and thirty Articles: The calling of his first Parlament, and his excellent delivery of his minde therein, &c. which would aske long Circumstance, I come to the first Treason attempted against him, for which were arraigned at *Winchester*, the fifteenth of *November*, *George Brooke*, brother to the Lord *Cobham*, Sir *Griffin Markham*, and Sir *Edward Parham*, Knights; *Watson* and *Clarke*, *Romish* priests, *Bartholmew Brooksby* Esquire, and one *Anthony Copley* Gentleman indicted.

The first treason attempted against King Iames.

To conspire to kill the King,
To raise Rebellion,
To alter Religion,
To subvert the State,
To procure invasion by strangers.

And this was in the first yeare of his Majesties Reign, for which were after also arraigned and convicted *Henry Brooke*, Lord *Cobham*, late Lord Warden of the *Cinque Ports*, *Thomas* Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, and Sir *Walter Raleigh*, late *Lord Warden of the Stanneries*: For which the two priests *Watson* and *Clerke* were executed at *Winchester*, the twenty ninth of *November*, and *George Brooke* was beheaded the fift of *December*, but all the rest by the Kings gracious clemency had their lives pardon'd, though some of them brought to the block, expecting no other

mercy but what the ſharpe axe of Juſtice could afford them.

The powder Treaſon.

The ſecond treaſon (of the like to which was never preſident) was the attempt to blow up the Parliament houſe, in which becauſe it was ſo long predicted, I could deſire to bee the larger, but that it is of ſuch late memory, and new in the mouthes of all men, and ſo ſhall (no doubt) continue to all poſterity: the fatall day appointed for that horrid and moſt execrable fact was the fift of *November*, in the third yeare of his Majeſties Reigne. The names of the Conſpirators were *Henry Garnet*, a principall Jeſuite reſident in *England*, *Robert Catesby* Gentleman,

The names of the Conſpirators.

Francis Treſham Eſquire, *Thomas Winter* Gentleman, *Thomas Percy*, *Iohn Wright*, *Guido Vaux*, who went by the name of *Iohn Iohnſon*, Maſter *Percy's* man, *Iohn Grant*, *Ambroſe Rookwood*, Sir *Everard Digby*, &c. The diſcovery thereof was as followeth. About ten dayes before the Parlament ſhould begin, the Lord *Mounteagle* ſonne and Heire to the Lord *Morley*, lying in the *Strand*, a ſtranger met his man in the ſtreet, and delivered him a Letter to give to his Lord, the contents were as followeth.

A Letter ſent to the Lord Mounteagle.

MY Lord, Out of the love I have to ſome of your Friends, I have care of your preſervation: therefore I would adviſe you, as you tender your life, to deviſe ſome excuſe to ſhift off your attendance on the Parliament, for God and man have conſpired to puniſh the wickedneſſe of this time,

time, and think not slight of this advertisement, but retyre your selfe into your Country, where you may expect the event in safety, for though there be no appearance of any stir: yet I say, they shall receive a terrible blow this Parliament, and yet they shall not see who hurt them: this counsell is not to be contemned, and can doe you no harme. For the danger is past, so soon as you have burnt the Letter, and I hope God will give you grace to make good use of it, to whose holy protection I commend you.

And this came unto him without date or name, in a counterfeit and unperfect hand, which Letter comming to the Kings hand, when none of the Counsell could sound the depth thereof, (though they were men of great wisdome and experience) His Majesty was the first that tooke notice of these words in this Letter, *They shall receive a terrible blow*, which hee conjectured to be by a blast of powder, and therefore commanded all the places under the Parliament House to be searcht the night before their first sitting: which charge was given to Sir *Thomas Knivet*, Gentleman of the Kings privy Chamber, who attended with a small number came to the place at midnight, where at the entry he found *Fawks* (*Percies* pretended servant) booted and spurr'd, and apprehended him, and having removed certain billets and coals laid their under a colour, hee first discovered one small barrell of powder, and after all the rest, being in number thirty six with other Engins fit for that bloudy purpose,

The Kings wisdome first discovered this treason.

Guido Faux apprehended.

purpose, there was also found in *Fauxes* pockets, a piece of touchwood, and a Tinderbox to light it, and a Match which *Percie* and he had bought the day before, to try conclusions for the long or short burning of the tuchwood, prepared to give fire to the traine of powder: then they carried him bound to be examined before the Councell: who would acknowledge no other name but *Iohn Iohnson Percy's* man, stiffly denying that he knew any complotters in that horrible Treason, justifying the act good and warrantable by Religion, denying the King to be his Liege Lord, or Gods Anointed, because hee held him for an Heretike, only repenting him that the deed was not done, saying, that good would have concealed it, but the Devill himselfe only discovered it.

An obstinate Traytour.

This Treason after broke into a practice of Rebellion, of which the circumstances are too large to stand upon: Diverse of them being besieged in an House together, as they were drying of wet powder, a blunt Miller let a coale fall amongst it, by which most of them were cruelly scorched, tasting themselves in some measure of that fire-plot prepared for others: *Catesby* and *Percy* issuing out of the House were shot to death, and their heads set after upon the parliament House, and their quarters upon the gates of *Warwick*: after them issued both the *Wrights* who were slain also, *Thomas Winter* hoping the like fate was taken alive, these following were by an honourable Tryall arraigned at *Westminster*,

Those that were arraigned at Westminster.

ſter. *Thomas Winter*, late of *Hardington* in *Warwickeſhire* Gentleman, *Guido Faux* late of *London* Gentleman, *Robert Keyes* late of *London* Gentleman, *Thomas Bates* late of *London* Yeoman, theſe were firſt called to the bar: and alledged againſt them for plotting to blow up the Parliament Houſe with Gunpowder, for taking oath and ſacrament for ſecrecie, for hyring an Houſe neere unto it, for digging a myne, and finding the myne faulty, hyring a Celler for lodging of powder, match, and touchwood into the Celler to effect their Treaſon.

Robert Winter late of *Hardington* Eſquire, elder brother to the aforeſaid *Thomas*: *Iohn Grant* late of *Tarthbrooke* in *Warwickeſhire* Eſquire, *Robert Rookwood* late of *Sunningfield* in *Suffolke* Eſquire, theſe were indited for being acquainted with the Treaſon after, for giving their full conſents thereto, for taking the Sacrament for ſecrecy: Sir *Everard Digby*, late of *Galhurſt* in *Buckinghamſhire* Knight, for being acquainted with the Treaſon, for giving aſſent, for taking an oath: all which were convicted, condemned, drawne, hanged and quartered: alſo upon Friday the twentie eight of *March* in the fourth yeare of the King, *Henry Garnet* the provinciall or principall of the *Engliſh* Jeſuites, was arraigned at Guild Hall in *London*, upon the ſame Treaſon, and condemned, and after drawn from the Tower to the Weſt end of *Pauls*, was executed like the former Traitors: Thus wee ſee:

Henry Garnet *provinciall of the Ieſuits executed.*

That from the old Lupanar Wolves were sent,
To undermine both crown and government:
Striving in Hell to register their names,
By blowing up the State in powder flames, &c.

Lupanar, *shee was also called* Acca Laueratia.

The word *Lupanar* comes from *Lupa*, a shee Wolfe or Prostitute, so was the wife of *Faustulus* the Nurse to the two Infants *Romulus* and *Remus* (the first erectors of *Rome*) called, from *Lupa* comes also *Lupanar*, that is, a brothelhouse, and Idolatry is called fornication almost through the whole Scripture, and from *Rome*, had these Arch-traytors, their Incendiary, &c.

The King of Denmarke *commeth into* England.

Amongst other Royall Visitants *Christianus*, the fourth of that name King of *Denmarke*, came into *England*, royally attended to see his brother in law King *Iames*, and his naturall sister Queene *Anne*, whom the King in person met a shipboord with Prince *Henry*, The Duke of *Lenox*, and divers of the Nobility, and dined with him in his Cabin, the two Kings afterward rode triumphantly through the City of *London*, the Embassadors of *France*, *Spaine*, and *Venice*, being spectatours of the solemnity: Here Hee was royally and magnificently entertained and feasted till his returne, &c. who liked his welcome so well, that hee came hither the second time. And in all the passages of His Majesties Reigne, where was nothing seen but peace, tranquillity and quietnesse, there is no subject to write on, but of sundry Plantations during is Reigne, as in *Virginia*, *Bermudas*, or the *Sum-*

mer-

mer Iſlands, &c. Of men raiſed to Office and Honour, of his ſeverall Embaſſies into Forreign Countries, to make peace and attonement betwixt divided Kingdomes, and his enterchangeable enterrayning of their Embaſſadours: of the mariage of the Lady *Elizabeth*, to the prince *Palatine*: of the death of that moſt hopefull plant of Honour and Royalty Prince *Henry*, of whom I have read this Epitaph.

In Natures law, 'tis a plain caſe to die;
No cunning Lawyer can demurre on that,
For cruell death and fatall deſtinie,
Serve all men with a ſinall Latitat:
So brave Prince Henry, *when his cauſe was tryde,*
Confeſt the action, paid the debt and dyde.

An Epitaph upon Prince Henry.

I may alſo put you in remembrance of the new erecting of the Artillery Garden, of the New River brought to *London*, of the building of the New Exchange in the *Strand*, and *Hicks* Hall, of Cenſures in the *Star-chamber*, in the *High Commiſſion Court*, the burning of the Banquetinghouſe, &c. of Sir *W. Raleigh's* execution at *Weſtminſter*, &c. the creating of *George Villiers* Gentleman Duke, & his Mother Counteſſe of *Buckingham*; with infinite other peaceable paſſages, but theſe are now out of my road. In the year one thouſand ſix hundred and eighteene, upon Wedneſday the eighteenth of *November*, a blazing Starre appeared, and upon Tueſday the ſecond of *March* following, at

The death of Queen Anne.

Hampton Court dyed Queene *Anne*, of whom was made this Epitaph.

Her to invite, the great God sent his star,
Whose friends and kindred mighty Princes are,
Who though they run the race of men and die,
Death seems but to refine their majesty:
So did this Queen, frō hence her Court remove,
And left the earth to be inthron'd above:
Then she is chang'd, not dead, no good Prince dyes,
But like the day-star, only set to rise.

Vpon the death of the Duke of Richmond and Lenox.

Upon Monday, the sixteenth of *February*, one thousand six hundred twenty three, the King with the Nobility prepared to goe to the Parlament House, but that morning dyed *Lodowick* Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox*, at his lodging at the Court in *White Hall*, who is worthily remembred in this Epitaph following.

Are all diseases dead? or will death say,
She could not kill this prince another way?
Yes, it was so: for time and death conspired,
To make his death (as was his life) admired,
The Commons were not summond (now I see)
Meerly to move laws, but to mourne for thee.
No lesse then all the Bishops could suffice
To wait upon so great a sacrifice.
The Court, the Altar was; the Waiters, peeres.
The mirrh and frankincense, great Cosins tears.

A braver offering with more pompe and ſtate,
Nor time, nor death, could ever celebrate.

Of King *Iames* his wiſdome, integrity, bounty, his ſtudy of peace, which hee made good in his Motto, *Beati Pacifici*, and for all his other ſingular vertues; He with a ſuperarrogative overplus made good, what was before, for many yeares predicted of him: all which may be included in this one Epitaph made upon him.

Can Chriſtendomes great Champion ſink away
Thus ſilently, into a bed of clay?
Can ſuch a Monarch die? and not to have
An Earthquake (at the leaſt) to ope his grave?
Did there no Meteors fright the Vniverſe,
Nor Comet hold a torch to light his Herſe?
Was there no clap of thunder heard to tell
All Chriſtendom their loſſe? and ring his knell?
Impartiall Fates: I ſee all princes then (men:
Though they liv'd Gods, yet they muſt die like
And the ſame paſſing bell, may toll for them
Which rung but now the beggers requiem.
When ſuch a ſoule is from the earth bereaven,
Me thinks, there ſhould be triumph made in
Heaven;
The ſtars ſhould run at tilt, at his deceaſe,
To welcome him into the place of peace:
Who whilſt hee liv'd, in peace liv'd, and did
Being in peace, to keepe peace ſtill alive: (ſtrive,
No widows curſes, and no Orphants cryes,
Shall interrupt his hallowed obſequies:

For their slain husbands, or their fathers lost
In bloudy war: to wake thy peacefull ghost.
Let thy great predecessors boast the pryse
Of glorious (and yet bloudy) victories.
Let them upon their sepulchers expose,
Triumphs of war, and spoyle of forreigne foes,
And glory to have turn'd the harvest field:
To a pitcht Campe: and ploughshare to a shield,
So that on bloudy furrows there were born
As many blades of steele, as now of corne
Yet shall thy prayse be greater, since thy joy
Was to plant nations rather then destroy,
And though no mortall trophy speak thy prayse,
Because no drop of bloud hath staind thy dayes:
Yet this sure truth, their greatest fame controls
They subdu'd bodies, thou hast conquered souls.
Truth was thy banner, the thrice sacred word,
Thy target and thy pen a two edg'd sword.
But lo, when Spanish coast, Romes canon shot,
False Gowries *treason,* Catesby's *powder-plot,*
Could not destroy (all these thy fate did brave.)
A Fever would needs bring thee to thy grave.
For (being mortall) fate could not invent
His passage by a nobler instrument
Then his own bloud: which made him compre-
Within himselfe the glory of his end. (hend
Like to a circle, this rich Diamond must
Be cut by no means else then t's owne dust.
Thus is our Sun set, never to return.
Pay therefore tribute to his funerall urn,
All peacefull souls; and with true sorrows sence:
Give unto him your hearts benevolence.

Of

*E.1519.6.41[illegible]

Of pious tears, then turn you from the Weſt,
To ſee the new Sun riſing in the Eaſt.

King *Charls* the firſt of that name, King of *England*, began his Reign on Sunday the twenty ſeventh of *March*, one thouſand ſix hundred twenty five, and the next day after commanded by Proclamation, that all Officers and Magiſtrates of what degree or quality ſoever through out his whole Dominions, ſhould ſtill uſe and exerciſe all ſuch power and authority as they held from his Father (of bleſſed Memory) until his pleaſure were further known: and on Saturday the ſeventh of *May* next enſuing, were performed the Funerall rites of his Father King *James*, and his Corps with all magnificence & ſtate, carried from *Denmark* houſe in the *Strand*, to *Weſtminſter* Abbey Church, King *Charles* being the chiefe and principall Mourner, attended with all the Nobility, Clergy, and Judges, with ſundry Embaſſadors, & all his Officers & Domeſtick Servants in Mourning habits. His Herſe being more royally adorned and attended than any of his predeceſſour Kings, in which Magnificent Solemnity his Corps was Interred in the Chapell Royall, &c.

Prince Charls *proclaimed* King.

The Funerall of King James.

FINIS.